Cheryl Glenn • Loretta Gray

Harbrace Essentials

Second Edition

Brief Contents

W Writing 1

1 Writing and Reading Rhetorically 2
2 Planning and Drafting Essays 7
3 Developing Paragraphs 10
4 Revising and Editing Essays 22
5 Critical Reading and Textual Analysis 27
6 Writing Arguments 32
7 Designing Documents 47

R Research 57

8 Planning Research 58
9 Finding Appropriate Sources 64
10 Evaluating Print and Online Sources 75
11 Using Sources Critically and Responsibly 81
12 Crediting Others and Avoiding Plagiarism 98

D Documentation 105

13 MLA Documentation 106
14 APA Documentation 159
15 CMS Documentation 193
16 CSE Documentation 221

G Grammar 245

17 Sentence Essentials 246
18 Sentence Fragments 269
19 Comma Splices and Fused Sentences 272
20 Verbs 278
21 Pronouns 296
22 Modifiers 312

S Effective Sentences 323

23 Sentence Unity 324
24 Subordination and Coordination 331
25 Parallelism 336
26 Emphasis 340
27 Variety 344

L Effective Language 349

28 Good Usage 350
29 Precise Word Choice 355
30 Conciseness 360

P Punctuation 365

31 The Comma 366
32 The Semicolon and the Colon 375
33 The Apostrophe 379
34 Quotation Marks 385
35 The Period and Other Punctuation Marks 391

M Mechanics 399

36 Spelling and the Hyphen 400
37 Capitals 406
38 Italics 411
39 Abbreviations and Numbers 414

Glossary of Usage 431
Glossary of Terms 447
Index 459

Citation Maps 483
Special Topics for Multilingual Writers 483
Revision Symbols 484

Detailed table of contents appears inside the back cover.

HARBRACE

ESSENTIALS

SECOND EDITION

CHERYL GLENN
The Pennsylvania State University

LORETTA GRAY
Central Washington University

CENGAGE Learning

Australia • Brazil • Mexico • Singapore • United Kingdom • United States

***Harbrace Essentials*, Second Edition**
Cheryl Glenn, Loretta Gray

Product Director: Monica Eckman
Product Manager: Christopher Bennem
Managing Developer: Leslie Taggart
Content Developer: Kristin Bowen
Associate Content Developer: Danielle Warchol
Product Assistant: Kerry Devito
Media Developer: Cara Douglass-Graff
Market Development Manager: Erin Parkins
Content Project Manager: Rosemary Winfield
Art Director: Marissa Falco
Manufacturing Planner: Betsy Donaghey
Intellectual Property Analyst: Ann Hoffman
Production Service: Thistle Hill Publishing Services
Text Designer: Cenveo® Publisher Services
Cover Designer: Sarah Bishins
Compositor: Cenveo® Publisher Services

© 2015, 2012 Cengage Learning

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

For product information and technology assistance, contact us at **Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706.**

For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at **www. cengage.com/permissions.**
Further permissions questions can be emailed to **permissionrequest@cengage.com.**

Library of Congress Control Number: 2013954419
ISBN-13: 978-1-285-44699-8
ISBN-10: 1-285-44699-2

Cengage Learning
200 First Stamford Place, 4th floor
Stamford, CT 06902
USA

Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at **international.cengage.com/region.**

Cengage Learning products are represented in Canada by Nelson Education, Ltd.

For your course and learning solutions, visit **www.cengage.com.**

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **www.cengagebrain.com.**

Instructors: Please visit **login.cengage.com** and log in to access instructor-specific resources.

Printed in China
3 4 5 6 18 17 16 15

Preface

Whether you are writing for school or on the job, *Harbrace Essentials* provides the practical advice, helpful strategies, and examples of effective writing that will help you make your writer's voice heard.

Finding What You Need

Harbrace Essentials puts all the information you need at your fingertips.

- **Brief Contents.** Use the brief table of contents on the inside front cover to find the chapter you need. For quick reference, the brief table of contents also provides a guide to the color-coded parts of the book—you'll find the color for each part on related page tabs.
- **Contents.** When you need to quickly locate more specific information, consult the detailed table of contents on the inside back cover. Then you can flip to the section you need, such as 4a or 15c, using the section locators at the top of each page.
- **User-Friendly Index.** You can find the specific pages on which any topic is mentioned by consulting the index (p. 459). The index includes entries that reflect the terminology of the book (for example, *conjunction*) as well as entries in everyday language for when you're not certain what topic to check (such as *and*). It provides not only page numbers but also chapter and section references for each topic.
- **Advice on MLA, APA, CMS, and CSE.** For quick access to documentation styles, open to the tab that says MLA and then scan the next page for the style you are using. At the end of the book (p. 483), a directory of Citation Maps guides you

to the Citation Maps in each documentation chapter, which walk you through the process of citing common sources in each style.

- **Glossaries.** If you need help with words that are commonly confused or misused (such as *accept* and *except*), consult the Glossary of Usage on page 431. The Glossary of Terms (p. 447) defines grammatical and rhetorical terms, including those that appear in boldface throughout the book.
- **Revision Symbols.** If your instructor gives you feedback that includes revision symbols, use this list to lead you to sections of the book that offer strategies and detailed help for revision. The list appears on p. 484, one page in from the inside back cover.
- **Resources for Multilingual Writers.** Refer to the checklists and tips throughout the book for key advice on special topics. For quick access to grammar help designed especially for multilingual writers, the directory at the end of the book (p. 483) points you to help with specific topics throughout the book.
- **Answers to Exercises.** To allow you to practice your skills and test your understanding of key grammatical concepts, exercises are included throughout *Harbrace Essentials*. For most exercise sets, answers to even-numbered items are included at the back of the book (p. 419) so you may check your progress on your own.

Although we believe *Harbrace Essentials* will help you answer any question you may have about writing, if you have suggestions for improving the next edition or if we can assist you in any way, don't hesitate to write to us c/o Cengage Learning, English Editorial, 20 Channel Center Street, Boston, MA 02210.

Cheryl Glenn
Loretta Gray

Teaching and Learning Resources

Answer Key and Instructor Manual

Available for easy download on the book's password-protected companion website, the Answer Key and Instructor Manual provides instructors with answers to all exercises in the handbook as well as a variety of pedagogical and teaching materials.

Online College Workbook

A great companion to the handbook, the Online College Workbook covers grammar, punctuation, usage, style, and writing. It provides supplemental exercises and includes clear examples and explanations. The workbook is available as a downloadable PDF on the password-protected companion website for instructors. The Answer Key for the workbook is also available on the website.

Multimedia eBook

ISBN: 9781285451541

Students can do all of their reading online or use the multimedia eBook available for *Harbrace Essentials*. The eBook includes the full text of the print version while also providing user-friendly navigation, search, and highlighting tools, and links to videos that enhance the handbook content.

Enhanced InSite for *Harbrace Essentials*

Printed Access Card (1 semester): 9781285451701
Instant Access Code (1 semester): 9781285451688
Printed Access Card (2 semester): 9781285451572
Instant Access Code (2 semester): 9781285451565

From a single, easy-to-navigate site, you and your students can manage the flow of papers online, check for originality, and conduct peer reviews. Students can access a multimedia eBook with text-specific workbook, private tutoring options,

and resources for writers that include anti-plagiarism tutorials and downloadable grammar podcasts. **Enhanced InSite™** provides the tools and resources you and your students need plus the training and support you want. Learn more at **www.cengage.com/insite**. (*Access card/code required.*)

Write Experience

writeXperience

Printed Access Card:
9781285836232
Instant Access Code:
9781285836225

Cengage Learning's Write Experience is a technology product that allows you to assess written communication skills without adding to your workload. This new product utilizes artificial intelligence not only to score student writing instantly and accurately but also to provide students with detailed revision goals and feedback on their writing. Write Experience is the first product designed and created specifically for the higher education market through an exclusive agreement with McCann Associates and powered by e-Write IntelliMetric Within™. IntelliMetric is the gold standard for automated scoring of writing and is used to score the Graduate Management Admissions Test® (GMAT®) analytical writing assessment. Better Writing. Better Outcomes. Write Experience. Visit **www.cengage.com/writeexperience** to learn more.

Questia

questia

Printed Access Card (6-month subscription):
9781428277441
Instant Access Code (6-month subscription):
9781428277434
Printed Access Card (12-month subscription):
9781285079172
Instant Access Code (12-month subscription):
9781285079202

Questia is the online library that provides 24/7 access to the web's premier collection of full-text books and academic journal and periodical articles in the humanities and social sciences. And, it is more than a vast collection of online sources. Questia can help your students in the entire research process, from topic selection and research to organization of their notes and proper citations. Questia will help your students by providing a wider array of scholarly sources and enabling them to organize what they've learned into a better-thought-out paper.

Additional Resources

Resources for Writers

Printed Access Card: 9781133044390
Instant Access Code: 9781133044383

Resources for Writers offers a variety of activities for students to practice and refine their understanding of key concepts via interactive grammar and proofreading exercises, anti-plagiarism tutorials, writing and research modules, multimedia activities, and downloadable grammar podcasts.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary (eBook)

ISBN: 9781285054360

America's best-selling dictionary delivers accurate, up-to-date information to students as they work on writing assignments. This edition of *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary* contains thousands of new words and meanings from all areas of human endeavor, including electronic technology, the sciences, and pop culture. This indispensable tool will give your students fast and easy access to the words they need to know today.

Turnitin

Printed Access Card (1 semester): 9781413030181
Printed Access Card (2 semester): 9781413030198

This proven, online plagiarism-prevention software promotes fairness in the classroom by helping students learn to correctly cite sources and allowing instructors to check for originality before reading and grading papers. (*Access code/card required.*)

InfoTrac® College Edition

ISBN: 9780534558536

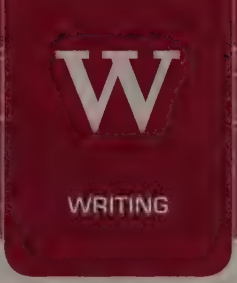
This online research and learning center offers over 20 million full-text articles from nearly 6,000 scholarly and popular periodicals. The articles cover a broad spectrum of disciplines and topics—ideal for every type of researcher. Learn more at **www.cengage.com/infotrac.** (*Access code/card required.*)

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank our colleagues who reviewed this handbook during the course of its development. Their astute comments and thoughtful suggestions helped shape this second edition.

Nancy Applegate, *Georgia Highlands College*; Craig Barrette, *Brescia University*; Kirsten Benson, *University of Tennessee*; Jesse Bishop, *Georgia Highlands College*; Laura Bowles, *University of Central Arkansas*; Janice Brantley, *University of Arkansas at Pine Bluff*; Kimberly Del Bright; *Penn State University*; Ron Brooks, *Oklahoma State University*; Jeffrey Cain, *Sacred Heart University*; Michael Callaway, *Mesa Community College*; Beth Capo, *Illinois College*; Allan Carter, *College of Dupage*; Liz Dennis, *Barton College*; Jason DePolo, *North Carolina A&T State University*; Anthony Edgington, *University of Toledo*; Christopher Ervin, *Western Kentucky University*; Lynee Gaillet, *Georgia State University*; Rebecca Gidjunis, *Eastern University*; Margaret Gillio, *Finger Lakes Community College*; Rebecca Godwin, *Barton College*; Charlotte Gordon, *Endicott College*; Jean Grace, *University of Pittsburgh*; Loren Gruber, *Missouri Valley College*; Barbara Heifferon, *Louisiana State University*;

John Hyman, *American University*; Elizabeth Imafuji, *Anderson University*; Maria Jerenic, *University of Nevada-Las Vegas*; Leslie Johnston, *Georgia Highlands College*; Amelia Keel, *Lone Star College-Kingwood*; Kristie Kemper, *Georgia Highlands College*; Bridget Kozlow, *North Carolina State University*; Jessica Lindberg, *Georgia Highlands College*; Elaine Marshall, *Barton College*; Brett McInelly, *Brigham Young University*; Kevin McKelvey, *University of Indianapolis*; Betty Mealy, *Southern Wesleyan University*; Joe Moxley, *University of South Florida*; Roxanne Munch, *Joliet Junior College*; Jill Parrott, *Eastern Kentucky University*; Jonathan Purkiss, *Pulaski Technical College*; Alex Reid, *University at Buffalo*; Jennifer Richardson, *SUNY Potsdam*; John-Michael Rivera, *University of Colorado*; Leigh Ryan, *University of Maryland*; Jasna Shannon, *Coker College*; Dixie Shaw-Tillmon, *The University of Texas at San Antonio*; Patricia Taylor, *University of Connecticut*; Paul Walker, *Murray State University*; Rachel Wall, *Georgia Highlands College*; Shevaun Watson, *UW-Eau Claire*; Linda Weeks, *Dyersburg State Community College*; Kristen Weinzapfel, *North Central Texas College*; Kim Welborn, *Southern Wesleyan University*; Mary Wright, *Christopher Newport University*



1 Writing and Reading Rhetorically 2

- **a** Understanding the rhetorical situation 2
- **b** Applying rhetorical knowledge 3
- **c** Academic writing 4
- **d** Genres and formats of academic writing 5

2 Planning and Drafting Essays 7

- **a** Stages of the writing process 7
- **b** Developing a thesis statement 8
- **c** Creating an outline 9

3 Developing Paragraphs 10

- **a** Stating the main idea 11
- **b** Developing the main point 11
- **c** Choosing methods for developing paragraphs 12
- **d** Making paragraphs unified and coherent 18

4 Revising and Editing Essays 22

- **a** Revising for unity and coherence 23
- **b** Revising and editing paragraphs 23
- **c** Getting response 24
- **d** Editing and proofreading 25

5 Critical Reading and Textual Analysis 27

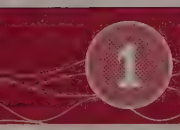
- **a** Critical reading 27
- **b** Textual analysis 29
- **c** Basic appeals in an argument 31

6 Writing Arguments 32

- **a** Considering differing viewpoints 32
- **b** Distinguishing between fact and opinion 33
- **c** Taking a position or making a claim 34
- **d** Providing evidence for an effective argument 35
- **e** Using appeals to ground your argument 37
- **f** Organizing an effective argument 38
- **g** Sample argument 40

7 Designing Documents 47

- **a** Elements of design 47
- **b** Using visuals 50
- **c** Using pictures effectively 54



1 Writing and Reading Rhetorically

Whether you are reading textbooks or e-mails, writing assignments for class, text messaging your friends, or composing with words or visuals, you are actively using your knowledge of **rhetoric**, the purposeful use of language. In fact, you are purposefully using language to address your **rhetorical situation**, the set of circumstances within which a person writes or reads a text.

1a Understanding the rhetorical situation

You already intuitively know the basic elements of the rhetorical situation: **opportunity**, **writer**, **audience**, **message**, **stance**, and **context**. To communicate effectively, writers must analyze their particular situation and respond appropriately to their intended audience. Therefore, in academic and other formal rhetorical situations, you will want to allow time to consider the basic elements of the situation:

- **Opportunity.** What problem or issue is the writer taking the opportunity to resolve or address?
- **Writer.** What do you know about the writer (or author), whether yourself or the person whose work you are reading?
- **Audience.** Who is the writer's audience? How might this audience help the writer resolve or address the problem? Will the audience understand, be influenced (to change behavior or opinion), be entertained?
- **Purpose.** How does the writer's purpose connect with the audience? Does the writer want to entertain, inform,

explain, describe, or argue a point? How does the purpose connect with the opportunity?

- **Message.** What specific assertions, examples, and support does the writer use? How is the message delivered? Via a visual text, a verbal text, or a combination? Is it print or electronic? In what ways are both the content and the delivery of the message appropriate for the audience?
- **Stance.** What is the writer's stance? What opinions, hopes, or experiences does the writer connect with the purpose and the message itself?
- **Context.** In what context is the communication between writer and audience taking place? Context includes the time and place, the writer and audience, the medium of delivery—as well as the social, political, historical, geographical, and cultural factors that influence the context, whether helping or hindering successful communication.

1b Applying rhetorical knowledge

When you write rhetorically, you consider the best ways of reaching your audience—the best way to deliver an appropriate, purposeful, and convincing message. When you read rhetorically, you allow yourself to consider the writer's message. Rhetorical readers often begin with a **preview**, skimming over the message to locate its major points (title and headings, for example), and then they read through it carefully (including author biography, preface, index, and bibliography) to determine the credibility and reputation of the author as well as the amount of research that went into the message itself. During the preview and close reading, rhetorical readers watch for **transitional** words that indicate important points of purpose, result, summary, causation, repetition, exemplification, or intensification (**3d**).

1c Academic writing

Academic writing, the writing expected of you as a student, will vary according to the assignments you receive within various academic disciplines. Much academic writing, though, shares several features: a thesis statement, purposefully organized supporting details and examples (often drawn from outside sources), and conventional grammar, spelling, punctuation, and mechanics. In other words, academic writing is carefully planned out and seriously delivered—unlike casual, social writing.

(1) Expectations for academic writing

Although assignments across courses and disciplines may differ, the expectations for academic writing remain fairly constant. Academic writing demonstrates an essential set of skills, including your ability to:

- respond appropriately to the assignment
- think critically
- apply outside sources (your research, practice, observations, readings) as you join the scholarly conversation
- organize and develop your material effectively and logically
- communicate with clarity, purpose, and a sense of audience
- edit and proofread with an eye to conventions of formatting, documentation, grammar, punctuation, mechanics, and tone (or level of formality)
- deliver your knowledge and researched information in a number of ways (orally, visually, electronically, verbally)

(2) Analyzing assignments

To meet the expectations for academic writing, you need to understand every assignment. Ideally, assignments will be communicated in writing and explained and discussed in class. For each assignment, make sure you understand the following requirements.

- **Task.** What task does the assignment ask you to complete? What verb does the assignment use? The imperative verb (*argue, describe, explain*) should direct you toward the expected purpose. Are you to solve a problem, research an issue, answer a question, remember and retell a significant event, support a thesis, explain a process, define a concept?
- **Role and audience.** What stance are you expected to or allowed to take with regard to your audience? Are you being asked to assume the role of expert, explainer, questioner, arguer? Are you writing from a position of knowledge and power, from that of a learner, or from an opposing point of view?
- **Format.** What are the instructor's expectations with regard to length, manuscript form (electronic or print? verbal or visual?), documentation style, and so on? What manuscript format should you follow (that of a report, an essay, an oral delivery)?
- **Process to be followed.** Are you expected to conduct library or laboratory research? What is the schedule for completion of research, drafts, peer reviews, workshops, revisions, and so forth? Are you expected to submit your rough drafts with the final draft?
- **Criteria for evaluation.** How will the final product be graded? What are the criteria for success?

1d Genres and formats of academic writing

You may already be familiar with many of the genres of academic writing, such as the personal essay, the case study, and the lab report. Each of these has a distinctive purpose, format, and tone.

Once you decide on the appropriate genre and format for your academic writing, you can choose to deliver it in print,

online, verbally, or visually (or some combination). Just as your choice of medium shapes how you produce your message, that choice also offers you opportunities for experimenting with its delivery and reach. Writing specifically for online media can extend the range of your project by reaching a wider audience outside your classroom and campus.

(1) Web pages

Writing material for a web page is different from writing a traditional academic essay or report. Web material requires a rethinking of organization, design, and style. The writer must determine a hierarchy of content emphasis (with related links to additional information), develop a clear, pleasing organization, and include useful links and other tools for navigation.

(2) Blogs

Writing a blog requires you to aim toward a specific, often limited, audience who will be receptive to your topic(s), your stance (your attitude toward your subject and your audience), and your ability to engage intelligently and frequently.

(3) Wikis

Wikis—collaborative online texts—allow you to share huge amounts of information with colleagues. All wiki writers expect to receive both positive and negative feedback from one another.

(4) Audio and video

The possibilities of audio and video delivery allow you to compose podcasts, YouTube videos, documentaries, and short films—all sorts of multimedia genres, including mash-ups that integrate music, visuals, information, and data. You can use these media to enhance your print texts or as stand-alone compositions.

2 Planning and Drafting Essays

Writing is a process, a series of manageable steps. Effective writers know they cannot possibly do everything at once, so they generate, organize, develop, and clarify their ideas as well as polish their prose in separate—but often overlapping—stages.

2a Stages of the writing process

Prewriting is the initial stage of the writing process. Consider your intended audience, purpose, and context. Then jump-start your thinking about your topic by talking with others working on the same assignment, keeping a journal, freewriting, or questioning.

Drafting involves writing down as much as you can with regard to your topic. Academic writing calls for evidence to support your assertions and your opinions. At this stage, then, you will need to determine the kinds of evidence your writing calls for (facts, testimony, personal experience, library, archival, laboratory or field research) and set about collecting that evidence. The more information you get down, the more options you will have as you begin to clarify your thesis (or guiding question) and purpose for writing. Progress is your goal at this stage, not perfection.

Revising offers you the opportunity to focus your purpose for writing, establish a clear thesis statement or governing idea, and organize your ideas accordingly. During revision, you work to stabilize the overall structure of your essay and individual paragraphs. You also shape your introduction and conclusion. Revising often means producing another draft for yet further revision and editing.

Editing and **proofreading** focus on surface features: punctuation, spelling, word choice, sentence structure, and all the rest of the details of academic English.

CHECKLIST FOR ASSESSING A TOPIC

- Why are you interested in the topic?
- What audience might be interested in the topic? How is the topic appropriate for your audience?
- What is your purpose in writing about this topic to your intended audience?
- How can you do justice to the topic in the time and space available to you? Should you narrow it or expand it?
- Do you have the information you need to address this topic? If not, what additional information might you need?

2b Developing a thesis statement

Once you decide on a topic, ask yourself what you would like to say about it. By combining your topic (for example, studying another language) with your point about that topic (it's important because it prepares students to participate in a global economy), you will create a thesis statement, an explicit declaration of the overarching idea of your paper. A thesis statement keeps your writing on target, unifies your writing, and guides your readers through the content that follows at the same time that it showcases your originality.

To bring your topic into focus, consider your individual interests, your purpose, the needs of your audience, and the time and space available. Look over your prewriting and drafting to determine where, exactly, your interests took hold. Often, your interest provides the most fruitful site for sharpening your focus, developing a tentative thesis, and then drafting an essay.

TIPS FOR DEVELOPING A THESIS STATEMENT

- Decide which feature of the topic interests you most.
- Write down your point of view or assertion about it.
- Draft a thesis statement that includes the topic and your assertion about it.
- Mark the passages in your rough draft that support your position to see how well this thesis fits with ideas you've been developing.
- Ask yourself whether your thesis is too broad or too narrow to be sufficiently developed given the constraints of your project.
- After completing a draft, ask yourself whether the scope of your thesis should be adjusted to reflect the direction your essay has taken. Qualify your thesis if necessary, acknowledging any conditions where your assertion may not hold up.
- If you are still unhappy with your thesis, start again with the first tip and be even more specific.

2c Creating an outline

Many writers need a working plan to direct their ideas and keep their writing on course. Others rely on outlines to organize their writing, as in this example:

TENTATIVE THESIS STATEMENT: Students who study another language become better communicators, both in their own language and with people from other cultures.

I. Many Americans don't think they need to learn another language.

   A. English is the language of global communication.

   B. English speakers always have an advantage in intercultural communication.

(Continued on page 10)

(Continued)

II. English-only speakers miss out on benefits of learning another language.

A. Learning another language is not just about being able to talk to people in different countries.

B. Studying another language increases a student's knowledge of another culture and so promotes tolerance and understanding.

C. Knowing the language enriches a student's stay in a foreign country.

III. Students who take another language do better on standardized tests.

A. Students can compare grammars to better remember the rules of their own language.

B. Studying another language opens up a student's mind to different ways of speaking and expressing ideas.

C. Studying another language helps students acquire better reading skills.

You compose a draft by developing the information that will constitute the individual paragraphs of your essay. Every paragraph serves a purpose: whether it is the introduction, the support for a main point, or the conclusion, each paragraph guides your reader through your piece of writing.

3a Stating the main idea

Effective paragraphs are unified around one main idea, often stated in a topic sentence. A **topic sentence** states the main idea of the paragraph clearly, and all the other sentences in the paragraph relate to that idea. Topic sentences often appear at the start of a paragraph to focus readers on what the paragraph is about. Whether a paragraph is long or short, it should focus on one main idea or point.

In the following paragraph about business at Hollywood movie studios in the late 1960s, the topic sentence appears at the beginning of the paragraph. The support sentences mention the consequences of the event described in the topic sentence.

> *Between August 1964 and March 1965, four new movies sold so many tickets and made so much money that, collectively, they pointed toward a dramatic shift in the tastes of American moviegoers and suggested an entirely new way for the studios to do business.* Hollywood did not react well. Historically, the only event more disruptive to the industry's ecosystem than an unexpected flop is an unexpected smash, and, caught off guard by the sudden arrival of more revenue than they thought their movies could ever bring in, the major studios resorted to three old habits: imitation, frenzied speculation, and panic. —MARK HARRIS, *Pictures at a Revolution*

3b Developing the main point

(1) Using details

The following well-developed paragraph uses details to bring an idea to life:

> My hair was one of those odd, amazing, unbelievable, stop-you-in-your-tracks creations—not unlike a zebra's stripes, an armadillo's ears, or the feet of the electric-bluefooted boobie—that the Universe makes for no reason other than to express its own limitless imagination. . . . It never thought of lying down. It sought more and more space, more light, more of itself. It loved to be washed; but that was it. —ALICE WALKER, "Oppressed Hair Puts a Ceiling on the Brain"

(2) Providing examples

Like details, examples contribute to paragraph development by making specific what otherwise might seem general and hard to grasp. The author of the following paragraph uses both details and examples:

> It began with coveting our neighbor's chickens. Lily would volunteer to collect the eggs, and then she offered to move in with them. Not the neighbors, the chickens. She said if she could have some of her own, she would be the happiest girl on earth. What parent could resist this bait? Our lifestyle could accommodate a laying flock; my husband and I had kept poultry before, so we knew it was a project we could manage, and a responsibility Lily could handle largely by herself. I understood how much that meant to her when I heard her tell her grandmother, "They're going to be just my chickens, grandma. Not even one of them will be my sister's." To be five years old and have some other life form entirely under your control—not counting goldfish or parents—is a majestic state of affairs.
>
> —BARBARA KINGSOLVER, *"Lily's Chickens"*

3c Choosing methods for developing paragraphs

When drafting an essay, you can develop paragraphs using various **rhetorical methods**. The method you choose will depend on how you want to achieve the purpose of your paragraph. Your paragraph might make sense of a person, place, or event (narration and description); think critically about a process (process analysis or cause-and-consequence analysis); investigate similarities or differences (comparison or contrast); organize concepts (classification and division); establish boundaries (definition); or convince someone (argument). These rhetorical methods are already second nature to you. You use them every day to understand the world around you.

By using these rhetorical methods of development, you will make your writing more understandable to your audience. Take care to use the one(s) best suited to supporting your

thesis, fulfilling your purpose, and reaching your audience. As you draft and revise, check to see that each paragraph is anchored in your thesis statement.

(1) Narration

A **narrative** discusses a sequence of events, normally in **chronological** order (the order in which they occur), to develop a particular point or set a mood. Narrative often includes a setting, characters, dialogue, and description and makes use of transition words or phrases such as *first*, *then*, *later*, *that evening*, and so forth to guide readers from one incident to the next. Whatever its length, a narrative must remain focused on the main idea. The narrative in this paragraph traces the history of the *Beaver*, a replica of the original Boston Tea Party ship:

> In 1972, three Boston businessmen got the idea of sailing a ship across the Atlantic for the tea party's bicentennial. They bought a Baltic schooner, built in Denmark in 1908, and had her rerigged as an English brig, powered by an anachronistic engine that was, unfortunately, put in backwards and caught fire on the way over. Still, she made it to Boston in time for the hoopla. After that, the bicentennial *Beaver* was anchored at the Congress Street Bridge, next to what became the Boston Children's Museum. For years, it was a popular attraction. In 2001, though, the site was struck by lightning and closed for repairs. A renovation was planned. But that was stalled by the Big Dig, the excavation of three and a half miles of tunnel designed to rescue the city from the blight on interstate 93, an elevated expressway that, since the 1950s, had made it almost impossible to see the ocean, and this in a city whose earliest maps were inked with names like Flounder Lane, Sea Street, and Dock Square. . . . In 2007, welders working on the Congress Street Bridge accidentally started another fire, although by then, the *Beaver* had already been towed, by tugboat, twenty-eight miles to Gloucester, where she'd been ever since, bereft, abandoned, and all but forgotten. —JILL LEPORE, "Prologue: Party Like It's 1773"

(2) Description

Descriptions make your writing come alive. Predominantly visual, descriptions can also include the details of what you hear, smell,

taste, and touch; that is to say, descriptions appeal to your senses. In the following paragraph, Ishmael Beah employs vivid descriptive details to convey what he saw and heard as he walked through a small town in Sierra Leone that had been devastated by rebels.

> I am pushing a rusty wheelbarrow in a town where the air smells of blood and burnt flesh. The breeze brings the faint cries of those whose last breaths are leaving their mangled bodies. I walk past them. Their arms and legs are missing; their intestines spill out through the bullet holes in their stomachs; brain matter comes out of their noses and ears. The flies are so excited and intoxicated that they fall on the pools of blood and die. The eyes of the nearly dead are redder than the blood that comes out of them, and it seems that their bones will tear through the skin of their taut faces at any minute. I turn my face to the ground to look at my feet. My tattered *crapes* [sneakers] are soaked with blood, which seems to be running down my army shorts. I feel no physical pain, so I am not sure whether I've been wounded. I can feel the warmth of my AK-47's barrel on my back; I don't remember when I last fired it. It feels as if needles have been hammered into my brain, and it is hard to be sure whether it is day or night. The wheelbarrow in front of me contains a dead body wrapped in white bedsheets. I do not know why I am taking this particular body to the cemetery. —ISHMAEL BEAH, ***A Long Way Gone: Memoirs of a Boy Soldier***

(3) Process analysis

In explaining how something is done or made, process paragraphs often use both description and narration. You might describe the items used in a process and then narrate the steps of the process chronologically. See how Sam Swope explains the process by which an elementary school assistant principal tried (unsuccessfully) to intimidate students into snitching on a fellow student.

> Later that day, a frowning assistant principal appeared in the doorway, and the room went hush. Everyone knew why he was there. I'd known Mr. Ziegler only as a friendly, mild-mannered fellow with a comb-over, so I was shocked to see him play the heavy. His performance began calmly, reasonably, solemnly. He told the class that the administration was deeply disappointed, that this theft betrayed the trust of family, teachers, school

and country. Then he told the children it was their duty to report anything they'd seen or heard. When no one responded, he added a touch of anger to his voice, told the kids no stone would go unturned, the truth would out; he vowed he'd find the culprit—it was only a question of time! When this brought no one forward, he pumped up the volume. His face turned red, the veins on his neck bulged, and he wagged a finger in the air and shouted, "I'm not through with this investigation, not by a long shot! And if any of you know anything, you better come tell me, privately, in private, because they're going to be in a lot of trouble, *a lot of trouble!*" —SAM SWOPE, "The Case of the Missing Report Cards"

(4) Cause-and-consequence analysis

Writers who analyze cause and consequence raise the question *Why?* and must answer it to the satisfaction of their audience. In this type of analysis, writers often differentiate the **primary cause** (the most important one) from **contributory causes** (which add to but do not directly cause an event or situation) and the **primary consequence** (the most important result) from **secondary consequences** (which are less important). Writers who analyze cause and consequence also usually link a sequence of events along a timeline, always keeping in mind that just because one event happens before—or after—another event does not necessarily make it a cause or consequence of that event. The following paragraph catalogues the consequences of a recent ruling in favor of air-passenger rights.

> The turning point [in air-passenger rights] came last April when a new Department of Transportation rule went into effect prohibiting lengthy tarmac delays on domestic flights at large and midsize hub airports. It requires that airlines provide food, water, and working toilets within two hours of delaying a plane on the ground and, after three hours, that passengers be allowed to safely leave the plane. —MARK ORWOLL, "Revolution in the Skies"

(5) Comparison and contrast

A **comparison** points out similarities, helping readers see a relationship they might otherwise miss, while a **contrast** points out differences, establishing useful distinctions to better understand

an issue or make a decision. Comparison and contrast can be arranged in at least two ways: The paragraph can discuss all the details about one subject and then cover the other. Or the paragraph might shift back and forth to discuss both subjects, point by point. In the following paragraph, the writer employs the second method, using descriptive details to compare humankind with the monster known as Frankenstein:

> "Hateful day when I received life!" I exclaimed in agony. "Accursed creator! Why did you form a monster so hideous that even you turned from me in disgust? God, in pity, made man beautiful and alluring, after his own image; but my form is a filthy type of yours, more horrid even from the very resemblance. Satan had his companions, fellow-devils, to admire and encourage him; but I am solitary and abhorred." —MARY SHELLEY, *Frankenstein*

Another kind of comparison is the **analogy**, which compares two subjects that may seem dissimilar or compares an unfamiliar subject or item with a familiar one, as in the following paragraph:

> And she was happy right now, it was true. Jane Houlton, shifting slightly inside her nice black coat, was thinking that, after all, life was a gift—that one of those things about getting older was knowing that so many moments weren't just moments, they were gifts. —ELIZABETH STROUT, *Olive Kitteridge*

(6) Classification and division

Classification is a way to understand or explain something by establishing how it fits within a category or group. Book classifications, for instance, include such categories as reference, fiction, and nonfiction. And those same classifications can be further broken down, with fiction subclassified into historical, suspense, mystery, Western, literary, and so on. **Division**, in contrast, separates something into component parts and examines the relationships among them. *Murder as a Fine Art*, David Morrell's latest novel, can be discussed in terms of its components: plot, setting, characters, theme. Thus, classification and

division offer two different perspectives: classify things into groups or divide things into subclasses. In the following paragraph, both classification and division are used to differentiate the two versions of the cowboy icon. Like many paragraphs, this one mixes rhetorical methods; the writer uses description, comparison, contrast, and classification to make her point.

> First, and perhaps most fundamentally, the cowboy icon has two basic incarnations: the cowboy hero and the cowboy villain. Cowboy heroes often appear in roles such as sheriff, leader of a cattle drive, or what I'll call a "wandering hero," such as the Lone Ranger, who appears much like a frontier Superman wherever and whenever help is needed. Writers and producers most commonly place cowboy heroes in conflict either with "Indians" or with the cowboy villain. In contrast to the other classic bad guys of the Western genre, cowboy villains pose a special challenge because they are essentially the alter ego of the cowboy hero; the cowboy villain shares the hero's skill with a gun, his horse-riding maneuvers, and his knowledge of the land. What distinguishes the two, of course, is character: the cowboy hero is essentially good, while the cowboy villain is essentially evil. —JODY M. ROY, "The Case of the Cowboy"

(7) Definition

By defining a concept or term, you efficiently clarify your meaning and so develop an idea. You also immediately connect with your readers when they know what you are and are not talking about. Definitions are usually constructed in a two-step process: the first step locates the term by placing it in a class or general category; the second step differentiates this particular term from other terms in the same class. This paragraph defines volcanoes by placing them into a class ("landforms") and then distinguishes them ("built of molten material") from other members of that class. The definition is clarified by examples.

> Volcanoes are landforms built of molten material that has spewed out onto the earth's surface. Such molten rock is called lava. Volcanoes may be no larger than small hills, or thousands of feet high. All have a characteristic cone shape. Some well-known

mountains are actually volcanoes. Examples are Mt. Fuji (Japan), Mt. Lassen (California), Mt. Hood (Oregon), Mt. Etna and Mt. Vesuvius (Italy), and Paricutín (Mexico). The Hawaiian Islands are all immense volcanoes whose summits rise above the ocean, and these volcanoes are still quite active. —JOEL AREM, *Rocks and Minerals*

3d Making paragraphs unified and coherent

When a paragraph flows, sentences and details are arranged in a way that is easy for readers to follow. When every sentence relates to the main idea, the paragraph is **unified**.

HOW TO STRONG, UNIFIED PARAGRAPHS

Identify	Identify the topic sentence, if there is one, making sure that it both highlights the main idea of the paragraph and connects the paragraph to the thesis statement. If the main idea is not stated in a topic sentence, what is the implied main idea of the paragraph?
Relate	Read each sentence in a paragraph and determine how it relates to and develops the main idea.
Eliminate	Eliminate any sentence that does not relate to the main idea or violates the unity of the paragraph. Or consider adding clarifying details or a transitional word or phrase to make the relationship clear.
Connect	Check to see how your sentences fit together. What specific words or phrases help your reader move from one idea to the next?
Clarify	Clarify the relationship between each sentence and the main idea by using details, examples, and other evidence that bring the main idea of the paragraph to life. Without details and examples, broader statements in the paragraph can seem abstract or hollow.
Rewrite	If more than one idea is conveyed in a single paragraph, either split the paragraph in two or rewrite the paragraph so that it establishes a relationship between both ideas.

(1) Using patterns of organization

When sentences are arranged in such a way that the relationship among ideas is clear as is the progression of those ideas, then the paragraph is **coherent**. The following patterns of organization are useful for creating unity and coherence.

- **Chronological order** (particularly useful in narration) arranges ideas according to the order in which things happened.
- **Spatial order** (effective in description) orients the reader's focus from right to left, near to far, top to bottom, and so on.
- **Emphatic order** (useful in expository and persuasive writing) arranges information in order of importance, usually from least to most important, which helps readers understand logical relationships.
- **Logical order** presents information from specific to general or from general to specific, as in the following paragraph.

> It was not the only disappointment my mother felt in me. In the years that followed, I failed her so many times, each time asserting my own will, my right to fall short of expectations. I didn't get straight As. I didn't become class president. I didn't get into Stanford. I dropped out of college. —AMY TAN, "Two Kinds"

(2) Using pronouns

Instead of repeating names or key words, use pronouns such as *both*, *their*, and *they* to keep references within a paragraph clear.

> Jim Springer and Jim Lewis were adopted as infants into working-class Ohio families. **Both** liked math and did not like spelling in school. **Both** had law enforcement training and worked part-time as deputy sheriffs. **Both** vacationed in Florida, **both** drove Chevrolets. Much has been made of the fact that **their** lives are marked by a trail of similar names. **Both** married and divorced women named Linda and had second marriages

with women named Betty. **They** named **their** sons James Allan and James Alan.

(3) Using repetition

Repeating words, phrases, structures, or ideas can help you link a sentence to those that precede it. Here the repetition of the pronoun *they* and references to *No Child Left Behind* link sentences.

> I recently encountered a mother who told me that her school "had some of those **Nickleby** kids" . . . in reference to **No Child Left Behind** kids. **NCLB**. It was said in a derogatory way, like the school was being dragged down because of these children. So who are these "**Nickleby**" kids? The voiceless ones who slipped through the system because **they** were someone else's problem. **They** were in someone else's school. But you know what? **They** weren't. And aren't. **They** are in almost every school. Your child's school. My daughters' schools. And **they** are gifted young people with much to offer our communities, our country, and our world.
>
> —MARGARET SPELLINGS, "Spellings Addresses PTA Convention"

(4) Using transitions

Even if your sentences are arranged in a seemingly clear sequence, they may be hard for readers to follow without transitions and other necessary connections.

Conjunctions and other transitional words or phrases indicate the logical relationship between ideas.

- The toddler cried, **and** he listened helplessly.
- The toddler cried **while** he introduced her to the babysitter.
- The toddler cried **because** he was putting on his coat.
- The toddler cried, **so** he gave her a cookie.

COMMONLY USED TRANSITIONS

Addition	and, and then, further, furthermore, also, too, again, in addition, besides
Alternative	or, nor, either, neither, on the other hand, conversely, otherwise
Comparison	similarly, likewise, in like manner
Concession	although this may be true, even so, still, nevertheless, at the same time, notwithstanding, nonetheless, in any event, that said
Contrast	but, yet, or, yet, however, on the contrary, in contrast
Exemplification	for example, for instance, in the case of
Intensification	in fact, indeed, moreover, even more important, to be sure
Place	here, beyond, nearby, opposite to, adjacent to, on the opposite side
Purpose	to this end, for this purpose, with this objective, in order to, so that
Repetition	as I have said, in other words, that is, as has been noted, as previously stated
Result or cause	so, for, therefore, accordingly, consequently, thus, thereby, as a result, then, because, hence
Sequence	next, first, second, third, in the first place, in the second place, finally, last, then, afterward, later
Summary	to sum up, in brief, on the whole, in sum, in short
Time	meanwhile, soon, after a few days, in the meantime, now, in the past, while, during, since

4 Revising and Editing Essays

Revising entails reviewing your writing in light of your overall purpose: your success at addressing your audience, the clarity of your thesis, the effectiveness of your arrangement, the development and detailed support of your assertions. When you are **editing**, you are polishing your writing: choosing precise words, shaping distinct prose, and structuring effective sentences. When you are **proofreading**, you focus even more: you eliminate surface errors in grammar, punctuation, and mechanics, and you check the formatting and documentation of your sources. If you set aside your writing for twenty-four hours, you will more likely return to it with a critical eye.

CONCERNS FOR REVISION

Look at your draft with a critical eye, considering the following areas closely.

- **Opportunity for writing.** Why are you writing on this topic in the first place?
- **Audience and purpose.** How does your purpose align with your audience?
- **Introduction.** How does it grab the reader?
- **Thesis statement.** How do you declare your purpose?
- **Organization.** According to what specific purpose is your information arranged?
- **Reasons and evidence.** What reasons, evidence, examples, and details do you use to support or extend your thesis?
- **Transitions.** How do you move your reader from one point to the next?

CONCERNS FOR REVISION

- **Conclusion.** How do you describe the consequences of your argument in a final attempt to encourage your audience to consider (if not commit to) a particular course of action?

4a Revising for unity and coherence

When revising the body of an essay, writers are likely to discover ways to make the essay itself more **unified** by relating the assertions and support of each individual paragraph to the thesis statement. After deleting, expanding, or compressing the information in each paragraph accordingly, writers concentrate on **coherence**, ordering their paragraphs purposefully (chronologically, spatially, emphatically, logically) so that a reader can easily follow the connections from one idea, sentence, and paragraph to the next **(3d)**.

4b Revising and editing paragraphs

Just as every paragraph should align itself with the thesis statement, each paragraph should have its own main idea, which often appears as a topic sentence **(3a)**. Every sentence in a paragraph should then align with the main idea or topic sentence. Sometimes, the main idea is implied by the cumulative effect of all the sentences in the paragraph. More often, writers open their paragraphs with an explicit topic sentence. Still, strong paragraphs can end with a topic sentence as well, as in the following paragraph:

> The first time I visited Texas, I wore a beige polyester-blend lab coat with reinforced slits for pocket access and mechanical-pencil storage. I was attending a local booksellers' convention, having just co-written a pseudo-scientific book . . . , and my publicist suggested that the doctor getup would attract attention. It did.

Everyone thought I was the janitor. *Lesson No. 1: When in Texas, do not dress down.* —PATRICIA MARX, "Dressin' Texan"

CHECKLIST FOR REVISING PARAGRAPHS

For more advice about developing and editing strong paragraphs, see chapter **3**.

- Does each paragraph include a topic sentence that states (or clearly implies) the main idea of the paragraph?
- Does every sentence in the paragraph align with the paragraph's main idea? Eliminate those that do not relate, or consider using them elsewhere.
- Check the detailed support in each paragraph. Are the reasons, evidence, examples, and details effective? What kinds of detailed support might be missing?
- What method or methods have been used to develop the paragraph? What other methods might also be effective, maybe more effective?
- What effective transitions are used to connect sentences?

4c Getting response

Before you submit your work to an instructor, take advantage of other opportunities for getting response to it. Consult with readers—at the writing center, in your classes, or in online writing groups—asking them for responses to your writing. The following questions will help your readers focus their responses as they read your draft closely.

- How does the draft fulfill all the requirements of the assignment?
- What rhetorical opportunity does the draft address?

- Who is the specific audience? How is that audience appropriate for the assignment?
- How is the tone appropriate? How does it align with the draft's audience and purpose? Is the stance on the topic made clear?
- What is the thesis statement? How is it focused? What assertions support the thesis statement? What evidence, examples, and details are used?
- What makes the arrangement of paragraphs effective? How might the organization be improved?
- What specifically makes the introduction effective? How is it engaging?
- How is the conclusion appropriate? How does it draw the draft together?

4d Editing and proofreading

If you are satisfied with the revised structure of your essay and the content of your paragraphs, you can edit individual sentences for clarity, effectiveness, and variety. Once you have revised and edited, then you must proofread the entire draft, making sure the final product is free from error.

CHECKLIST FOR EDITING SENTENCES

Sentences

- What is the unifying idea of each sentence (**23**)?
- How have you varied the lengths of your sentences? If your sentences tend to be the same length (whether long or short), revise them for variation (**27a**).
- How many of your sentences use subordination? Coordination? If you overuse any one sentence structure, revise for variation (**24**).

(Continued on page 26)

CHECKLIST FOR EDITING SENTENCES *(Continued)*

- Which sentences might be strengthened with parallel structure? Check that lists and series are in parallel form (**25**).
- Check that each verb agrees with its subject (**20f**). Check that every pronoun agrees with its antecedent (**21c**). Reread your sentences with these agreement issues in mind, revising accordingly.

Diction

- Check that you have not unintentionally repeated any words (**30**).
- Which general words can you make more specific (**29**)?
- How exactly is the vocabulary you have chosen appropriate for your audience, purpose, and context?
- Which technical or unfamiliar words have you defined for your audience?

CHECKLIST FOR PROOFREADING

Spelling

- Have you double-checked the words you frequently misspell and any the spell checker may have missed (**36**)? For example, check for misspellings that still form words (such as *form* for *from*).
- If you used a spell checker, did it overlook homophones (such as *there/their*, *who's/whose*, and *it's/its*)?
- Have you double-checked the spelling of all foreign words and all proper names?

Punctuation and Capitalization

- Check that each sentence has appropriate closing punctuation. Check that you use only one space after each end punctuation mark (**35**).
- Check that all punctuation within sentences—commas, semicolons, apostrophes, hyphens, and dashes—is used appropriately and placed correctly (**31, 32, 33**).

CHECKLIST FOR PROOFREADING

- Are direct quotations carefully and correctly punctuated (**34a**)? Where have you placed end punctuation with a quotation (**34c**)? Are quotations capitalized properly?
- Are all proper names, people's titles, and titles of published works correctly capitalized (**37**)?
- Are titles of works identified with quotation marks (**34b**) or italics (**38a**)?

5 Critical Reading and Textual Analysis

In your academic work, you will be called on to read a variety of complex visuals and texts that make arguments to support a position. You will need to identify the argument, the claims it makes, and the evidence it uses. To engage these texts fully, you must learn to read them actively and critically.

5a Critical reading

Because you cannot always take a message at face value, when you read critically, you concentrate, ask good questions, and comment thoughtfully on or about the text itself. Whether the text is print, electronic, spoken, visual, or some combination, you need to interpret it critically.

You already use this skill in your personal life when you are considering a friend's text message, a child's excuse, or a popular movie. For example, when you go to *Skyfall*, you watch the complex plot quickly unfold, asking yourself how the London

bombing, the Shanghai paradise, the Macau casino all connect with M, with Silva, with James Bond himself. All during the movie, you use similar critical skills, posing questions and making comments to yourself as you figure out the connections. In your academic life, you use the same questioning and commenting skills, whether you are reading finance problem sets, your political science textbook, or a speech class podcast.

Reading critically helps you establish what you already know about a topic or author, what you are likely to learn from the text, and what information is lacking. Reading critically also helps you gauge the expertise and credibility of the writer. In addition, the process helps you distinguish between actual content and your expectations for that content, a process that prepares you to handle a heavy academic reading and writing load.

CHECKLIST FOR CRITICAL READING

- **Consider your purpose.** What is your purpose for reading?
- **Preview the text.** What information does the title convey? What do you already know about the topic? What opinions do you hold about the topic?
- **Consider the author.** What do you know about the credibility of the author or creator? What is the author's purpose?
- **Read the text.** Identify the key parts of the text itself. How do they relate to one another? What parts do you find informative? Confusing?
- **Annotate.** Identify the key terms or characters in the text. How do they contribute (or not) to your understanding of the text?
- **Analyze the text.** With what parts of the text do you agree? Disagree? Does the author achieve his or her purpose? Why or why not?
- **Consider the effects of the text.** What parts of the text reinforced what you already knew? What you already value? What parts of the text surprised you? Why? What else would you like to know?

5b Textual analysis

When you analyze, you take care to evaluate the claims and positions of written and visual texts, whether they are advertisements, accounts of current events, or excuses for breaking a date (**6c**). Textual analysis is an intellectual skill closely aligned with argumentation, in that it serves as a mechanism for recognizing and examining the arguments of others as well as for formulating and then examining your own. Most communication is to some extent an argument, intended to influence the attitudes or actions of an audience. Writing is recognized as argumentative when it clearly supports a position. A résumé is an argument for a job interview, just as a warm welcome is an argument for you to enjoy an evening with friends.

Effective arguments are well developed, broken into strong assertions that are supported by intelligent and appropriate **evidence**. Effective arguments also take into consideration the **reasons** others might disagree. For readers to take the ideas in an argument seriously, the writer must communicate the reasons that have led to a position as well as the values and **assumptions** (assumed shared beliefs, often unstated) that underlie the writer's thinking.

Although many arguments are based on the use of assertions and support, some, like those of Stephen Toulmin, are rooted in a logical progression. The Toulmin method for understanding an argument provides yet another way for you to consider the elements of an argument for analysis.

FEATURES OF A TOULMIN ARGUMENT

The philosopher Stephen Toulmin defined **argument** as a logical progression, from the **data** (accepted evidence or reasons that support a claim), to the **claim** (a debatable or controversial statement), based on the **warrant** (the underlying assumption, like the major premise). If the warrant is controversial, it requires **backing** (independent support or justification).

(Continued on page 30)

FEATURES OF A TOULMIN ARGUMENT *(Continued)*

Starting with a general statement and then reasoning toward a conclusion, Toulmin's method establishes a reasonable relationship between the data and the claim, as in the following argument:

➤ Universities should not sell naming rights to buildings because education, not pleasing corporate sponsors, should be the universities' primary goal.

Data (support)	Selling naming rights to buildings makes pleasing the sponsors a top priority.
Claim	Universities should not sell naming rights to buildings.
Warrant	Education is the first priority of universities.

TIPS FOR ANALYZING AN ARGUMENT

- Read through the argument carefully. Determine the author's main point or thesis.
- Map out the supporting evidence that the author uses to support that thesis.
- Identify the kinds of sources the author uses. How reliable, current, and effective are they?
- Determine the author's qualifications, assumptions, and values. Identify evidence that supports the credibility (or lack thereof) of the author.
- Weigh your opinions against the author's, identifying places you agree and disagree with the author, assumptions you share and do not share.
- Evaluate the quality of the supporting examples or evidence the author uses to reinforce the position. Whether visual, verbal, or a combination, the reasons should be good ones, reasonable, practical, and ethical. What objections might be made to this series of good reasons?
- Identify the assumptions the author makes about the intended audience. How does the author reach out to that audience?

TIPS FOR ANALYZING AN ARGUMENT

- Consider your overall impression of the argument. What does the author want readers to do in response to the argument? If you were successfully, partially, or unsuccessfully persuaded by this argument, identify the passages that were effective or weak. How might the author strengthen those passages?

5c Basic appeals in an argument

Effective arguments always incorporate a combination of persuasive strategies, which include three general types of **appeal**.

(1) Ethical appeals

The most important appeal is the **ethical appeal** because it establishes the writer's credibility and trustworthiness. An ethical appeal demonstrates goodwill toward the audience, good sense or knowledge of the subject at hand, and good character. To identify the ethical appeal, look for the way the writer strives to establish common ground with readers in the introduction. Then, look for ways that the writer demonstrates a thorough knowledge of the topic to establish credibility. Also check biographical information that may accompany the text for personal and professional information about the author (qualifications, credentials, and experiences), all of which help establish good sense and moral character.

(2) Logical appeals

By providing good reasons (practical, moral, even aesthetic reasons) in the body of a text, an author establishes the **logical appeal**. Evidence, examples, statistics, comparisons, facts, expert opinions, and personal experiences or observations all constitute good logical appeals—if they are trustworthy, effective, and judicious. Evaluate these pieces of evidence and check facts; you cannot assume that all logical appeals are built on valid facts and sources.

(3) Emotional appeals

An **emotional appeal** connects the writer's beliefs and feelings with those of the audience. To identify an emotional appeal, look for language (examples, possible consequences, and so on) designed to stir emotions, build connections, and invoke shared values. Like the ethical and logical appeals, emotional appeals should also be trustworthy, never manipulative.

6 Writing Arguments

If everyone agreed on everything, there would be no need for **argument**, for taking a position, whether gently or forcefully. Therefore, a good deal of the writing you will do in school, at home, or at work will require you to take an arguable position on a topic. Arguments serve three basic purposes: (1) to analyze a complicated issue or question an established belief, (2) to express or defend a point of view, (3) and to invite or convince an audience to change a position or adopt a course of action.

6a Considering differing viewpoints

Behind any effective argument is a question that can generate more than one reasonable answer. Answers differ because people approach questions with various backgrounds, experiences, and assumptions, and they are often tempted to use reasoning that supports what they already believe. As a writer, employing such reasoning is a good place to start. However, as you expand your argument, you will want to demonstrate not only that you are knowledgeable about your topic but also that you have given fair consideration to other views about it.

When you choose a topic for argumentation, you will want to take a stance that provides you with a reason for writing, a problem to address or resolve (chapter **1**). At the same time, you must establish **common ground** with your audience, stating a goal toward which you both want to work or identifying a belief, assumption, or value that you both share. First, focus on a topic, on the part of some general subject that you will address in your essay, and then pose a question about it. Consider what you know about the topic and the following:

- your own values and beliefs with respect to the question
- how your assumptions might differ from those of your intended audience
- how you might establish common ground with members of your audience while respecting any differences between your opinion and theirs

The question you raise will evolve into your **thesis**, an arguable statement. To determine whether a topic might be suitable, make a statement about the topic.

"I believe strongly that . . . "

"My view is that . . . "

Then check to see if that statement can be argued.

6b Distinguishing between fact and opinion

When you develop your thesis statement into an argument, you use both facts and opinions. **Facts** are reliable pieces of information that can be verified through independent sources or procedures. **Opinions**, on the other hand, are assertions or inferences that may or may not be based on facts. Opinions that are widely accepted may seem to be factual when they are not; rather, they are assumptions. Facts are significant only when they are used responsibly to support a claim; otherwise, a thoughtful and well-informed opinion might have more impact and forge a stronger connection with your audience.

6c Taking a position or making a claim

When making an argument, a writer takes a position (called the **claim**) on a particular topic, which clearly states what the writer wants the audience to do with the information being provided. The central claim is the thesis for your argument and is articulated in your thesis statement.

Claims can be absolute or moderate, large or limited. Absolute claims assert that something is always true or false ("The sun will rise tomorrow"), completely good or bad ("All professional athletes dope"); moderate claims make less sweeping assertions ("It looks like rain" or "Unfortunately, some professional athletes have admitted to doping").

ABSOLUTE CLAIM College athletes are never good students.

MODERATE CLAIM Most colleges have low graduation rates for their athletes.

The stronger the claim, the stronger the evidence needed to support it. Be sure to consider the quality and the significance of the evidence you use—not just its quantity.

Claims may assert that something exists or is evident. Without making a value judgment, such a claim makes a point that can be supported by evidence.

- The job market for those who just received an MBA appears to be unlimited.
- The post office is raising rates again.

Claims may assert evaluations—that something has a specific quality, is good or bad, effective or ineffective, attractive or unattractive, successful or unsuccessful.

- The graduation rate for athletes at Penn State is very high compared with that at the other Big Ten universities.
- The public transportation system in Washington, DC, is reliable and safe.

Claims may also call for a specific action.

- We must find the funds to keep our successful and well-qualified high school teachers.
- We need to build a light-rail system linking downtown with the airport and the western suburbs.

6d Providing evidence for an effective argument

(1) Establishing reasons for the claim

If you want readers to take your ideas seriously, you must communicate the reasons that have led to your position as well as the values and **assumptions** (the underlying beliefs) of your thinking. When you are exploring your topic, make a list of the reasons that have led to your belief. If it is likely that your readers will not share an assumption, consider giving your reasons and offer supporting evidence. For example, when Anna Seitz was working on her argumentative essay (**6g**), she listed the following reasons for her belief that universities should not allow individuals or corporations to buy naming rights to campus buildings:

1. By purchasing naming rights, donors gain influence over educational policy decisions, even though they are not qualified to make such decisions.
2. Significant donations can adversely affect overall university finances by replacing existing funding sources.
3. Donors who purchase naming rights are associated with the university, in spite of the fact that they or their corporations may subscribe to a different set of values.

Although it is possible to base an argument on one good reason (such as "The selling of naming rights distracts from the educational purposes of universities"), doing so can be risky. When you show that you have more than one reason

for believing as you do, you increase the likelihood that your audience will find some measure of merit in your argument. Sometimes, however, one reason is more appropriate than several others you could advance. To develop an argument for which you have only one good reason, explore the bases underlying your reason: the assumptions that led you to take your stand.

Whether you have one reason or several, be sure to provide sufficient evidence from credible sources to support your claim: facts, statistics, examples, and testimony from personal experience or professional expertise. This evidence must be accurate, representative, and sufficient. Accurate information should be verifiable by others. Recognize, however, that even if the information a writer provides is accurate, it may not be representative or sufficient if it was drawn from an exceptional case, a biased sample, or a one-time occurrence. Whatever form of evidence you use, you need to make clear to your audience exactly *why* and *how* the evidence supports your claim.

(2) Responding to diverse views

Effective arguments consider and respond to other points of view, fairly and respectfully. The most common strategy for addressing opposing points of view is **refutation**: you introduce diverse views and then respectfully demonstrate why you disagree with or accept each of them. When you find yourself agreeing with a point that supports another side of the issue, you can benefit from offering a **concession**, which can demonstrate your fair-mindedness. If you admit that others are partially right, they are more likely to admit that you could be partially right as well.

(3) Using visuals

Visuals, such as tables, charts, graphs, photographs, and maps can strengthen your argument by offering evidence as well as organizing and describing facts and data.

TIPS FOR THINKING CRITICALLY ABOUT VISUALS

Before you incorporate a visual into your project, analyze the argument it makes and its purpose.

- Study the visual until you understand its claim.
- Determine the trustworthiness and accuracy of the visual. How does the creator of the visual establish credibility? What sources are used? Are they current and reliable?
- Determine if—and how—the visual incorporates rhetorical appeals: ethical, logical, or emotional (**5c**).
- Determine the purpose of the visual: to organize facts, present data, illustrate a piece of background, demonstrate authority.
- Identify the intended audience. What assumptions does the visual make about viewers? What background knowledge or attitudes would the audience likely have?
- If the visual includes words and images, consider how they work together. How do the words and visual elements relate to one another?
- Look closely at composition and the design of the visual. What colors, lines, shapes, positions of objects, or expressions of people do you notice? How do these elements relate to one another to make a point or serve the purpose of the visual?

Make clear how the visual supports the claim you are making in your text. Check the disciplinary conventions and models in your field for the kinds of visuals that are considered appropriate.

6e Using appeals to ground your argument

Effective arguments always incorporate a combination of three persuasive strategies: the **appeals** of ethos, logos, and pathos (**5c**). **Ethos** (an ethical appeal) establishes the

speaker's or writer's credibility and trustworthiness. An ethical appeal demonstrates goodwill toward the audience, good sense or knowledge of the subject at hand, and good character. Establishing common ground with the audience is another feature of ethos. **Logos**, a logical appeal consisting of good reasons, demonstrates an effective use of reason and judicious use of evidence, whether that evidence consists of facts, statistics, comparisons, anecdotes, expert opinions, personal experiences, or observations. Good reasons should be practical, moral, and aesthetic (meaning they should have a pleasing outcome). You employ your good reasons in the process of supporting claims, drawing reasonable conclusions, and avoiding rhetorical fallacies. **Pathos** (an emotional appeal) involves using language that will engage (not manipulate) the feelings of the audience by establishing empathy and authentic understanding. The most effective arguments combine these three persuasive appeals responsibly and knowledgeably.

6f Organizing an effective argument

No single organization is right for every written argument. The decisions you make about arrangement should be based on several factors: your topic, your audience, and your purpose. You can develop a good plan by listing the major points you want to make, deciding what order to put them in, and determining where to include refutation or concession. You must also decide where to place your thesis statement or claim.

Your conclusion should move beyond what has already been stated to reinforce your rhetorical purpose: the course of action you want your audience to take, an invitation to further understanding, or the implications of your claim.

FEATURES OF THE CLASSICAL ARRANGEMENT

One way to organize your argument is to use classical arrangement, which assumes that an audience is prepared to follow a well-reasoned argument.

Introduction	Introduce your issue and capture the attention of your audience. Begin establishing your credibility (using ethos) and common ground with your audience.
Background information	Provide your audience with a history of the situation and state how things currently stand. Define any key terms. Draw the attention of your audience to those points that are especially important and explain why they are meaningful.
Proposition	Introduce the position you are taking: present the argument itself and provide the basic reasons for your belief. Frame your position as a thesis statement or a claim.
Proof or confirmation	Discuss the reasons that have led you to take your position. Each reason must be clear, relevant, and representative. Provide facts, expert testimony, and any other evidence that supports your claim.
Refutation	Recognize and disprove the arguments of people who hold a different position and with whom you continue to disagree.
Concession	Concede any point with which you agree or that has merit; show why this concession might affect yet does not damage your own case.
Conclusion	Summarize your most important points and appeal to your audience's feelings, making a personal connection. Describe the consequences of your argument in a final attempt to encourage your audience to consider (if not commit to) a particular course of action or belief.

6g Sample argument

As you read the following essay by Anna Seitz, note her use of ethical, logical, and emotional appeals; reasoning; and arrangement. Also, identify the kinds of evidence she uses (facts, examples, testimony, or authority).

Anna Seitz
Professor Byerly
English 102
30 November 2012

Naming Opportunities: Opportunities for Whom?

Introduction

All over the nation, football stadiums, business schools, law schools, dining halls, and even coaching positions have become naming opportunities (also known as "naming rights" and "legacy opportunities"). Since the first college deal in 1979—when Syracuse University signed a deal with the Carrier Corporation for lifetime naming rights to its sports stadium, the Carrier Dome—naming has become a common practice with an alleged two-fold payoff: universities raise money, and donors get their names writ large. Universities use the money from naming opportunities to hire more faculty, raise salaries, support faculty research, provide travel opportunities for students, and build stadium suites and boxes for game watching. Reser Stadium (Oregon State), The Donald Bren School of Law (University of California–Irvine), or the KFC Yum! Center (University of Louisville)—all these naming opportunities

seem like a good solution for raising money, especially at a time when state legislatures have cut back on university funding and when wealthy alumni are being besieged for donations from every college they have ever attended. Naming opportunities seem like a good solution for donors, too, because their donations will be broadly recognized. While naming opportunities may seem like a perfect solution for improving colleges and universities and for simplifying funding, in reality they are not. Therefore, I argue against naming opportunities on college and university campuses because they create more problems than they solve.

The naming of sports stadiums is a familiar occurrence. After all, universities commonly highlight the sponsors of their athletic programs. But naming opportunities in other spheres of academic life are unfamiliar to most people, even though such naming is an established practice. A quick search of the web pages of university libraries reveals that many of them, especially those in the midst of major development campaigns, have created a price list just for naming opportunities. Entire buildings are available, of course. For example, a $3 million donation earns the right to name the music library at the University of Colorado Boulder (Williams). But even parts of buildings are also available these days. North Carolina State University is willing to name an exhibit case according to the donor's wishes for only $10,000 or put a specific name on a table in their reading room for $3,500 (Mulvey).

Background information

Naming opportunities can clearly bring in a good deal of money. It has become commonplace for schools to offer naming opportunities on planned construction in exchange for 51 percent of the cost of the building! That is a big head start to a building project, and naming opportunities may be what allow some schools to provide their students with better facilities than their unnamed counterparts. In fact, donors are often recruited for the opportunity to pay for named faculty chairs, reading rooms, or major library or art collections—all of which enhance student life.

Background information

Clearly the more opportunities and resources any university can offer current and potential students and even alumni, the more that university enhances its own growth and that of its faculty. Library donors and recipients say that if it is possible for a library to pay for a new computer lab just by adding a sign with someone's name over the door, the advantages often seem to outweigh the disadvantages. Proponents of naming opportunities point out that small donors are often hailed as library supporters, even when big donors are maligned as corporate flag-wavers.

Few would argue that these donations necessarily detract from the educational mission of the institution. However, selling off parts of a university library, for example, does not always please people, especially those whose responsibility includes managing

that donation. The curator of rare books and manuscripts at a prominent state university told me that one of the most frustrating parts of her job is dealing with "strings-attached" gifts, which is what too many library donations turn out to be (and why she wishes to remain anonymous). Some major donors like to make surprise visits, during which they monitor the prominence of their "legacy opportunity." Others like to create rules which limit the use of their funds to the purchase of certain collections or subjects; still others just need constant personal maintenance, including lunches, coffees, and regular invitations to events. But meddling in their donation after the fact is just a minor inconvenience compared to some donors' actions.

Background information

Donors who fund an ongoing educational program and give money on a regular basis often expect to have regular input. Because major donors want major prestige, they try to align themselves with successful programs. Doing that can result in damage to university budgets. First, high-profile programs can become increasingly well funded, while less prominent, less glamorous ones are ignored. Second, regularly available corporate or private funds can erode existing funding sources. Simply put, if a budgeted program becomes funded by donation, the next time the program needs funding, the department or unit will likely

Proposition

be told that finding a donor is their only option. Essentially, once donor-funded, always donor-funded.

Proposition

Additionally, many academics feel that selling off naming rights can create an image problem for a university. While buildings, schools, endowed chairs, even football stadiums were once named for past professors, university presidents, or others with strong ties to the university, those same facilities are now named for virtually anyone who can afford to donate, including corporations. A close relationship with or input from a corporation creates the appearance of a conflict of interest in a university, which is exactly the reason such arrangements are so often vehemently opposed by the university community. The University of Missouri arranged to name a new sports arena after Paige Laurie, whose parents are heirs to part of the Walmart fortune and donated $25 million (Dunn). In 2004, reports of a scandal surfaced that Laurie was guilty of extensive academic misconduct as an undergraduate at USC that forced her to return her diploma. The negative press related to the ethics scandal and the Laurie donation pressured the university to rename the Paige Arena, which quickly became the Mizzou Arena.

Proof

Given these drawbacks, many universities are establishing guidelines for the selection of appropriate donors for named gifts. To that end, fundraising professional Robert Hoak suggests that naming opportunities should be mutually beneficial for the donor (whether a corporation or an individual) and the organization (university, for instance) and that these opportunities should be

viewed as the start of a long-term relationship between the two, not the final gift. Additionally, he cautions that even if the donor seems the right fit for the organization, it is in the best interest of both parties to add an escape clause to the contract in order to protect either side from potential embarrassment or scandal. He provides the example of Seton Hall University, which regrettably had both an academic building and the library rotunda named for Tyco CEO Dennis Kozlowski. When Kozlowski was convicted of grand larceny, the university pulled the names (Hoak).

Proof

Although many people prefer that naming be a recognition of an accomplished faculty member or administrator, most realize that recruiting named gift donors is good business. Whether it is "good education" is another question. Naming university property for major donors should not be merely a sales transaction. New College in Cambridge, Massachusetts, was just that—until local clergyman John Harvard died and left half his estate and his entire library to what would soon become Harvard College. Modern naming opportunities, however, do not necessarily recognize and remember individuals who had significant influence on university life; rather, they create obligations for the university to operate in such a way as to please living donors or their descendants. Pleasing wealthy donors should not replace educating students as a university's primary goal.

Refutation

Works Cited

Works Cited page follows MLA style

Dunn, Paul. "When a Donor Becomes Tainted." *Nonprofit Quarterly* 17.1 (2010): n. pag. Web. 26 Nov. 2012.

Hoak, Robert. "Making the Most of Naming Opportunities." *on Philanthropy*. Changing Our World, 28 Mar. 2003. Web. 25 Nov. 2012.

Mulvey, Jim. "Donors Can Find Many Naming Opportunities for the D. H. Hill Library," *Focus Online* 25.2 (2005): 7. Web. 25 Nov. 2012.

Williams, James F. "Naming Opportunities." *CU University Libraries/ Dean's Office*. U of Colorado Boulder, 2012. Web. 25 Nov. 2012.

7 Designing Documents

Consistent, thoughtful use of design and effective visual elements in your writing—whether reports, essays, articles, or news stories—can enhance your message, engage your readers, and thus create an appropriate overall impression. The elements of design include typeface, layout, lists, headings, and color. The visual elements of writing can include tables, pie charts, line graphs, bar graphs, diagrams, photographs, maps, and even cartoons. For academic writing, be sure to check the formatting guidelines for your discipline. This handbook provides advice for formatting essays and other projects using style guides sponsored by the Modern Language Association (MLA), the American Psychological Association (APA), the *Chicago Manual of Style* (CMS), and the Council of Science Editors (CSE). If you are unsure of which style to follow, check with your instructor.

7a Elements of design

No matter what you compose, your first design decisions center on layout and typeface. Other choices, from those of headings to use of color, come later.

(1) Layout

Layout, also referred to as formatting, is the arrangement of the text on a page or screen, the **spacing**, and the **margins**. Final drafts of your academic projects will often be double-spaced, with indented paragraphs (usually one-half inch or five spaces, following the style of your discipline). Other documents, including lab reports and business documents

(such as memos, résumés, and letters) will be single-spaced and use an extra line space to indicate a new paragraph instead of indentation. Texts you create to be read online should also be single-spaced.

Appropriate use of margins and white space in your document guides readers and creates a sense of control and readability. Most of the writing (essays and reports) you do in school will be formatted for 8½-by-11-inch paper, usually with one-inch margins throughout. Use additional space around block quotations (often indented one inch), headings, and visuals, such as graphs and tables. MLA, APA, and other documentation styles offer specific guidelines for margins and the amount of space around block quotations, headings, and other visuals.

(2) Fonts or typefaces

The fonts and sizes of type used in a document can greatly affect readability. For most of your academic essays, professional reports, and other print documents, use serif fonts, such as Times New Roman, Garamond, or Century. Regarded as most readable for printed works (including this book), these fonts include serifs, those little tails that elongate the tips of most of the letters. Fonts without serifs (sans serif fonts), such as Arial, Lucida Sans, and Calibri, are said to be easier to read on the screen, so they are the popular typeface choice for web texts. For print documents using multiple fonts, sans serif fonts are effective when used in headings, subheadings, or captions.

For most academic work, you will use 10-, 11-, or 12-point type. A wide variety of fonts are available. Use the decorative or amusing ones (such as ALGERIAN, *Blackadder*, and Curlz MT) sparingly because they are difficult to read in large passages.

Use **bold**, *italicized*, or underlined text options for emphasis. For example, bold can be useful to distinguish headings, and italic type is used to set off titles and words being defined.

Your use of type style often depends on your academic discipline, so be sure you follow the appropriate formatting rules—MLA, APA, CMS, or CSE—for your field.

(3) Headings

Headings provide visual signposts for your audience that offer help navigating your text and understanding its organization. Consider the wording of your headings carefully, making sure they are concise and consistent throughout your document. Word your headings informatively so they relay the essence of the text they accompany. Use grammatically parallel structures, either a noun (*Vaccination*), phrases with gerunds (*Mandating Vaccination*), or questions (*Should States Mandate Additional Vaccinations?*). In many cases, the wording of headings will be dictated by the documentation style you use (for example, *Abstract* or *References* in APA style).

Your discipline may also have guidelines for the placement and format of your headings, for example, requiring that they be centered. (APA style offers specific instruction for the style and placement of headings.) In most academic writing, you might

Center and Use Boldface for Your First-Level Heading

Align Left Your Second-Level Heading or Subheading

Underline and Merge Your Third-Level Heading with the paragraph information that follows. However you use headings, position them consistently and follow the guidelines of your discipline.

(4) Lists and examples

Purposeful lists and examples also enhance your design. Many writers use bullets, numbers, or letters to highlight lists and examples. Choose bulleted lists when the items are related but may appear in any order. Use numbered or lettered lists when

the sequential order of items is important (as in "first, do this; second, do that"). Lists are always indented, at least one-half inch, and single-spaced. Leave white space around your list, on both sides as well as above and below.

(5) Color

To use color appropriately in your documents, first consider the conventions in your discipline and assignment, along with your purpose and audience. Use of color helps you draw attention to headings or to other elements on a page, including graphs, charts, or other visuals. Position colors thoughtfully, keeping the number of colors to a minimum, and use them consistently throughout. Choose legible colors that offer contrast, and check that colors you choose will work well in the final product. Color combinations that are strong and legible on your screen may look different to your readers when printed or projected.

7b Using visuals

Many academic and professional documents that are primarily composed of text also make substantial use of visuals, or **graphics**, to clarify written material. Because they are fully integrated into the overall argument of the text, such visuals are much more than decoration. Used purposefully, they organize and clarify evidence or establish credibility. All visuals should be cited carefully and used ethically.

TIPS FOR USING VISUALS EFFECTIVELY

- Choose images that have a clear purpose and that relate clearly to a point you are making in your text.
- Insert visuals following or near the text that refers to them. Give each visual a number (*Figure 1* or *Fig. 1*), and number tables separately. Include a title for each.

TIPS FOR USING VISUALS EFFECTIVELY

- Identify the visual in your text, clarifying the connection or purpose for including it (*Fig. 2 presents the number of children with high lead levels over time*).
- Following the rules of your discipline, include documentation for each visual in your bibliography. For visuals you create using data or information in a source, you must cite the source of that information.
- Obtain permission to include visuals from other sources if you plan to publish your work online or outside your course.
- Resize, crop, and edit images if necessary, taking care not to alter meaning or distort the original point of a visual you find in another source. Check to be sure for any maps, charts, diagrams, or graphs that all elements of the graphic and its labels are clear, so that readers will understand the information.

(1) Tables

Tables use a row-and-column arrangement to organize data (numbers or words) spatially. They are especially useful for presenting great amounts of numerical information in a small space, enabling the reader to draw direct comparisons among pieces of data or even to locate specific items. When you design a table, be sure to label all of the columns and rows accurately and to provide both a title and a number for the table. The table number and title traditionally appear above the table body, as table 7.1 demonstrates, and any notes or source information should be placed below it.

(2) Charts and graphs

Charts and graphs display relationships among statistical data in visual form by using lines, bars, or other visual elements rather than just letters and numbers. **Pie charts** are especially useful for showing the relationship of parts to a whole (see fig. 7.1), but they can only be used to display sets of data that add up to 100 percent (a whole).

Table 7.1

Identified Prevalence of Autism Spectrum Disorders
Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network 2000–2008
Combining Data from All Sites

Surveillance Year	Birth Year	Number of ADDM Sites Reporting	Prevalence per 1,000 Children (Range)	This is about 1 in X children . . .
2000	1992	6	6.7 (4.5–9.9)	1 in 150
2002	1994	14	6.6 (3.3–10.6)	1 in 150
2004	1996	8	8.0 (4.6–9.8)	1 in 125
2006	1998	11	9.0 (4.2–12.1)	1 in 110
2008	2000	14	11.3 (4.8–21.2)	1 in 88

Source: "Data and Statistics," *Autism and Spectrum Disorders*, CDC (http://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/autism/data.html).

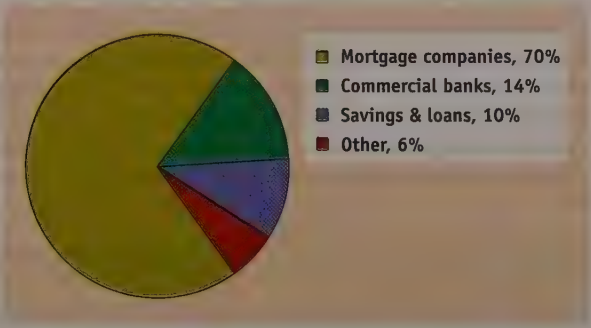


Figure 7.1. Pie chart showing issuers of mortgage-based securities.
Copyright © Cengage Learning®

Bar charts show correlations between two variables that do not change smoothly over time. For instance, a bar chart might

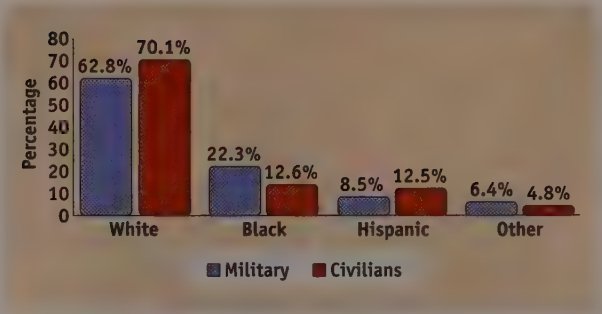


Figure 7.2. Bar chart illustrating the composition of the U.S. military.
Copyright © Cengage Learning®

illustrate the relative speeds of various computer processors or statistics about the composition of the U.S. military (see fig. 7.2).

(3) Maps

Historical, economic, and geographic accounts often call for the use of maps (see fig. 7.3).

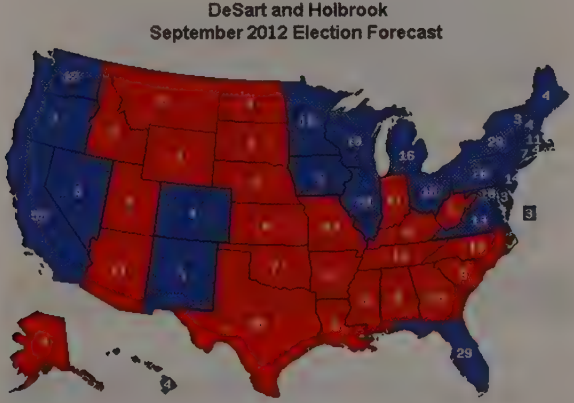


Figure 7.3. 2012 Presidential election forecast map.
Source: DeSart, Jay, and Thomas Holbrook

THEN I'LL HUFF, AND I'LL PUFF...
AND I'LL REMODEL YOUR LOVELY HOME!
TIM EAGAN.COM
NOT ONLY THAT...
IT'S A GREAT SOURCE OF ROUGHAGE!
YES, APRICOT LIP GLOSS! AND I PROMISE...
NO TONGUE!
Our Moral:
AND SO, IT'S NOT SO MUCH ABOUT OUR POLICIES...
AS IT IS ABOUT MESSAGING

Figure 7.4. Cartoon (*Our Moral*, by Tim Eagan) illustrating a political idea.
Source: Tim Eagan/Cagle Cartoons

(4) Cartoons

Sometimes a cartoon can enhance your writing, as political, medical, and educational humor often brings home a point even better than words do. In the cartoon shown in figure 7.4, the reader is asked to separate the alleged policies from the message itself.

7c Using pictures effectively

Pictures include photographs, sketches, technical illustrations, paintings, icons, and other visual representations. Photographs are often used to reinforce textual descriptions or to

show a reader exactly what something looks like. But photographs are not always the most informative type of picture. Compare the two images in figure 7.5. Although the photograph is a more realistic image of a small wind turbine, the

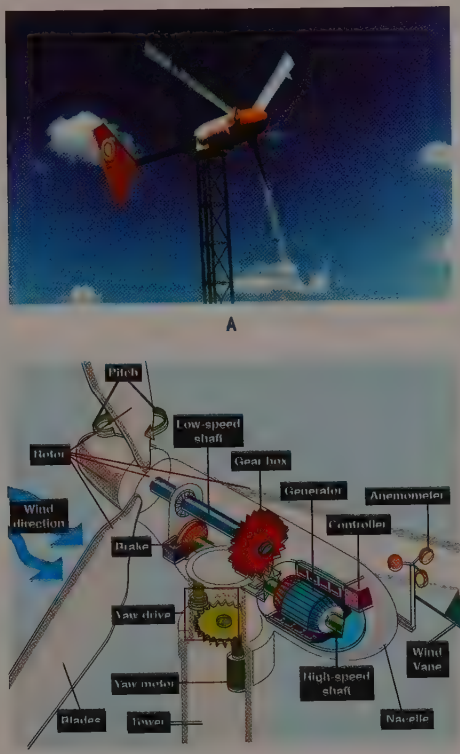


Figure 7.5. A photo and a drawing of a small wind turbine.
Sources: photo (A)—© Bergey Windpower Co., National Renewable Energy Laboratory, http://images.nrel.gov; illustration (B)—National Renewable Energy Laboratory, http://plainswindeis.anl.gov/guide/basics/index.cfm

illustration more clearly shows the wind turbine's important features: rotor, gearbox, generator, and so forth. Line drawings enable the designer of a document to highlight specific elements of an object while de-emphasizing or eliminating unnecessary information.

Planning Research 58

- **a** Considering your assignment 58
- **b** Formulating research questions 59
- **c** Testing research questions 61
- **d** Creating a research plan 62

Finding Appropriate Sources 64

- **a** Considering kinds of sources 64
- **b** Searching electronically 65
- **c** Locating reference works 68
- **d** Locating articles 68
- **e** Locating books 70
- **f** Locating online sources 70
- **g** Keeping track of your sources 71
- **h** Doing field research 72

Evaluating Print and Online Sources 75

- **a** Credibility of authors 75
- **b** Credibility of publishers 77
- **c** Online sources 78
- **d** Reading closely and critically 80

Using Sources in Your Writing 81

- **a** Taking and organizing notes 81
- **b** Creating a working bibliography 82
- **c** Acknowledging your sources 85
- **d** Using direct quotations 88
- **e** Paraphrasing 90
- **f** Summarizing 92
- **g** Analyzing and responding to sources 93
- **h** Synthesizing sources 96
- **i** Critical thinking 97

Quoting Others and Avoiding Plagiarism 98

- **a** Determining what to acknowledge 99
- **b** Citing quoted or paraphrased material 101
- **c** Understanding citation and documentation 102

8 Planning Research

Research is much more than the act of searching for information. It consists of posing intriguing, challenging questions. Seeking information is a response to these questions. In fact, thinking of research as **inquiry**, as asking questions and finding answers, will help you to craft a research question, or a set of related questions, as well as to create a plan that focuses your attention and makes your work efficient.

8a Considering your assignment

When you are given an assignment that calls for research, begin by asking yourself why you are doing this research and who will benefit from your research findings. Common purposes for doing research include the following:

- **To inform an audience.** The researcher reports current thinking on a specific topic, including opposing views, factual information, and credible evidence.
- **To analyze and synthesize information and then offer possible solutions.** The researcher analyzes a topic and synthesizes the available information about it, looking for points of agreement and disagreement and for gaps in coverage. Sometimes the researcher offers possible ways to address any problems found.
- **To convince or issue an invitation to an audience.** The researcher states a position and backs it up with data, statistics, testimony, corroborating texts or events, or supporting arguments. The researcher's purpose is to persuade readers to take the same position.

Next, consider your audience. Who are your readers, and what do they most need to know? What kinds of sources and evidence will they find reliable? Also important is consideration of your stance (or attitude). Will you be able to keep an open mind as you do your research? Will you be able to take into account multiple points of view?

Before you start to write, be sure you understand your instructor's expectations for length, format, due date, and other practical matters. Creating a research plan will help you meet these expectations and complete your work on time (**8d**).

8b Formulating research questions

Research questions often arise when you try to relate what you are studying to your own experience. For instance, you may start wondering about voting regulations while reading about past elections for a history class and, at the same time, noticing news stories about the role technology plays in current elections or the unfair practices reported in some states. Each of these observations may give rise to a different question. Focusing on the influence of technology may prompt you to inquire, "What are the possible consequences of having only electronic ballots?" However, if you focus on unfair voting practices, you may ask, "How do voting procedures differ from state to state?" Because you can ask a variety of research questions about any topic, choose the one that interests you the most and allows you to fulfill your assignment.

To generate useful research questions, you may find it helpful to ask yourself about causes, consequences, processes, definitions, or values.

What caused the power outage during the 2013 Super Bowl in New Orleans?

What are the consequences of taking selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) for a long period of time?

How do musicians decide whether to charge for access to their music online?

Do psychiatrists agree on a definition for Internet addiction?

Should the federal minimum wage be raised?

Although choosing just one question will make your research efficient, you may find it beneficial to answer more than one question when you write your paper. For example, if you explain the debate over the minimum wage, you may also decide to define *federal minimum wage*. Regardless of how many questions you ask, the best research questions are challenging, focused, and connected to current facts or events. A question such as *Do psychiatrists agree on a definition for Internet addiction?* is much more focused than *What is Internet addiction?*

TIPS FOR FINDING A CHALLENGING RESEARCH QUESTION

First find a topic.

- What problem or issue from one of your classes would you like to address?
- What have you read or observed recently that piqued your curiosity?
- What local or school problem would you like to explore or help solve?
- Is there anything (lifestyles, political views, global events) that you find unusual or intriguing enough to investigate?

Once you have a topic, jot down all the questions you have about that topic. (Think about causes, consequences, processes, definitions, and values.) Choose the most specific question that will interest both you and your audience and that will help you address your assignment. Be sure the question cannot be easily answered with a *yes* or *no*.

Testing research questions

You can test your research question to see whether it is effective by first making sure you and others are sincerely interested in answering this question. At the same time, double-check your assignment for length restrictions and decide whether your research question is specific enough to be addressed in the space available. Finally, because any assignment comes with deadlines, determine whether you have the time and resources available to answer the question by the due date.

TIPS FOR TESTING YOUR RESEARCH QUESTION

To test your research question, start a conversation about it by having a friend or classmate interview you about its potential. If no one is available, sharpen your ideas by *writing* your answers.

- Why is it important for you to answer this research question?
- Are there more than two ways of answering this question?
- Why is it important for your audience to know the answer to the question?
- Why does the answer to your question require research?
- What type of research might help you answer your question?
- Will you be able to carry out the necessary research in the amount of time and space allowed?

After you have a strong research question, you are ready to start gathering information and exploring sources. Your preliminary reading of appropriate sources will help you go from your research question to a tentative or working thesis statement (**8d**).

8d Creating a research plan

As you craft your research question, you may find it helpful to draft a plan for your research project as well.

1. Create a research question. *Due:* _____

It is easy to rush to answer your question, even before you have done any research. Try to keep an open mind until you have consulted some of your sources (**8a, 8b**).

2. Note the assignment's requirements. *Due:* _____

Clarify your instructor's expectations. *What is the due date? What is the approximate length of the research project? What style manual should you use (MLA, APA, CMS, CSE)? What point of view is appropriate (first person, third person, a combination)? What is the medium of delivery? Are you expected to print out a document? Post a document online? Prepare an oral presentation? Incorporate visuals?* If you have not already received sufficient information about your assignment, ask your instructor these questions as soon as possible.

3. Establish your audience and purpose. *Due:* _____

Knowing who your readers are and what your purpose is will help you not only to decide what types of sources to use but also to establish an appropriate tone. Your instructor will be one of your readers. *Does your assignment expect you to consider other readers as well?*

4. Decide which types of sources to use. *Due:* _____

Assignments differ. *Will your research require the use of a wide range of sources—books, articles, and websites? Or does your assignment call for the use of historical archives?* If you are having trouble determining which sources to use, ask your instructor or a reference librarian for help.

5. Find, review, and evaluate sources. *Due:* _____

Chapters **9** and **10** provide guidance in finding and evaluating sources. Be sure to give yourself plenty of time to locate your sources, read them, and take notes.

6. Develop a tentative thesis statement and an outline or description of the overall structure of your paper. *Due:* _____

Once you have done sufficient research, you are ready to answer your question in the form of a thesis statement (**2b**). This statement will form the governing idea of your essay. Remember that thesis statements are related to your purpose. *Are you providing your audience with general information? Are you reporting on your analysis of information? Are you proposing a solution to a problem? Are you persuading your audience to change their opinion or take action?* The thesis statement generally appears in the first paragraph or two of a research project. The subsequent paragraphs serve as support for the thesis statement.

7. Write a first draft. *Due:* _____

As you write, keep your thesis statement in mind, revising it if you need to. Be willing to do additional research if necessary.

8. Get the response of readers. *Due:* _____

Allow time before you turn in your final draft to get feedback from other readers—students in your class or tutors at a writing center.

9. Revise. *Due:* _____

Use reader feedback to revise your work (**4c**).

10. Edit, proofread, and polish (**4d**). *Due:* _____

9 Finding Appropriate Sources

Whenever you do research, you can choose from a wide variety of sources—books, articles, online material, even your own fieldwork. Choosing appropriate sources depends on your assignment and research question. If you are unsure of what types of sources to use, ask a reference librarian or clarify the assignment with your instructor.

9a Considering kinds of sources

As you consider which sources might be the most useful for your project, remember that there are significant differences among kinds of sources.

(1) Primary and secondary sources

Primary sources provide firsthand information. In the humanities, primary sources may include documents such as archived letters, historical records, and papers, as well as literary, autobiographical, and philosophical texts. Primary sources do not have to be in written form. Artwork, photographs, and audio and video recordings are also considered primary sources. In the social sciences, primary sources can be field observations, case histories, survey data, and interviews. In the natural sciences, primary sources are generally empirical and include field observations and experimental results. **Secondary sources** are commentaries on or descriptions of primary sources. They may offer summary or interpretation and appear as reviews, reports, scholarly biographies, and surveys of the work done on a specific topic.

(2) Scholarly and popular sources

Scholarly books and journals contain reports of original research written by experts for an academic audience. Professional or trade books and magazines feature articles written by staff writers or industry specialists. Popular books, magazines, and newspapers are generally written by staff writers, though scholars are frequently invited to contribute articles written for a lay audience.

(3) Current and older material

When writing about current issues, you will need to use up-to-date sources. However, to place an issue in a historical context, search for older sources and documents from the appropriate historical period.

(4) Biased or impartial sources

You will find the best support for your assertions by using sources that are impartial, that is, sources that treat all points of view fairly (chapter **10**). Nonetheless, including a clearly biased source can be useful to bring in other viewpoints or to demonstrate that certain ways of discussing an issue are faulty in some way (**6c**).

9b Searching electronically

Whenever you are searching for sources—either electronic or print material—you will need to know how to use online search tools. Your library's website will likely have a search tool for its catalog of print sources and various search tools connected to the library's **databases**. The better you are at using these tools, the more efficient your research will be. If you are working in the library, a reference librarian will be able to help you learn to use these tools.

Whether you are using a popular **search engine** (such as Bing, Google, or Yahoo!), a **subject directory** designed for academic research (such as Internet Public Library or The WWW Virtual

Library), or a search tool on your library's website, you will be able to narrow your findings by conducting an **advanced search**.

Searches generally start with **keywords**, so choosing just the right word or phrase is important. If you start with a keyword search and find that you are not locating useful sources, you could first try a related term or a synonym, for example, using *wind energy* for *wind power.* You could also try using terms that are more specific or more general. If you were interested in sources of wind energy, a search for *wind farms* would be more specific than *wind energy* and more general than *wind turbines.* Most online search tools allow you to filter your results by searching for sources that match (1) the exact phrase, (2) some words but not others, (3) words related in form, or (4) alternative spellings of a word. When you know the name of an author or the title of a work, you will be able to search for the author or title directly.

TIPS FOR REFINING KEYWORD SEARCHES

The options for refining your search will vary depending on the database or search engine you choose, but most will include the following methods.

- Use **quotation marks** around terms to search for exact phrases. If you find that many search results are irrelevant when you do a general search, enclose a phrase in quotation marks to narrow results.
- Combine words or phrases using the connectors AND, OR, or NOT (sometimes called **Boolean operators**) to limit or widen a search. For example, you could try *Marion AND Ohio* for results that include both keywords, *Buckeye OR Ohio* for results that contain information about either keyword, or *Marion NOT Ohio* for results that exclude mention of Ohio.
- Use **truncation** to broaden a search so that results will include various forms of a word (for example, *manage*, *management*, *manager*). Use the root of the words you are searching for and place an asterisk after it (*manag**).

TIPS FOR REFINING KEYWORD SEARCHES

- Use **wildcards** (such as a question mark: *industriali?ation*) to broaden a search so that the results will include various spellings (for example, *industrialization* and *industrialisation*).
- Use **parentheses** around terms to further customize and group one term with keywords: *obesity AND (childhood OR preschoolers)*.

Most search tools have features that allow you to perform advanced searches and thus limit the results in a number of ways. The ProQuest database shown in figure 9.1, for example, shows a few ways one user has limited a search by source type and date, among other options.

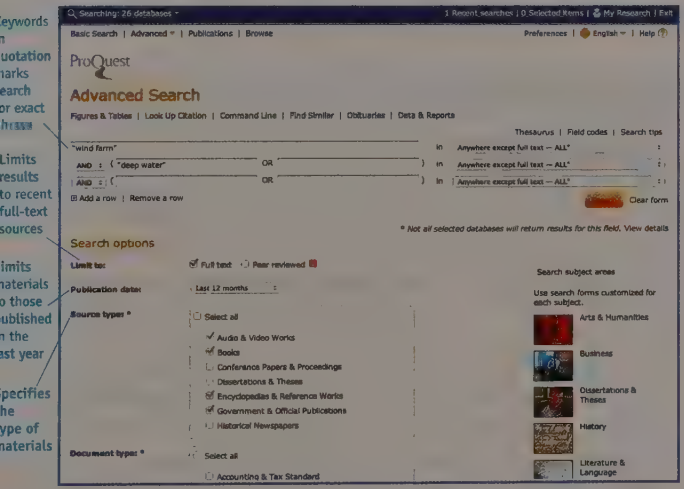


Figure 9.1. Advanced search using keywords in a database.
Source: ProQuest

Locating reference works

To begin a research project, you may find it useful to consult general or specialized reference works, including the encyclopedias, dictionaries, bibliographies, atlases, almanacs, and other resources available at your library. These works—many available online—will help you find background information about people, events, and concepts related to your topic. Especially helpful are specialized reference works—such as the *Encyclopedia of Psychology* or the *Dictionary of American History*—which not only provide in-depth information on a topic but also offer extensive lists of other sources to consult. *Wikipedia* is a popular source for information, but it is sometimes considered unreliable because contributors are not always experts in a field and because facts are not always verified before they are published.

Locating articles

Articles in **periodicals** (publications that appear at regular intervals) offer information that is often more recent than that found in books. Periodicals include journals, magazines, and newspapers and can be published in print, online, or both.

To find articles, you may search the web, but such a general search will most likely yield unreliable sources as well as others that charge a fee for you to access an article. A better way to locate articles is to access your library's **databases**, which are collections of articles indexed according to author, title, date, keywords, and other features (**9b**). The databases you may access include general databases covering a wide range of subject areas and specialized databases and indexes that offer material specific to one subject or discipline. For older articles that are not online, you should consult a print index at your library.

GENERAL DATABASES

Academic Search Complete: Multidisciplinary database of journals and magazines, many full-text versions, via EBSCOhost

Expanded Academic ASAP: Database of journals and periodicals covering a wide variety of disciplines

Google Scholar: Search tool for articles, books, and other documents from academic sources and other sites, though it may be necessary to access the full text via your library

InfoTrac: Database of articles on a wide variety of subjects from journals and magazines

JSTOR: Database for digital library books, primary sources, and articles from journals in the arts, humanities, sciences, and social sciences

LexisNexis Academic: Database strong in coverage of legal as well as local, national, and world news sources

ProQuest: Large database of news and academic sources, in areas ranging from arts, literature, and social sciences to business, technology, medicine, and natural sciences

SUBJECT-SPECIFIC DATABASES

ERIC: Database for information on education

MLA International Bibliography: Database of research in literature, language, and film

PsycINFO: Database for psychology research

ScienceDirect: Database for research in the physical, life, health, and social sciences

To search a database, you will usually begin with a keyword search for terms related to your research question. If your list of results is too large, use the tips for refining keyword searches (**9b**).

9e Locating books

Books published by reputable companies provide comprehensive and authoritative coverage of a topic. You can find books related to your research question by using your library's online catalog and conducting searches using a keyword, author, or title. Experiment with keywords, choosing a word or phrase you think might be found in the title of a book or in notes in the catalog's records. You can also try a subject search by entering words related to your topic; if the search does not yield any results, ask a reference librarian for a subject-heading guide. (A source's detailed record in your library catalog will feature subject headings that you may also use to expand your search.) Once you find the online catalog record for a book you would like to use, write down its **call number**, which indicates where the book is shelved. Some library catalogs will also allow you to send yourself a text message that includes the call number.

Take time when you reach the shelves to scan for related books nearby that may offer additional information.

9f Locating online sources

Material on the web varies greatly in its reliability. Although the facts provided on some websites have been carefully checked, facts on other websites have not undergone close examination.

Colleges, universities, and individual scholars may have reliable websites, blogs, or other information related to your topics. But quality can vary, so take time to evaluate any online source you are thinking of using (**10c**).

By sifting through your search results, you will be able to find a great deal of useful information, for example, current news events, maps, historical documents, and government

reports, statistics, and legislative materials. Here is a list of types of websites to consider as you do your research:

- **Government sites.** Federal, state, and local governments provide an abundance of information. USA.gov directs you to sources on topics ranging from art to zoos.
- **News sites.** Newspapers, magazines, radio, and television stations sponsor websites that provide frequently updated news reports. Archived news stories are also sometimes available (though your library may offer easier access via a database).
- **Discussion lists and forums.** You may be able to find experts on topics by joining newsgroups, discussion groups, forums, or online mailing lists. To find such groups or access archived discussions, use a search engine or specialized service such as Google Groups.
- **Digital archives.** Archives are of particular interest if you need artifacts from the past—maps, speeches, drawings, documents, and recordings. The National Archives and the Library of Congress are good places to start.
- **Blogs and wikis.** As starting points, blogs and wikis can provide overviews of topics or issues as well as links to primary sources. However, because they are not generally reviewed by experts, they are often not considered reliable academic sources. Avoid using information from these sources without your instructor's approval.

9g Keeping track of your sources

As you start gathering sources, be sure to keep them organized. For online and other non-print sources, it is a good idea to keep a separate record of the **access date** (the date on which you visited the source) and the **publication date** (the date on which

the source was published or last modified). The publication date generally appears on the bottom of the website's home page.

- **Bookmarks.** Bookmark any sources you find on the web, using the most stable URL you can find, which in the case of online journals, magazines, and newspapers is a home page.
- **Database and library accounts.** Your library site may allow you to use your personal account to collect and organize sources using bookmarking tools. Some databases also offer this service, which will allow you to save and retrieve your search history.
- **Downloads.** If you decide to download PDFs or other materials, be sure to label them and place them in folders clearly labeled for your project.
- **Photocopies and printouts.** Keep printouts together by stapling them and placing them in clearly labeled file folders.
- **Reference management systems.** To organize your bibliographic entries, consider using a reference management system such as EndNote, RefWorks, or Zotero. Check to see which system your library supports.

9h Doing field research

Interviews, observations, and surveys are the most common methods of **field research**.

(1) Interviews

Interviews can take place in person, via e-mail, or over the phone.

1. **Arrange the interview.** E-mail or phone to request an interview. Be sure to introduce yourself, briefly describe your project, and explain your reasons for requesting the interview. Try to accommodate the person you hope to

interview by asking him or her to suggest an interview date. If you intend to record your interview, ask for permission.

2. **Prepare for the interview.** Consult sources on your topic, especially any written by the person you will be interviewing. Start preparing your list of questions before the day of the interview, using a blend of open (or broad) questions and focused (or narrow) questions that begin with *why*, *when*, *what*, *who*, *where*, or *how.*
3. **Conduct the interview.** Before the interview begins, remind the person that you are interviewing that you will be recording the conversation or taking notes. Although you will have prepared questions, do not feel that you must ask all your questions in the order you wrote them. Listen closely to responses and follow up with related questions, perhaps even ones you had not thought of beforehand. If responses are elaborate, you may find that you do not have to ask each of your questions.
4. **Reflect on the interview.** Review and expand your notes or transcribe the relevant parts of the recording. Write extensively about the interview, asking yourself what you found most important, most surprising, and most puzzling. Send your thanks via a written note or an e-mail message.

(2) Observations

Observations yield detailed information about human activity.

1. **Establish the goals of your observation.** With a clear purpose in mind, you will be able to focus your attention.
2. **Set up an appointment, if necessary.** In some settings, such as in a school or hospital, you will need to obtain permission for your observation.

3. **Take detailed notes.** A helpful method for note-taking during observations is to divide each page of your paper in half vertically. Keep your notes on the left side of the page and leave space on the right side of the page for later commentary.
4. **Analyze your observation.** Review your notes looking for both patterns and behaviors or events that veer from the ordinary. On the right side of your notebook page, write down your comments; whenever possible, explain the patterns and deviations you have found.

(3) Surveys

Whereas an interview elicits information from one person whose name you know, a survey provides information from a number of anonymous people.

1. **Compile a list of questions.** To be effective, a survey questionnaire should be short and focused. If the list of questions is too long, people may not be willing to take the time to answer them all. If the questions are not focused on your research topic, you will find it difficult to integrate the results into your project.
2. **Decide who you would like to participate and how you will contact them.** Some surveys are done in person or by phone. Others are sent to participants via regular mail or e-mail. Surveys conducted through e-mail often include a link to a web service such as SurveyMonkey.
3. **Design the survey to introduce your purpose and review your distribution method.** Begin your survey questionnaire with an introduction stating the purpose of the questionnaire, how the results will be used, and how many questions it contains or approximately how

long it should take to complete. In the introduction, assure participants that their answers will remain confidential. Before you distribute your questionnaire, check with your instructor or the institutional review board (IRB) on your campus to make certain that you have followed appropriate guidelines. It is often helpful to ask a few friends to "test-drive" your questionnaire to see whether all the questions are clear.

4. **Analyze your results.** Once the questionnaires have been completed and returned, tally the results for all but the open questions. Read through the open questions and look for patterns in the responses. Try to create categories for the responses that will help you tally the answers.

10 Evaluating Print and Online Sources

After you find sources that seem to address your research question, you will need to judge their credibility.

10a Credibility of authors

Credible (or trustworthy) authors present facts accurately, support their opinions with compelling evidence, connect their ideas reasonably, and demonstrate respect for any opposing views. To evaluate the credibility of authors whose work you might like to use, consider their credentials, examine their values and beliefs, and note the response they receive from other readers. Credentials include academic or professional training,

publications, and experience. The author's credentials may be found on the jacket or in the preface of a book, in a note in an article, or on a page in the journal or on the website devoted to providing background on contributors. Some search tools will allow you to see the influence of the author's work by including a link to other sources that cite articles or books written by the author.

CHECKLIST FOR ASSESSING AN AUTHOR'S CREDENTIALS

- Does the author's education or profession relate to the subject of the work?
- With what institutions, organizations, or companies has the author been affiliated?
- What awards has the author won?
- What other works has the author produced?
- Do other experts speak of the author as an authority or link to the author's work? Check Google Scholar, for example, for works by the author and then review the listed "cited by" information.

An author's values and beliefs underpin his or her research and publications. To determine what these values and beliefs are, consider the author's purpose and intended audience. For example, on the subject of malpractice suits, a lawyer may write an article to convince patients to sue health providers, a doctor may write an essay for other doctors to highlight the frivolous nature of malpractice claims, while a linguist might prepare a conference paper that reveals miscommunication to be at the core of malpractice suits. By identifying the underlying values and beliefs, you can responsibly discuss information in your sources.

CHECKLIST FOR DETERMINING AN AUTHOR'S BELIEFS AND VALUES

- What is the author's educational and professional background?
- With what types of organizations do the author and publisher affiliate themselves?
- What is the author's stance? What is the stance of the organization publishing the author's work? How conservative, moderate, or liberal does the publisher appear to be?
- What, if any, signs of bias on the part of the author or the publisher can you detect in the language used? In the title? In the advertising? Is the information presented factual? Objective?
- To what types of websites do any links lead?
- How can you use the source? As fact? Opinion? Example? Authoritative testimony? Material to be refuted?

Published reviews often include information for determining whether an author is credible. Though a work by any credible author may get some negative responses, use carefully the work of a writer whom more than one reviewer characterizes as biased, ill-informed, or careless with facts.

10b Credibility of publishers

When doing research, consider not only the credibility of authors but also the credibility of the media through which their work is made available to you. The facts in some types of publications are checked more carefully than those in others.

When evaluating books and articles, you can usually assume that publishers associated with universities demand a high standard of scholarship, including review of the work by other scholars in the field. Work published in popular magazines and newspapers is generally reliable and may provide useful

overviews of a topic, but such publications do not require scholarly review and may not include bibliographies or citation of sources for other researchers to consult. Because magazines and newspapers often report research results that were initially published elsewhere, try to find the original source to ensure the accuracy of their reports.

10c Online sources

If you are evaluating an online source that also appears in print, you can follow the guidelines for print-based sources. But if you are evaluating a web or other online source, you need to consider additional features of the medium. For help locating important information, see figures 10.1 and 10.2, which show the top and bottom of the same web source.

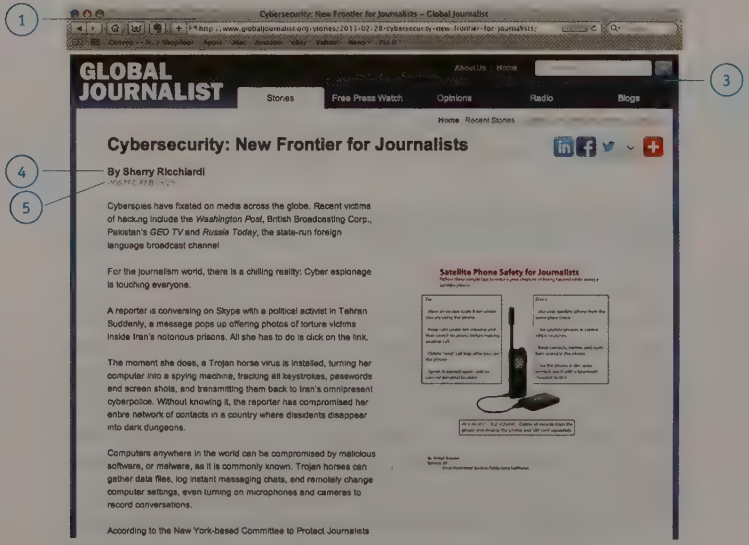

1
3
4
5
Cybersecurity: New Frontier for Journalists – Global Journalist
GLOBAL JOURNALIST
Stories
Free Press Watch
Opinions
Radio
Blogs
Cybersecurity: New Frontier for Journalists
By Sherry Ricchiardi
Cyberspies have fixated on media across the globe. Recent victims of hacking include the Washington Post, British Broadcasting Corp., Pakistan's GEO TV and Rusale Today, the state-run foreign language broadcast channel
For the journalism world, there is a chilling reality: Cyber espionage is touching everyone.
A reporter is conversing on Skype with a political activist in Tehran. Suddenly, a message pops up offering photos of torture victims inside Iran's notorious prisons. All she has to do is click on the link.
The moment she does, a Trojan horse virus is installed, turning her computer into a spying machine, tracking all keystrokes, passwords and screen shots, and transmitting them back to Iran's omnipresent cyberpolice. Without knowing it, the reporter has compromised her entire network of contacts in a country where dissidents disappear into dark dungeons.
Computers anywhere in the world can be compromised by malicious software, or malware, as it is commonly known. Trojan horses can gather data files, log instant messaging chats, and remotely change computer settings, even turning on microphones and cameras to record conversations.
According to the New York-based Committee to Protect Journalists
Satellite Phone Safety for Journalists

Figure 10.1. Top of a web page from Global Journalist.
Source: Global Journalist

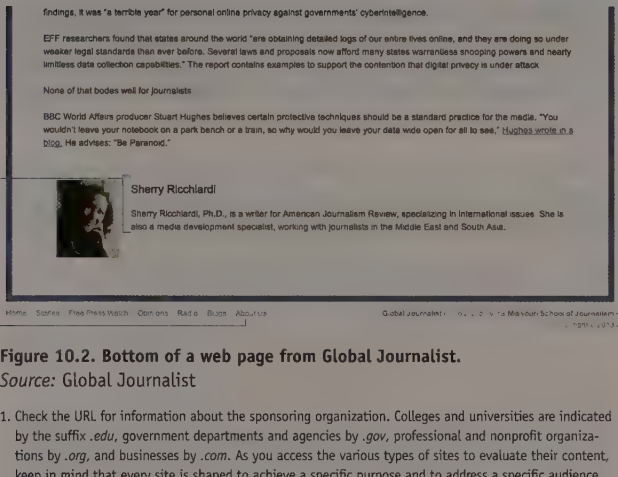

findings. It was "a terrible year" for personal online privacy against governments' cyberintelligence.
EFF researchers found that states around the world "are obtaining detailed logs of our entire lives online, and they are doing so under weaker legal standards than ever before. Several laws and proposals now afford many states warrantless snooping powers and nearly limitless data collection capabilities." The report contains examples to support the contention that digital privacy is under attack.
None of that bodes well for journalists.
BBC World Affairs producer Stuart Hughes believes certain protective techniques should be a standard practice for the media. "You wouldn't leave your notebook on a park bench or a train, so why would you leave your data wide open for all to see," Hughes wrote in a blog. He advises: "Be Paranoid."
Sherry Ricchiardi
Sherry Ricchiardi, Ph.D., is a writer for American Journalism Review, specializing in international issues. She is also a media development specialist, working with journalists in the Middle East and South Asia.
Home Stories Free Press Watch Opinions Radio Blogs About us
Global Journalist
Missouri School of Journalism
4
6
2
3
5

Figure 10.2. Bottom of a web page from Global Journalist.
Source: Global Journalist

1. Check the URL for information about the sponsoring organization. Colleges and universities are indicated by the suffix *.edu*, government departments and agencies by *.gov*, professional and nonprofit organizations by *.org*, and businesses by *.com*. As you access the various types of sites to evaluate their content, keep in mind that every site is shaped to achieve a specific purpose and to address a specific audience.
2. Locate the name of the sponsor. This information is generally found at the bottom of the page.
3. Determine the organization's or company's stance on your research question. You will be able to find out more information on an "About Us" or "Our Vision" page. Links may be found at the top of the page, at the bottom of the page, or both.
4. Examine the author's credentials. If the author's name is not given near the title, look at the bottom of the page. Information about the author's credentials can often also be found at the bottom of the page. Because this information is provided by the author, sponsor, or publisher, it is always a good idea to search elsewhere for additional information about the author (**10a**).
5. Identify the date of publication. Some articles place the publication date (or date of most recent update) near the title, but often it is at the bottom of the page. Determine whether the date is sufficiently current.
6. Check links and cited sources. By examining the sources the author uses, you will be able to gauge the reliability of the information provided. Consider unreliable any web source that does not provide a link or enough bibliographic details for you to track down the original source for information presented as factual.

CHECKLIST FOR EVALUATING ONLINE SOURCES

- Who is the author? Is this author credible? (**10a**)
- Who is the sponsor? A government agency? An institution of higher education? A business? An individual? Is the sponsor credible? (**10b**)
- To what extent has the source's information been reviewed by others?
- Is there a list of original sources available so that you can consult them to check facts?

(Continued on page 80)

CHECKLIST FOR EVALUATING ONLINE SOURCES *(Continued)*

- When was the source last updated? Is the information up to date? How current are the source's links? If it includes dead links, the source may not be recent enough to be useful.

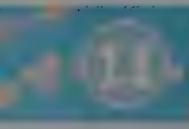
10d Reading closely and critically

Once you have determined that the sources you have collected might be useful, allow yourself time to read them closely. Not only will you educate yourself about your topic, but you will also be able to discuss the strengths and weaknesses of what you have read, and you will find it easier to write about it later on. Approach each source with an open mind, but at the same time be prepared to question your sources. By reading critically, you will pay attention to both the claims an author makes and the support for those claims.

CHECKLIST FOR READING CLOSELY AND CRITICALLY

How do you know that you have read each article closely and with an open mind?

- What is the author's argument? (chapter 6)
- What is the purpose of the argument? Who is its audience?
- What specific claims does the author make? What evidence does the author use to support these claims?
- What are the author's assumptions? Do you share these assumptions?
- Does the author represent diverse points of view? Does the author respond to divergent points of view?
- After reading the article, do you find yourself agreeing with the author? Disagreeing with the author? Agreeing with some points and disagreeing with others?
- What questions would you like to ask the author?



For your research project, you will have to discuss what others have discovered, creating a conversation in which you play an essential role: you will decide how the different ideas in your sources connect to each other and to your own views. To make a smooth transition between the words you read and the words you write, you will need to develop a system for managing all the information you have found.

11a Taking and organizing notes

Managing information is critical for a research project in which you will have to attribute specific words and ideas to others while adding your own ideas. Most research projects start with note-taking. Choose the method that best meets the requirements of your project and your own working style:

- take notes in a notebook
- write notes on index cards
- type notes into computer files
- write notes directly on pages you have photocopied or printed out from an online source

Remember that your notes will be most useful to you when it comes time to begin your draft if they are comprehensive and accurate.

TIPS FOR TAKING AND ORGANIZING NOTES

- **Subject heading.** Use a short descriptive phrase to summarize the content of the note. This phrase will help you retrieve information later.
- **Type of note.** Indicate whether the note is a quotation (**11d**), a paraphrase (**11e**), a summary (**11f**), or your own thoughts. Place quotations between quotation marks (**34**). Indicate any changes to quotations with square brackets (**35f**) or ellipsis points (**35g**). If you are using a computer to take notes, you can change font color to indicate your own thoughts.
- **Bibliographic information.** Provide complete bibliographic information in a working bibliography (**11b**). Jot down the author's name and/or the title of the source. If the source has page numbers, indicate which pages your notes refer to.
- **Computer folders.** Create a master folder (or directory) for the project. Within that folder, create separate folders for your notes, drafts, and bibliography. In your notes folder, create a separate file for each source.

11b Creating a working bibliography

Effective research depends in part on meticulous record keeping. By creating a **working bibliography**, you will have a record of the sources you might use in your final project. A working bibliography contains all the information you might need in your final bibliography. For each work it should include title, authors' names, and publication date, along with other information needed to locate the source. Note that not all documentation styles require you to include the URLs for online sources in your final bibliography, but you will do well to record them for quick access later.

Creating a working bibliography can also help you evaluate the quality of your research. If you find that your most recent source is ten years old, for example, or that you have relied exclusively on information from magazines or websites, you may need to find some other sources.

Right from the start entries should follow the bibliographic format you have been instructed to use. This book covers the most common formats: MLA (chapter **13**), APA (chapter **14**), CMS (chapter **15**), and CSE (chapter **16**).

If you are asked to prepare an **annotated bibliography** (also called an **annotated list of works cited**), provide a bibliographic entry for and a summary of each of your sources. You may also wish to include comments or personal responses on how information in the source is related to your research question or to that in other sources. These comments will be helpful when you are drafting. Check with your instructor to find out whether your annotated bibliography should include both summaries and commentaries.

A working bibliography is equivalent to a rough draft. In final form, you will have to make sure that you have placed in conventional order each element of the bibliographic entry (author, title, date, and so on).

TIPS FOR CREATING AN ANNOTATED BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Find out which documentation style you should use: MLA, APA, CMS, or CSE.
- Provide a complete bibliographic entry for each of your sources in the required documentation style.
- Summarize the content of each source in two or three sentences. Refer to the main point of the source (*What is it about?*). If relevant, describe the intended audience or the scope of the source (*What is the range of subtopics included? What historical period does the source cover?*).
- In writing your summaries, use your own words instead of inserting quotations. That way, when you consult your annotations, you will not inadvertently use quotations as your own words (**11f**).
- Comment on the sources by connecting the information you find to your research question and to the information you find in other sources.

The following sample annotated bibliography entry was written for a research project (following MLA style) on the question of whether the minimum wage should be raised for restaurant servers.

Alderman, Liz. "Minimum Wage in Europe Offers Ammunition in U.S. Debate." *New York Times.* New York Times, 13 Feb. 2013. Web. 15 Feb. 2013.

Provides a complete bibliographic entry

In this newspaper article, written in response to the debate over President Obama's proposal to increase the federal minimum wage, Liz Alderman reports that European countries are having a similar debate. Alderman focuses on countries with advanced economies such as France, which has a minimum wage, and Germany, which does not. Although Alderman does not state her opinion, she does quote Simon Tilford, an economist at the Centre for European Reform, who believes that a balance has to be found. A minimum wage that is too low increases poverty levels; a minimum wage that is too high increases production costs so companies find it difficult to be competitive.

Summarizes the source

With regard to restaurant servers, Alderman mentions that in Germany some people working in food service commonly earn €6 an hour, approximately $8.00, an amount considered low in Europe but high in the United States. According to the United States Department of Labor, the national minimum cash wage for workers who receive tips, which applies to most restaurant servers, is $2.13. It is important to remember, though, that tipping customs differ from country to country.

Additional comments focus on information related to the research question

Connects information in this source to information found elsewhere

For some assignments, this entry would have to be condensed for the final draft of the annotated bibliography:

> In response to the debate over President Obama's proposal to increase the federal minimum wage, Liz Alderman describes similar debates taking place in a few European countries. Part of the debate focuses on providing an adequate wage without adversely affecting businesses.

11c Acknowledging your sources

You can integrate sources into your own writing in a number of ways: quoting exact words, paraphrasing sentences, and summarizing longer pieces of text or even entire texts. Whenever you use ideas from a source, you must give credit to that source. The way in which you introduce your source will depend on which documentation style you follow. Most style manuals offer two options: In MLA style, you may (1) put the author's name in parentheses at the end of the sentence or (2) introduce the author's name within a sentence. In either case, place a page number, if one is available, in parentheses (**13a**). The author's name refers the reader to the full bibliographic citation at the end of your essay.

Use the first method (author's name in parentheses) when you are using statistics or statements to support a major idea in your paragraph.

> Displaying body art, especially tattoos, is gaining in popularity (Grief, Hewitt, and Armstrong 371). However, little is known about the reasons college-age students obtain tattoos. Some students use body art to identify themselves with a specific group (Craig 37). Others see body art as self-expression (Armstrong 230), perhaps suggesting their adventurous nature (Duke 243). Still others use body art, especially tattoos, to remember a significant event (Reams 72). The purpose of this study is to explore whether these are typical reasons for students at this university to have tattoos and whether other reasons exist as well.

Cite the author's name in the text if you are going to discuss the source's statistics or ideas in more detail. It is common to first introduce the author's full name and include any important information about the author. For example, in an essay on the origins of literacy, the following statement becomes more credible if readers are given the added information about Oliver Sacks's background.

professor of neurology and psychiatry at Columbia University.

➤ According to Oliver Sacks, "The origin of writing and reading cannot be understood as a direct evolutionary adaptation" (27).

In subsequent references to the author, use just the last name. Other style guides such as APA require use of just the last names of authors for first and subsequent references.

➤ According to Sacks (2010), "The origin of writing and reading cannot be understood as a direct evolutionary adaptation" (p. 27).

Phrases such as *According to Oliver Sacks* and *from the author's perspective* are called **signal phrases** because they indicate the source (both author and publication) from which the information was taken. In academic writing, most signal phrases consist of the name of an author (or a related noun or pronoun) and a verb such as *states*, *reports*, or *argues*.

SIGNAL PHRASES FOR QUOTING, PARAPHRASING, AND SUMMARIZING

Signal phrases indicate which source you are using and alert readers that the words or ideas that follow are from a source and are not your own.

- In "Cybersecurity Today" Chris Allen states that _____.
- According to Allen, _____.
- In Allen's view, _____.
- The writer points out that _____. She also stresses that _____.

The following is a list of verbs commonly found in signal phrases.

admit	conclude	find	reject
advise	deny	imply	reply
argue	disagree	indicate	state
believe	discuss	insist	suggest
claim	emphasize	note	think
concede	explain	observe	

Most often signal phrases begin a sentence, but they can also appear in the middle or at the end of a sentence.

- **According to Jim Cullen**, "The American Dream would have no drama or mystique if it were a self-evident falsehood or a scientifically demonstrable principle" (7).
- "The American Dream," **claims Jim Cullen**, "would have no drama or mystique if it were a self-evident falsehood or a scientifically demonstrable principle" (7).
- "The American Dream would have no drama or mystique if it were a self-evident falsehood or a scientifically demonstrable principle," **asserts Jim Cullen in his book *The American Dream: A Short History of an Idea That Shaped a Nation*** (7).

The placement of the signal phrase will depend on what part of the sentence you would like to emphasize and on how the sentence connects to surrounding sentences.

Signal phrases can include neutral, objective verbs (*Cullen stated*) or verbs that are more descriptive and subjective (*Cullen insists*). If your assignment allows the insertion of your opinion, you can use descriptive verbs or add an adverb to the verb in the signal phrase: *persuasively* argues, *inaccurately* represents. The appropriate verb tense for the signal phrase—simple present tense (*the author states*), the simple past tense (*the author stated*), or the present perfect (*the author has stated*)—will depend on the context of the sentence (**20b–c**) and on the guidelines for your discipline (chapters **13–16**).

If you include visuals or graphics as sources, you must introduce and label them as figures and assign them Arabic numbers (**7b**). You can then refer to them within the text in a parenthetical comment, as in this example (following APA style): "The Maori of New Zealand are also well-known for their hand-carved facial tattoos, known as *Moko* (see Figure 1)." Include a title or caption with the figure number.

11d Using direct quotations

Direct quotations draw attention to key passages. Include a direct quotation only if

- you want to retain the beauty or clarity of someone's words
- you need to reveal how the reasoning in a specific passage is flawed or insightful
- you plan to discuss the implications of the quoted material

Keep quotations as short as possible and make them an integral part of your text.

Place any quotation of another person's words in quotation marks. However, if you set off the material as an indented **block quotation**, leave the quotation marks out. The length of a passage determines whether it should be set off as a block quotation. According to MLA style, a quotation longer than four lines should be set off (chapter **13**). If you are following APA style, quotations are set off when they include forty or more words (chapter **14**). The general rule for CMS is to use block quotations for passages of one hundred words or more (chapter **15**). CSE does not specify a word or line limit.

If you need to clarify a quotation by changing it in any way, place square brackets around the added or changed words (**35f**).

➤ The critic notes that in this role, "he [Robin Williams] successfully conveys a diverse range of emotion" (23).

If you want to omit part of a quotation, replace the deleted words with ellipsis points (**35g**).

➤ When asked about the future of the industry, Owens responded, "Overseas markets . . . are critical to the financial success of Hollywood films" (54).

When modifying a quotation, be sure not to alter its essential meaning.

Each quotation you use should also have a signal phrase to help readers understand why the quotation is important. A sentence that consists of only a quotation is called a **dropped quotation**. Notice how the signal phrase improves the dropped quotation below:

Joel Achenbach recognizes that compromises
➤ ~~Compromises~~ must be made to promote safer sources of energy: "To accommodate green energy, the grid needs not only more storage but more high-voltage power lines" (~~Achenbach~~ 137).

Readers want to know how a quotation is related to your point, so whenever possible provide a sentence or two before or after the quotation explaining its relevance.

➤ Joel Achenbach recognizes that compromises must be made to promote safer sources of energy: "To accommodate green energy, the grid needs not only more storage but more high-voltage power lines" (137). If we are going to use green energy to avoid depending on types of energy that cause air pollution, we may have to tolerate visual pollution in the form of power lines strung between huge towers.

CHECKLIST FOR USING DIRECT QUOTATIONS

- Have you copied all the words and punctuation accurately?
- Have you attributed the quotation to a specific source?
- Have you used square brackets around anything you added or changed in a direct quotation? (**35f**)
- Have you used ellipsis points to indicate anything you omitted? (**35g**)
- Have you included a signal phrase with the quotation?
- Have you included a sentence or two before or after a quotation to indicate its relevance? Have you made it an integral part of the text?
- Have you used quotations sparingly? Rather than using too many quotations, consider paraphrasing or summarizing the information instead.

11e Paraphrasing

A **paraphrase** is a restatement of someone else's ideas in approximately the same number of words. Paraphrasing allows you to demonstrate that you have understood what you have read; it also enables you to help your audience understand it. Paraphrase when you want to

- clarify difficult material by using simpler language
- use another writer's idea but not his or her exact words
- create a consistent tone for your work
- interact with a point that your source has made

Your paraphrase should be entirely in your own words and should accurately convey the content of the original passage. As you compare the source below with the paraphrases that follow, note the similarities and differences in both sentence structure and word choice.

Source

Zimmer, Carl. *Soul Made Flesh: The Discovery of the Brain—and How It Changed the World.* New York: Free, 2004. (page 7)

> The maps that neuroscientists make today are like the early charts of the New World with grotesque coastlines and blank interiors. And what little we do know about how the brain works raises disturbing questions about the nature of our selves.

Inadequate paraphrase

> The maps used by neuroscientists today resemble the rough maps of the New World. Because we know so little about how the brain works, we must ask questions about the nature of our selves (Zimmer 7).

If you simply change a few words in a passage, you have not adequately restated it. You may be committing plagiarism (**12a–b**) if the wording of your version follows the original too closely, even if you provide a page reference for the source.

Adequate paraphrase

> Carl Zimmer compares today's maps of the brain to the rough maps made of the New World. He believes that the lack of knowledge about the workings of the brain makes us ask serious questions about our nature (7).

In the second paraphrase, both vocabulary and sentence structure differ from those in the original. This paraphrase also includes a signal phrase (*Carl Zimmer compares*).

Any paraphrase must accurately maintain the sense of the original. If you unintentionally misrepresent the original because you did not understand it, you are being *inaccurate.* If you deliberately change the gist of what a source says, you are being *unethical.* Compare the original statement below with the paraphrases.

Source

Hanlon, Michael. "Climate Apocalypse When?" *New Scientist* 17 Nov. 2007: 20.

> Disastrous images of climate change are everywhere. An alarming graphic recently appeared in the UK media showing the British Isles reduced to a scattered archipelago by a 60-metre rise in sea level. Evocative scenes of melting glaciers, all-at-sea polar bears and forest fires are routinely attributed to global warming. And of course Al Gore has just won a Nobel prize for his doomsday flick *An Inconvenient Truth*, starring hurricane Katrina. . . .
>
> There is a big problem here, though it isn't with the science. The evidence that human activities are dramatically modifying the planet's climate is now overwhelming—even to a former paid-up sceptic like me. The consensus is established, the fear real and justified. The problem is that the effects of climate change mostly haven't happened yet, and for journalists and their editors that presents a dilemma. Talking about what the weather may be like in the 2100s, never mind the 3100s, doesn't sell.

Inaccurate or unethical paraphrase

> Evocative scenes of melting glaciers, landless polar bears, and forest fires are attributed to global warming in Al Gore's *An*

Inconvenient Truth. The trouble is that Gore cannot predict what will happen (Hanlon 20).

Accurate paraphrase

According to Michael Hanlon, the disastrous images of climate change that permeate the media are distorting our understanding of what is actually happening globally and what might happen in the future (20).

Although both paraphrases include a reference to an author and a page number, the first focuses misleadingly on Al Gore, whereas the second paraphrase notes the much broader problem, which can be blamed on the media's focus on selling a story.

11f Summarizing

When you summarize, you condense the main point(s) of your source. Although a summary omits much of the detail used by the writer of the original source, it accurately reflects the essence of that work. In most cases, then, a **summary** reports a writer's main idea and the most important support given for it.

Whereas the length of a paraphrase (**11e**) is usually close to that of the original material, a summary is shorter than the material it reports. When you paraphrase, you restate an author's ideas to present or examine them in detail. When you summarize, you present the gist of the author's ideas, without including background information and details. Summaries can include short quotations of key words or phrases, but you must always enclose another writer's exact words in quotation marks when you blend them with your own.

Source

Marshall, Joseph M., III. "Tasunke Witko (His Crazy Horse)." *Native Peoples* Jan./Feb. 2007: 76-79.

The world knows him as Crazy Horse, which is not a precise translation of his name from Lakota to English. *Tasunke Witko*

means "his crazy horse," or "his horse is crazy." This slight mistranslation of his name seems to reflect the fact that Crazy Horse the man is obscured by Crazy Horse the legendary warrior. He was both, but the fascination with the legendary warrior hides the reality of the man. And it was as the man, shaped by his family, community and culture—as well as the events in his life—that he became legend.

Summary

The Lakota warrior English speakers refer to as "Crazy Horse" was actually called "his crazy horse." That mistranslation may distort impressions of what Crazy Horse was like as a man.

This example reduces five sentences to two, retaining the key idea but eliminating the source author's analysis and speculation. A writer who believes that the audience needs to understand the analysis might decide to paraphrase rather than summarize the passage.

EXERCISE 11.1

Find a well-developed paragraph in one of your recent reading assignments. Rewrite it in your own words, varying the sentence structure of the original. Make your paraphrase approximately the same length as the original. Next, write a one-sentence summary of the same paragraph.

11g Analyzing and responding to sources

Though quotations, paraphrases, and summaries are key to academic writing, thinking critically involves more than referring to someone else's work. Quotations, paraphrases, and summaries call for responses. Your readers will want to know what you think about an article, a book, or another source. They will expect you to indicate its strengths and weaknesses and to mention the impact it has had on your own ideas.

Your response to a source will be based on your analysis of it. You can analyze a source according to its rhetorical situation (**1a**), its use of rhetorical appeals (**5c**), or its reasoning (**6d1**). You can also evaluate a source by using some common criteria: timeliness, coverage, and reliability.

(1) Considering the currency of sources

Depending on the nature of your research, the currency of sources may be an important consideration. Using up-to-date sources is crucial when researching most topics. Historical research may also call for sources from a specific period in the past. When you consider the currency of a source, start by looking for the date of its publication. Then, examine any data reported. Even a source published in the same year that you are doing research may include data that are several years old and thus possibly irrelevant. In the following example, the writer questions the usefulness of an out-of-date statistic mentioned in a source:

> According to Jenkins, only 50 percent of all public schools have web pages (23); however, this statistic is taken from a report published in 1997. A more recent count would likely yield a much higher percentage.

(2) Noting the thoroughness of research

Coverage refers to the comprehensiveness of research. The more comprehensive a study is, the more convincing are its findings. Similarly, the more examples an author provides, the more compelling are his or her conclusions. Claims or opinions that are based on only one instance are often criticized for being merely anecdotal or otherwise unsubstantiated. The writer of the following response suggests that the author of the source in question may have based his conclusion on too little information:

> Johnson concludes that middle-school students are expected to complete an inordinate amount of homework given their age,

but he bases his conclusion on research conducted in only three schools (90). To be more convincing, Johnson needs to conduct research in more schools, preferably located in different parts of the country.

(3) Checking the reliability of findings

Reliability is a requirement for reported data. Researchers are expected to report their findings accurately and honestly, not distort them to support their own beliefs or claim others' ideas as their own. To ensure the reliability of their work, researchers must also report all relevant information and refrain from excluding any that weakens their conclusions. When studies of the same phenomenon give rise to disputes, researchers should discuss conflicting results or interpretations. The writer of the following response focuses on the problematic nature of her source's methodology:

> Jamieson concludes from her experiment that a low-carbohydrate diet can be dangerous for athletes (73), but her methodology suffers from lack of detail. No one would be able to confirm her experimental findings without knowing exactly what and how much the athletes consumed.

Researchers use common phrases when responding to sources. The following list includes a few examples.

COMMON PHRASES FOR RESPONDING TO SOURCES

Responding, in agreement

- Recent research confirms that Baron is correct in asserting that _____.
- Moore aptly notes that _____.
- I agree with Gyasi that _____.

(Continued on page 96)

COMMON PHRASES FOR RESPONDING TO SOURCES *(Continued)*

Responding, in disagreement

- Several of Bender's statements are contradictory. He asserts that _____, but he also states that _____.
- In stating that _____, Porter fails to account for _____.
- I disagree with Lurie on this point. I believe that _____.

Responding, in agreement and in disagreement

- Although I agree with Blake that _____ and that _____, I disagree with his conclusion that _____.
- In a way, the author is correct: _____. However, from a different perspective, _____.
- Though Day may be right that _____, I must point out that _____.

11h Synthesizing sources

While *thesis* is typically defined as a claim, an informed opinion, or a point of view, *synthesis* refers to combinations of claims, opinions, or points of view. When you synthesize sources, you combine them, looking for similarities, differences, strengths, weaknesses, and so on.

In the following excerpt, the writer reports two similar views on the topic of ecotourism.

> The claim that ecotourism can benefit local economies is supported by the observations of Ellen Bradley, tour leader in Cancun, Mexico, and Rachel Collins, county commissioner in Shasta County, California. Bradley insists that ecotourism is responsible for creating jobs and improved standards of living in Mexico (10). Likewise, Collins believes that ecotourism has provided work for people in her county who had formerly been employed by the timber industry (83).

Notice that the writer uses the transition *likewise* (**3d2**) to indicate a comparison. In the next excerpt, on the topic of voting fraud, the writer contrasts two different views, using the transition *although*.

> Although Ted Kruger believes voting fraud is not systematic (45), that does not mean there is no fraud at all. Kendra Berg points out that voter rolls are not updated often enough (18), which leaves the door open for cheaters.

In both examples, the writers not only summarize and respond to sources but synthesize them as well. Below, you will find common phrases for synthesizing sources.

COMMON PHRASES FOR SYNTHESIZING SOURCES

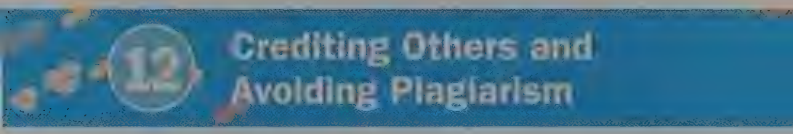
- The claim that _____ is supported by the observations of Blair and Jones. Blair insists that _____. Likewise, Jones believes that _____.
- Perez asserts that _____. Mehan supports this position by _____.
- Although Miller believes that _____, this interpretation is not held universally. For example, Klein notes that _____.
- Kim asserts that _____; however, she fails to explain _____. Lee points out that _____.

11i Critical thinking

At some point in your studies, you will undoubtedly come across the term *critical thinking*. Although there are a variety of models used to describe what it means to think critically, the one that is relevant to writing research projects was initially developed in 1956 by Benjamin Bloom and his

colleagues. Known as the *Bloom Taxonomy*, this model has evolved over the years, but six main skills remain at its core: remembering, understanding, applying, analyzing, evaluating, and creating.

When you summarize sources, you demonstrate your ability to remember and understand. When you respond to sources, you apply your understanding of a topic and/or evaluate the work of others. When you analyze and synthesize sources, you evaluate the ideas of others and then tie them together, along with your own thoughts. In so doing, you create something new.



When you do research, your work depends on the research that was done before you, and the research you are working on has the potential to influence future research. An essential part of this scholarly tradition is the acknowledgment of previous work—not just prior scientific research but artistic, political, philosophical, religious, and other work as well. In fact, acknowledging the contributions of others is so highly valued that copyright and patent laws exist to protect intellectual property. Before you start drafting your project, be sure you understand what to acknowledge, how to acknowledge it, and how to avoid **plagiarism**—the presentation of someone else's ideas as your own.

12a Determining what to acknowledge

Although you will need to acknowledge the great majority of your sources, it is not necessary to credit information that is **common knowledge**—well-known facts, noncontroversial information, or information that is available in a variety of sources. For example, writing *The* Titanic *hit an iceberg and sank on its maiden voyage* is not problematic: this event has been the subject of many books and movies, so the general outline of the event is considered common knowledge. However, if you are preparing a research project about the *Titanic* and wish to include new information about its sinking, such as the role of the tides, you will be providing information or ideas that must be documented. By carefully recording your own thoughts as you take notes, you should have little difficulty distinguishing between what you knew to begin with and what you have learned through research.

Here are two questions you can ask yourself to decide whether information is considered common knowledge:

- Can the information be found in a number of sources? Check several to find out. These sources should not refer to other sources.
- Is the information commonly known among other students taking the course?

If you have any doubts about whether information is common knowledge, err on the side of caution and acknowledge your source. Taking even part of someone else's work and presenting it as your own can result in charges of plagiarism.

Plagiarism is illegal, and penalties range from receiving a failing grade on an essay or in a course to being expelled from school. Never compromise your integrity or risk your future by submitting someone else's work as your own.

CAUTION

Although it is fairly easy to copy material from a source or even to purchase a paper online, it is just as easy for a teacher or employer to locate that same material and determine that it has been plagiarized. Your instructors routinely use search engines such as Google or special services such as Turnitin when they see abrupt changes in writing or shifts within an essay that lead them to suspect that a student has submitted work that was plagiarized, downloaded, or written by others. Take extra care to avoid such deceptive, deliberate plagiarism.

Rules for **fair use**—the section of U.S. copyright law that permits material to be used without permission—covers most of the writing you will do in your courses. You are required to cite and document your source material, but you do not have to seek written permission from authors. If, however, you decide to post your research online, you will have to seek permission for images or extensive portions of text. In such situations, ask your instructor for guidance.

MATERIALS THAT SHOULD BE ACKNOWLEDGED

- Written works, both published and unpublished
- Opinions and judgments that are not your own
- Statistics and other facts that are not widely known
- Images and graphics, such as works of art, drawings, charts, graphs, tables, photographs, maps, and advertisements
- Personal communications, such as interviews, letters, and e-mail messages
- Electronic communications, including television and radio broadcasts, motion pictures and videos, sound recordings, websites, blogs, wikis, and online discussion groups

12b Citing quoted or paraphrased material

To draw responsibly on the words and ideas of others, consider the following examples (in MLA style).

Source

> We propose that while social network use does make people feel better about themselves, these increased feelings of self-worth can have a detrimental effect on behavior.

Wilcox, Keith, and Andrew T. Stephen. "Are Close Friends the Enemy? Online Social Networks, Self-Esteem, and Self Control," page 90.

Quotation with documentation

> Keith Wilcox and Andrew T. Stephen, both professors of business, claim that "while social network use does make people feel better about themselves, these increased feelings of self-worth can have a detrimental effect on behavior" (90).

Quotation marks show where the copied words begin and end; the number in parentheses indicates the exact page on which those words appear (**11d**). The authors' names are identified in the sentence, although their names could have been omitted at the beginning of the sentence and noted within the parenthetical reference instead:

> Although users of social networks may experience an increase in self-esteem, "these increased feelings of self-worth can have a detrimental effect on behavior" (Wilcox and Stephen 90).

Paraphrase with documentation

> Keith Wilcox and Andrew T. Stephen, both professors of business, claim that using social networks may increase self-esteem but that such increased positive feelings can adversely affect behavior (90).

This example, in MLA style, includes both authors' names and a parenthetical citation, which marks the end of the paraphrase and provides the page number where the information can be found. Remember that your paraphrases must be both accurate and ethical (**11e**).

Patchwriting. Be sure to review any paraphrase closely to make sure that both the words and the ordering of words differ significantly from those of the source material. Just as you cannot falsely represent someone else's ideas as your own, you cannot pass off someone else's writing style as your own. **Patchwriting** refers to paraphrases that are too close to the wording of the source. If you have trouble thinking of new ways to express the original information, move away from your desk for an hour or more. When you return, write down what you remember without looking at the source. You may find it easier to use your own words and style without the original material in front of you. If you are still having trouble, spend some time rereading your source so that you thoroughly understand it.

12c Understanding citation and documentation

Citation and documentation go hand in hand. When you mention someone else's work by quoting, paraphrasing, or summarizing it, you are *citing* that work. Documentation refers to the information you include in parentheses, footnotes, or bibliographies that allows readers to find the material you used.

Systems for documentation vary according to discipline. Each system provides two main sets of guidelines. First are guidelines for citing each instance of quotation, paraphrase, or summary of a source *in* the text. These are generally referred to as in-text citation or in-text documentation guidelines. They are usually shortened forms, including just the author's name and page number, for example.

Second is a system of documentation that requires complete bibliographic information about sources. In most cases, the bibliographic information is included in a list at the end of a work. This book covers four documentation systems: MLA (chapter **13**), APA (chapter **14**), CMS (chapter **15**), and CSE (chapter **16**).

D

DOCUMENTATION

13 MLA Documentation 106

- **a** MLA-style in-text citations 106
- **b** MLA list of works cited 116
- **c** Sample MLA-style paper 146

14 APA Documentation 159

- **a** APA-style in-text citations 159
- **b** APA-style reference list 162
- **c** Sample APA-style paper 180

15 CMS Documentation 193

- **a** CMS note and bibliographic forms 193
- **b** Sample CMS-style paper 213

16 CSE Documentation 221

- **a** CSE-style in-text citations 221
- **b** CSE-style list of references 223
- **c** Sample CSE-style paper 234

13 MLA Documentation

The Modern Language Association (MLA) provides guidelines for documenting research in literature, languages, linguistics, and composition studies. The *MLA Handbook for Writers of Research Papers*, 7th ed., is published specifically for undergraduates.

13a MLA-style in-text citations

(1) Citing material from other sources

The citations you use within the text of a research project refer your readers to the list of works cited at the end of the paper, tell them where to find the borrowed material in the original source, and indicate the boundaries between your ideas and those you have borrowed. In the following example, the parenthetical citation guides the reader to page 88 of the book by Pollan in the works-cited list.

In-text citation

Since the 1980s virtually all the sodas and most of the fruit drinks sold in the supermarkets have been sweetened with high-fructose corn syrup (HFCS)—after water, corn sweetener is their principal ingredient (Pollan 88).

Works-cited entry

Pollan, Michael. *The Omnivore's Dilemma: A Natural History of Four Meals*. New York: Penguin, 2006. Print.

MLA guidelines suggest reserving numbered notes for supplementary comments—for example, when you wish to explain a point further but the subject matter is tangential to your topic. When numbered notes are used, superscript

numbers are inserted in the appropriate places in the text, and the notes are gathered at the end of the paper on a separate page titled "Notes." Each note begins with an indent.

In-text note number

Most food found in American supermarkets is ultimately derived from corn.[1]

Notes entry

1. Nearly all farm animals—from cows and chickens to various kinds of farmed fish—are fed a diet of corn.

An in-text citation usually provides two pieces of information about borrowed material: (1) information that directs the reader to the relevant source on the works-cited list and (2) information that directs the reader to a specific page or section within that source. The author's last name and a page number suffice. To create an in-text citation, place both the author's last name and the page number in parentheses or introduce the material being cited by giving the author's name in the sentence and supply only the page number in parentheses.

A "remarkably narrow biological foundation" supports the variety of America's supermarkets (Pollan 18).

Pollan explains the way corn products "feed" the familiar meats, beverages, and dairy products that we find on our supermarket shelves (18).

When referring to information from a range of pages, separate the first and last pages with a hyphen: (34-42). If the page numbers have the same hundreds or thousands digit, do not repeat it when listing the final page in the range: (234-42) or (1350-55) but (290-301) or (1395-1402). If you refer to an entire work or a work with only one page, no page numbers are necessary.

The following examples are representative of the types of in-text citations you might be expected to use.

Directory to MLA In-Text Citations

1. Work by one author named in a signal phrase 108
2. Work by one author named in parentheses 108
3. More than one work by the same author 109
4. Work by two or three authors 109
5. Work by more than three authors 109
6. Works by different authors with the same last name 109
7. Work by a corporate author 110
8. Two or more works in the same citation 110
9. Multivolume work 110
10. Anonymous work 111
11. Indirect source 111
12. Poetry, drama, and sacred texts 111
13. Constitution 112
14. Works with numbered paragraphs or sections 112

1. Work by one author named in a signal phrase

Signal the material being cited by mentioning the author's name in your sentence.

Susan J. Rosowski argues that Westerns often reveal a "pattern of linguistic regression" (170).

2. Work by one author named in parentheses

If your sentence does not name the author, include the author's name before the page reference in parentheses.

Set on the frontier and focused on taciturn characters, Westerns often reveal a "pattern of linguistic regression" (Rosowski 170).

3. More than one work by the same author

Provide a shortened title in a signal phrase or in parentheses that identifies the relevant work. Use a comma to separate the author's name (or names) from the shortened title (usually the first word or phrase) when both are in parentheses.

According to one neurological hypothesis, "feelings are the expression of human flourishing or human distress" (Damasio, *Looking* 6).

OR

Antonio Damasio believes that "feelings are the expression of human flourishing or human distress" (*Looking* 6).

4. Work by two or three authors

Some environmentalists seek to protect wilderness areas from further development so that they can both preserve the past and learn from it (Katcher and Wilkins 174).

Use commas to separate the names of three authors: (Bellamy, O'Brien, and Nichols 59).

5. Work by more than three authors

Use either all the authors' last names or the first author's last name followed by the abbreviation *et al.* (Latin meaning "and others"). Use the same format for the names in the corresponding works-cited entry (see item 3, pp. 120-21).

In one important study, women graduates complained more frequently about "excessive control than about lack of structure" (Belenky et al. 205).

OR

In one important study, women graduates complained more frequently about "excessive control than about lack of structure" (Belenky, Clinchy, Goldberger, and Tarule 205).

6. Works by different authors with the same last name

When your works-cited list includes works by different authors with the same last name, provide a first initial and last name in

parenthetical citations, or use the author's first and last name in the text.

Pre-Aristotelian rhetoric still has an impact today (T. Enos 331-43).

If two authors have the same last name and first initial, spell out each author's first name in a parenthetical citation.

7. Work by a corporate author

A work has a corporate author when individual members of the group that created it are not identified. If the corporate author's name is long, you may use common abbreviations for parts of it—for example, *Assn.* for "Association" and *Natl.* for "National."

Strawbale constructions are now popular across the nation (Natl. Ecobuilders Group 2).

8. Two or more works in the same citation

When two sources provide similar information or when you combine information from two sources in the same sentence, cite both sources, separating them with a semicolon.

Agricultural scientists believe that crop productivity will be adversely affected by solar dimming (Beck and Watts 90; Harris-Green 153-54).

9. Multivolume work

When you cite material from more than one volume of a multivolume work, include the volume number (followed by a colon and a space) before the page number.

Katherine Raine claims that "true poetry begins where human personality ends" (2: 247).

You do not need to include the volume number in a parenthetical citation if your list of works cited includes only one volume of a multivolume work.

10. Anonymous work

The Tehuelche people left their handprints on the walls of a cave, now called Cave of the Hands ("Hands of Time" 124).

Use the title of an anonymous work in place of an author's name. If the title is long, provide a shortened version. For example, the shortened title for "Chasing Down the Phrasal Verb in the Discourse of Adolescents" is "Chasing Down."

11. Indirect source

If you need to include material that one of your sources quoted from another work because you cannot obtain the original source, use the following format (*qtd.* is the abbreviation for "quoted").

The critic Susan Hardy Aikens has argued on behalf of what she calls "canonical multiplicity" (qtd. in Mayers 677).

A reader turning to the list of works cited should find an entry for Mayers, the source consulted, but not for Aikens.

12. Poetry, drama, and sacred texts

When you refer to poetry, drama, or sacred texts, you should give the numbers of lines, acts, and scenes or of chapters and verses, rather than page numbers. This practice enables readers to consult an edition other than the one you have used. Act, scene, and line numbers (all Arabic numerals) are separated by periods with no space before or after them.

The following example illustrates a citation referring to lines of poetry.

Emily Dickinson alludes to her dislike of public appearance in "I'm Nobody! Who Are You?" (5-8).

The following citation shows that the famous "To be, or not to be" soliloquy appears in act 3, scene 1, lines 56-89, of *Hamlet.*

In *Hamlet,* Shakespeare presents the most famous soliloquy in the history of the English theater: "To be, or not to be . . ." (3.1.56-89).

MLA guidelines recommend treating biblical chapters and verses similarly; the progression is from larger to smaller units. Citations of biblical material identify the book of the Bible, the chapter, and the pertinent verses. In the following example, the writer refers to the creation story in Genesis, which begins in chapter 1 with verse 1 and ends in chapter 2 with verse 22.

The Old Testament creation story, told with remarkable economy, culminates in the arrival of Eve (*New American Standard Bible*, Gen. 1.1-2.22).

Mention in your first citation which version of the Bible you are using. List only book, chapter, and verse in subsequent citations. Note that the names of biblical books are neither italicized nor enclosed in quotation marks.

13. Constitution

When referring to the U.S. Constitution, use the document title, and do not italicize or enclose it in quotation marks. The following are common abbreviations for in-text citations:

UNITED STATES CONSTITUTION	US Const.
ARTICLE	art.
SECTION	sec.

The testimony of two witnesses is needed to convict someone of treason (US Const., art. 3, sec. 3).

14. Works with numbered paragraphs or sections

If paragraphs in an electronic source (or online publication) are numbered, cite the number(s) of the paragraph(s) after the abbreviation *par.* (for one paragraph) or *pars.* (for more than one). If a section number is provided, cite that number after the abbreviation *sec.* (or *secs.* for more than one). Do not cite page numbers unless the source is a PDF, which has stable numbering.

Alston describes three types of rubrics for evaluating customer service (pars. 2-15).

Hilton and Merrill provide examples of effective hyperlinks (sec. 1).

If a source includes no numbers distinguishing one part from another, you should cite the entire source. In this case, to establish that you have not accidentally omitted a number, avoid using a parenthetical citation by providing what information you have within the sentence that introduces the material.

Raymond Lucero's *Shopping Online* offers useful advice for consumers who are concerned about transmitting credit card information over the Internet.

(2) Guidelines for in-text citations and quotations

PLACEMENT OF IN-TEXT CITATIONS

When you acknowledge your use of a source by placing the author's name and a relevant page number in parentheses, insert this parenthetical citation directly after the information you used, generally at the end of a sentence but *before* the final punctuation mark.

Oceans store almost half the carbon dioxide released by humans into the atmosphere (Wall 28).

However, you may need to place a parenthetical citation earlier in a sentence to indicate that only the first part of the sentence contains borrowed material. Place the citation after the clause containing the material but before a punctuation mark (a comma, semicolon, or colon).

Oceans store almost half the carbon dioxide released by humans into the atmosphere (Wall 28), a fact that provides hope for scientists studying global warming but alarms scientists studying organisms living in the oceans.

If you cite the same source more than once in a paragraph, with no intervening citations of another source, you can place one parenthetical citation at the end of the last sentence in which the source is used: (Wall 28, 32).

LENGTHY QUOTATIONS

When a quotation is more than four lines long, set it off from the surrounding text by indenting it one inch from the left

margin, keeping it double-spaced. The right-hand margin is not indented, nor does the passage appear in quotation marks.

In *Reimagining Equality: Stories of Gender, Race, and Finding Home*, Anita Hill describes the somewhat disappointing results of her genealogical research:

> When I began to explore my family history, I was in search of the perfect past. What I found were surprises and a messy, complicated reality that forced me to abandon the myths that filled my head about family, progress, and success. I was stunned to find that my grandmother had a child before marrying my grandfather and becoming mother to a total of fifteen children. I accepted that neither of my grandparents could read or write when they married in 1890, but I was disappointed that my grandmother never gained those skills, even though her husband managed to do so, perhaps by teaching himself or picking them up from his children. (34)

Hill's discoveries about her forebears elucidated the racist and sexist nature of early-twentieth-century schooling in the United States.

Note that the period precedes the parenthetical citation at the end of an indented (block) quotation. Note, too, how the writer introduces and then comments on the block quotation from Hill, explaining the significance of the block quotation to the writer's larger essay.

Rarely will you need to quote more than a paragraph, but if you do, indent the first line of each additional paragraph an extra quarter inch.

PUNCTUATION WITHIN CITATIONS AND QUOTATIONS

Punctuation marks clarify meaning in quotations and citations. The following list summarizes their common uses.

- A colon separates volume numbers from page numbers in a parenthetical citation.

  (Raine 2: 247)

- A comma separates the author's name from the title when it is necessary to list both in a parenthetical citation.

  (Pipher, *Writing to Change the World*)

  A comma also indicates that page or line numbers are not sequential.

  (44, 47)

- Ellipsis points indicate an omission within a quotation.

  "They lived in an age of increasing complexity and great hope; we in an age of . . . growing despair" (Krutch 2).

- A hyphen indicates a continuous sequence of pages or lines.

  (44-47)

- A period separates acts, scenes, and lines of dramatic works.

  (3.1.56)

- A question mark placed inside the final quotation marks indicates that the quotation is a question. Notice that the period after the parenthetical citation marks the end of the sentence.

  Peter Elbow asks, "What could be more wonderful than the pleasure of creating or appreciating forms that are different, amazing, outlandish, useless—the opposite of ordinary, everyday, pragmatic?" (542).

  When placed outside the final quotation marks, a question mark indicates that the quotation has been incorporated into a question posed by the writer of the research project.

  What does Kabat-Zinn mean when he advises people to practice mindfulness "as if their lives depended on it" (305)?

- Square brackets enclose words that have been added to the quotation as clarification and are not part of the original material.

  "The publication of this novel [*Beloved*] establishes Morrison as one of the most important writers of our time" (Boyle 17).

13b MLA list of works cited

All of the works you cite should be listed at the end of your paper, beginning on a separate page with the heading *Works Cited*. For sample lists of works cited, see pages 46, 157-58.

TIPS FOR PREPARING A LIST OF WORKS CITED

- Center the heading *Works Cited* one inch from the top of the page.
- Arrange the list of works alphabetically by the author's last name.
- If a source has more than one author, alphabetize the entry according to the last name of the first author.
- If you use more than one work by the same author, alphabetize the works by the first major word in each title. For the first entry, provide the author's complete name (last name given first), but substitute three hyphens (---) for the author's name in subsequent entries. However, if that author is also the first author in a collaboration, write out the author's name in full.
- For a work without an author or editor, alphabetize the entry according to the first important word in the title.
- Type the first line of each entry flush with the left margin and indent subsequent lines one-half inch (a hanging indent).
- If your list includes entries with URLs, enclose them in angle brackets and turn off any automatic hyperlink formatting inserted by your word processor. If the URLs are long enough to run onto a second line, make sure to break them only after a slash.
- For entries including a publisher's name, include a shortened form of the name omitting articles, abbreviations (Co., Inc.), and words such as Books, Press, or Publishers. To cite something from a university press, however, include abbreviations as in U of Missouri P.
- Double-space equally throughout—between lines of an entry and between entries.

Directory to MLA Works-Cited Entries

AUTHORS

1. One author 120
2. Two or three authors 120
3. Four or more authors 120
4. No author listed 121
5. Corporate author 121
6. Two or more works by the same author 121

ARTICLES (PRINT)

7. Article in a journal 122
   CITATION MAP 13.1: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, MLA STYLE 123
8. Article in a monthly magazine 122
9. Article in a weekly magazine or newspaper 124
10. Article in a daily newspaper 124
11. Unsigned article or wire service article 124
12. Editorial in a newspaper or magazine 124
13. Book or film review in a magazine 124
14. Book or film review in a journal 124

BOOKS (PRINT)

15. Basic format for a book 124
    CITATION MAP 13.2: BOOK, MLA STYLE 125
16. Book with an author and an editor 126
17. Book with an editor instead of an author 126
18. Edition after the first 126
19. Introduction, preface, foreword, or afterword 126
20. Translated book 126
21. Graphic novel or illustrated book 127
22. Publisher's imprint 127
23. Republished book 127
24. Book with a title within a title 127
25. Anthology 127
26. Work originally published in an anthology or in a book with an editor 127

27. Two or more selections from the same anthology 128
28. Work from a journal reprinted in a textbook or an anthology 128
29. Work from an edited collection reprinted in a textbook or an anthology 128
30. Multivolume work 128
31. Article in a multivolume work 129
32. Book in a series 129
33. Dictionary entry 129
34. Sacred text 130

ONLINE SOURCES

35. Article in an online journal 131
36. Article in an online magazine 131
37. Newspaper article 131
38. Book available only online 131
39. Book available online and in print 131
40. Part of an online book 132
41. Article through ERIC 132
CITATION MAP 13.3: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, MLA STYLE 133
42. Article through EBSCO 134
43. Article through LexisNexis 134
44. Article through ProQuest 134
45. Article through InfoTrac 134
46. Article through JSTOR 134
47. Article through Project MUSE 134
48. Abstract from a database 134
49. Entire website 135
50. Website with untitled work 135
51. Section of a website 135
CITATION MAP 13.4: WORK FROM A WEBSITE, MLA STYLE 136
52. E-mail 136
53. Posting to a discussion forum 136
54. Entire blog 136
55. Blog entry 137
56. Entry in an online reference work 137

57. Wiki entry 137
58. Online congressional document 137
59. Online government document 137
60. Online legal source 138
61. Online public law 138
62. Online sacred text 138

ONLINE AUDIO AND VISUAL SOURCES

63. Digital file (PDF, JPEG) 138
64. Sound recording 138
65. Podcast 138
66. Online speech 139
67. Online video 139
68. Online television or radio program 139
69. Online interview 139
70. Online review 140
71. Online editorial 140
72. Online work of art 140
73. Online photograph 140
74. Online map or chart 140
75. Online advertisement 140
76. Online cartoon or comic strip 140

OTHER SOURCES

77. Government publication 140
78. Historical document 141
79. Law case 141
80. Public law 141
81. Pamphlet, bulletin, or report 142
82. Published dissertation 142
83. Published letter 142
84. Personal letter 142
85. Cartoon or comic strip 142
86. Map or chart 143
87. Advertisement 143
88. Live performance 143
89. Lecture or presentation 143

90. Conference paper in published proceedings 143
91. Interview 143
92. Film 144
93. Radio or television program 144
94. Painting or other artwork 144
95. Photograph 145
96. CD-ROM 145
97. DVD or Blu-Ray 145
98. Clip or section from a DVD 145
99. Sound recording on CD 145

When writing down source information for your bibliography, be sure to copy the information directly from the source.

AUTHORS

1. One author

Rose, Mike. *Why School? Reclaiming Education for All of Us.* New York: New, 2009. Print

Note that the publisher, the New Press, has been shortened to the first word *New*.

2. Two or three authors

Type the first author's name in inverted order (last name first), followed by a comma, and the name of the other author(s) in normal order.

Eagly, Alice H., and Linda L. Carli. *Through the Labyrinth: The Truth about How Women Become Leaders.* Cambridge: Harvard Business School P, 2007. Print.

Spinosa, Charles, Ferdinand Flores, and Hubert L. Dreyfus. *Disclosing New Worlds: Entrepreneurship, Democratic Action, and the Cultivation of Solidarity*. Cambridge: MIT P, 1997. Print.

3. Four or more authors

Bullock, Jane A., George D. Haddow, Damon Cappola, Erdem Ergin, Lissa Westerman, and Sarp Yeletaysi. *Introduction to Homeland Security*. Boston: Elsevier, 2005. Print.

OR

Bullock, Jane A., et al. *Introduction to Homeland Security*. Boston: Elsevier, 2005. Print.

4. No author listed

Primary Colors: A Novel of Politics. New York: Warner, 1996. Print.

Begin the entry with the title. Do not use *Anonymous* or *Anon.*

5. Corporate author

Institute of Medicine. *Blood Banking and Regulation: Procedures, Problems, and Alternatives*. Washington: Natl. Acad., 1996. Print.

6. Two or more works by the same author

Joy, Camden. *Boy Island: A Novel*. New York: Quill-Morrow, 2000. Print.

---. *Lost Joy*. Seattle: TNI, 2002. Print.

List entries alphabetically by title, giving the author name in the first entry. For subsequent entries, type three hyphens in place of the author's name followed by a period.

ARTICLES (PRINT)

A **journal** is a publication written for a specific discipline or profession. **Magazines** and **newspapers** are written for the general public. You can find most of the information required for a works-cited entry for a journal article on the first page of the journal (citation map 13.1) or at the bottom of the first page of the article you are citing.

Title of article and name of periodical

Put the article title in quotation marks with a period inside the closing quotation marks. Italicize the name of the periodical; do not add any punctuation following the name. Capitalize all major words (nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, and subordinating conjunctions). Omit the word *A*, *An*, or *The* from the beginning of the name of a periodical.

"Into the Void." *New Scientist*

Volume and issue numbers

In an entry for an article from a journal, provide the volume number. If the issue number is available, put a period after the volume number and add the issue number.

Contemporary Review 194 *Studies in the Literary Imagination* 26.3

Date

For journals, place the year of publication in parentheses after the volume and issue number. For magazines and newspapers, provide the date of issue after the name of the periodical. Note the day first (if provided), followed by the month (abbreviated except for May, June, and July) and year.

JOURNAL	*American Literary History* 20.1-2 (2008)
MAGAZINE	*Economist* 20 Apr. 2013
NEWSPAPER	*Chicago Tribune* 24 July 2002

Page numbers

Use a colon to separate the date from the page number(s). Note all the pages on which the article appears, separating the first and last page with a hyphen: 21-39. If the page numbers have the same hundreds or thousands digit, do not repeat it when listing the final page in the range: 131-42 or 1680-99. Magazine and newspaper articles are often interrupted by advertisements or other articles. If the first part of an article appears on pages 45 through 47 and the rest on pages 92 through 94, give only the first page number followed by a plus sign: 45+.

Medium of publication

Be sure to include the medium (*Print*) at the end of the entry.

7. Article in a journal

Caillouet, Ruth R. "Everything I Need to Know about Teaching I Learned from *Beowulf*." *English Journal* 98.1 (2008): 42-46. Print.

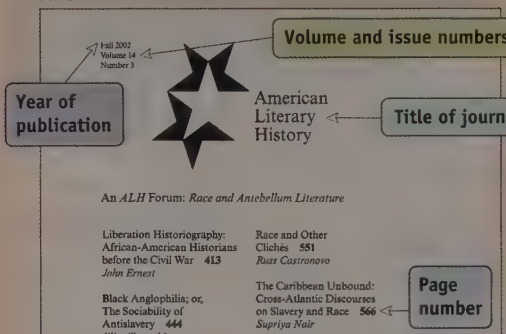
8. Article in a monthly magazine

Keizer, Garret. "How the Devil Falls in Love." *Harper's* Aug. 2002: 43-51. Print.

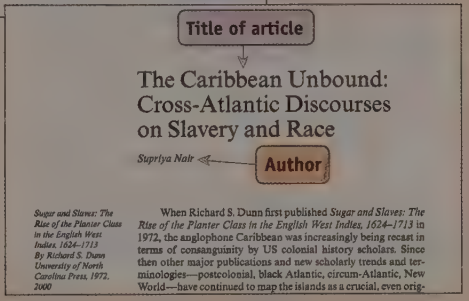
CITATION MAP 13.1: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, MLA STYLE

To cite an article from a journal, include the following elements.

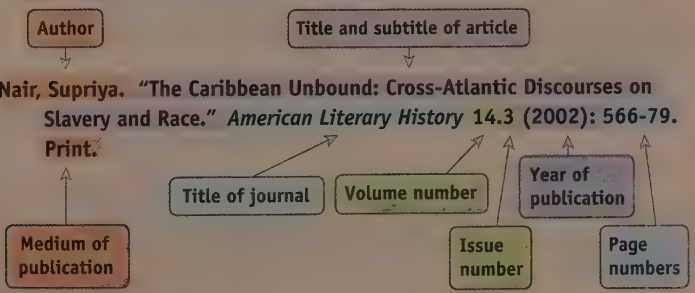
FIRST PAGE OF JOURNAL


Volume and issue numbers
Fall 2002
Volume 14
Number 3
Year of publication
American Literary History
Title of journal
An ALH Forum: Race and Antebellum Literature
Liberation Historiography: African-American Historians before the Civil War 413
John Ernest
Race and Other Clichés 551
Russ Castronovo
Black Anglophilia; or, The Sociability of Antislavery 444
Elisa Tamarkin
The Caribbean Unbound: Cross-Atlantic Discourses on Slavery and Race 566
Supriya Nair
Page number

FIRST PAGE OF ARTICLE


Title of article
The Caribbean Unbound: Cross-Atlantic Discourses on Slavery and Race
Supriya Nair
Author
Sugar and Slaves: The Rise of the Planter Class in the English West Indies, 1624–1713 By Richard S. Dunn University of North Carolina Press, 1972, 2000
When Richard S. Dunn first published Sugar and Slaves: The Rise of the Planter Class in the English West Indies, 1624–1713 in 1972, the anglophone Caribbean was increasingly being recast in terms of consanguinity by US colonial history scholars. Since then other major publications and new scholarly trends and terminologies—postcolonial, black Atlantic, circum-Atlantic, New World—have continued to map the islands as a crucial, even orig-

WORKS-CITED ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL


Author
Title and subtitle of article
Nair, Supriya. "The Caribbean Unbound: Cross-Atlantic Discourses on Slavery and Race." American Literary History 14.3 (2002): 566-79. Print.
Title of journal
Volume number
Year of publication
Medium of publication
Issue number
Page numbers

MLA

9. Article in a weekly magazine or newspaper

Chown, Marcus. "Into the Void." *New Scientist* 24 Nov. 2007: 34-37. Print.

10. Article in a daily newspaper

Moberg, David. "The Accidental Environmentalist." *Chicago Tribune* 24 Sept. 2002, final ed., sec. 2: 1+. Print.

When the name of the city is not part of a locally published newspaper's name, it should be given in brackets after the title: *Star Telegram* [Fort Worth]. If a specific edition is not identified on the masthead (natl. ed., final ed.), put a colon after the date and then provide the page reference. Specify the section by inserting the letter and/or number as it appears in the newspaper (A7 or 7A, for example).

11. Unsigned article or wire service article

"View from the Top." *National Geographic* July 2001: 140. Print.

12. Editorial in a newspaper or magazine

Beefs, Anne. "Ending Bias in the Human Rights System." Editorial. *New York Times* 22 May 2002, natl. ed.: A27. Print.

13. Book or film review in a magazine

Denby, David. "Horse Power." Rev. of *Seabiscuit*, dir. Gary Ross. *New Yorker* 4 Aug. 2003: 84-85. Print.

Include the name of the reviewer, the title of the review (if any), the phrase *Rev. of* (for "Review of"), the title of the work being reviewed, and the name of the author, editor, or director.

14. Book or film review in a journal

Graham, Catherine. Rev. of *Questionable Activities: The Best*, ed. Judith Rudakoff. *Canadian Theatre Review* 113 (2003): 74-76. Print.

BOOKS (PRINT)

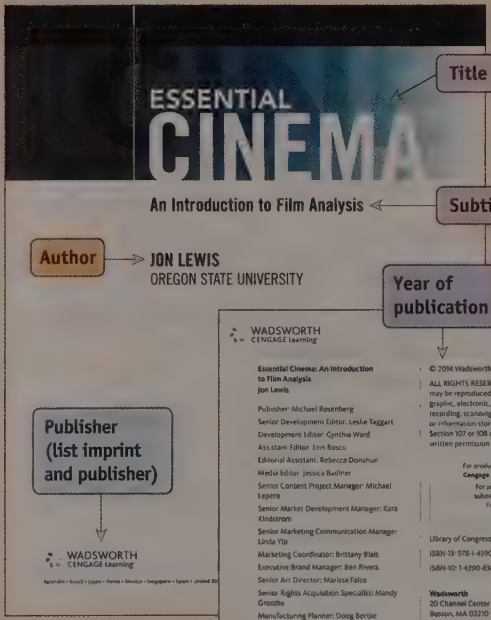
15. Basic format for a book

Min, Anchee. *The Cooked Seed: A Memoir.* New York: Bloomsbury, 2013. Print.

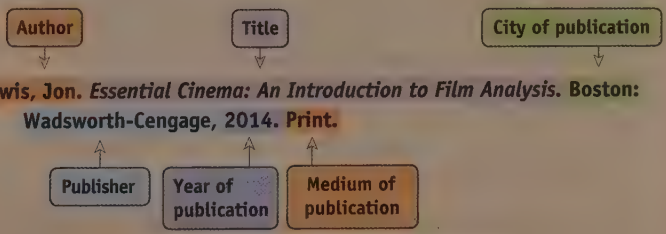
CITATION MAP 13.2: BOOK, MLA STYLE

Include the following elements when citing a book.

TITLE PAGE


ESSENTIAL
CINEMA
An Introduction to Film Analysis
JON LEWIS
OREGON STATE UNIVERSITY
WADSWORTH
CENGAGE Learning
Essential Cinema: An Introduction to Film Analysis
Jon Lewis
Publisher: Michael Rosenberg
Senior Development Editor: Lesha Taggart
Development Editor: Cynthia Ward
Assistant Editor: Erin Bosco
Editorial Assistant: Rebecca Donahue
Media Editor: Jessica Badiner
Senior Content Project Manager: Michael Lepera
Senior Market Development Manager: Kara Kindstrom
Senior Marketing Communication Manager: Linda Yip
Marketing Coordinator: Brittany Blais
Executive Brand Manager: Ben Rivera
Senior Art Director: Marissa Falco
Senior Rights Acquisition Specialist: Mandy Groszko
Manufacturing Planner: Doug Bertke
Production Service/Compositor: Lachina Publishing Services
Text Designer: Ke Design
Cover Designer: Raycroft Design
© 2014 Wadsworth, Cengage Learning
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this work covered by the copyright herein may be reproduced, transmitted, stored, or used in any form or by any means graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including but not limited to photocopying, recording, scanning, digitizing, taping, Web distribution, information networks, or information storage and retrieval systems, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without the prior written permission of the publisher.
For product information and technology assistance, contact us at Cengage Learning Customer & Sales Support, 1-800-354-9706
For permission to use material from this text or product, submit all requests online at cengage.com/permissions.
Further permissions questions can be emailed to permissionrequest@cengage.com.
Library of Congress Control Number: 2012950823
ISBN-13: 978-1-4390-8368-0
ISBN-10: 1-4390-8368-1
Wadsworth
20 Channel Center Street
Boston, MA 02210
USA
Cengage Learning is a leading provider of customized learning solutions with office locations around the globe, including Singapore, the United Kingdom, Australia, Mexico, Brazil, and Japan. Locate your local office at:
Title of book
Subtitle of book
Author
Year of publication
COPYRIGHT PAGE
Publisher (list imprint and publisher)
City of publication

WORKS-CITED ENTRY FOR A BOOK



The title page and copyright page of a book (see citation map 13.2) provide the information needed to create a bibliographic entry. If more than one city is listed on the title page, mention only the first. Place a colon after the name of the city, followed by a shortened form of the publisher's name with a comma after it and then the copyright date. Place a period after the date. Be sure to include the medium of publication at the end of the entry, followed by a period.

16. Book with an author and an editor

Stoker, Bram. *Dracula*. Ed. Glennis Byron. Peterborough: Broadview, 1998. Print.

Include both the name of the author and the name of the editor (preceded by *Ed.* for "Edited by").

17. Book with an editor instead of an author

Kachuba, John B., ed. *How to Write Funny*. Cincinnati: Writer's Digest, 2000. Print.

For a book with one editor include the abbreviation *ed.* and use *eds.* for "editors."

18. Edition after the first

Zinsser, William. *On Writing Well*. 5th ed. New York: HarperCollins, 1995. Print.

19. Introduction, preface, foreword, or afterword to a book

Olmos, Edward James. Foreword. *Vietnam Veteranos: Chicanos Recall the War*. By Lea Ybarra. Austin: U of Texas P, 2004. ix-x. Print.

Begin the entry with the author of the section of the book. Then give the title of the section. Place the page numbers of the section after the year of publication.

20. Translated book

Garrigues, Eduardo. *West of Babylon*. Trans. Nasario Garcia. Albuquerque: U of New Mexico P, 2002. Print.

Place the abbreviation *Trans.* for "Translated by" before the translator's name.

21. Graphic novel or illustrated book

Helfer, Andrew, writer. *Malcolm X: A Graphic Biography*. Illus. Randy DuBurke. New York: Hill and Wang, 2006. Print.

Bechdel, Alison. *Fun Home: A Family Tragicomedy*. New York: Houghton, 2006. Print.

For a book that relies on visuals, cartoons, or illustrations, start with the person and role you want to emphasize: the writer, artist, or illustrator. If the writer and illustrator are the same, cite just as you would a book.

22. Publisher's imprint

Fey, Tina. *Bossypants*. New York: Reagan Arthur-Little Brown, 2011. Print.

23. Republished book

Alcott, Louisa May. *Work: A Story of Experience*. 1873. Harmondsworth: Penguin, 1995. Print.

After the title of the book, provide the original publication date, followed by a period.

24. Book with a title within a title

Coontz, Stephanie. *A Strange Stirring:* The Feminine Mystique *and American Women at the Dawn of the 1960s*. New York: Basic, 2011. Print.

25. Anthology

Buranen, Lisa, and Alice M. Roy, eds. *Perspectives on Plagiarism and Intellectual Property in a Postmodern World*. New York: State U of New York P, 1999. Print.

Cite an anthology (a collection of works by different authors) as you would a book, beginning with the name(s) of the editor or editors, followed by *ed.* or *eds.*

26. Work originally published in an anthology or chapter in a book with an editor

Rowe, David. "No Gain, No Game? Media and Sport." *Mass Media and Society*. Ed. James Curran and Michael Gurevitch. 3rd ed. New York: Oxford UP, 2000. 346-61. Print.

Cite the author(s) of the selection; place the title of the article, essay, story, poem, or play in quotation marks; and italicize the

title of the anthology in which the selection was published for the first time. Use *Ed.* for "edited by" to identify the editor(s) of the anthology, and note the edition if it is not the first. List the publication data for the anthology, the range of pages on which the individual selection appears, and the medium of publication.

27. Two or more selections from the same anthology

Clark, Irene L. "Writing Centers and Plagiarism." Buranen and Roy 155-67.

Howard, Rebecca Moore. "The New Abolitionism Comes to Plagiarism." Buranen and Roy 87-95.

The entry for the entire anthology will include all publication data; therefore individual citations include only the name(s) of the author(s) of the selection, the title of the work, the name(s) of the editor(s), and the inclusive page numbers.

28. Work from a journal reprinted in a textbook or an anthology

Webb-Sunderhaus, Sara. "A Family Affair: Competing Sponsors of Literacy in Appalachian Students' Lives." *Community Literacy Journal* 2.1 (2007): 5-24. Rpt. in *The Norton Book of Composition Studies.* Ed. Susan Miller. New York: Norton, 2009. 1600-43. Print.

Use the abbreviation *Rpt.* for "Reprinted."

29. Work from an edited collection reprinted in a textbook or an anthology

Brownmiller, Susan. "Let's Put Pornography Back in the Closet." *Take Back the Night: Women on Pornography*. Ed. Laura Lederer. New York: Morrow, 1980. 252-55. Rpt. in *Conversations: Readings for Writing*. By Jack Selzer. 4th ed. New York: Allyn, 2000. 578-81. Print.

See item 27 for information on citing more than one work from the same anthology.

30. Multivolume work

Young, Ralph F., ed. *Dissent in America*. 2 vols. New York: Longman-Pearson, 2005. Print.

Cite the total number of volumes in a work when you have used material from more than one volume. Include the year the volumes were published. If the volumes were published over a span of time, provide inclusive dates: 1997-99 or 1998-2004.

If you have used only one volume, include that volume's number (preceded by the abbreviation *Vol.*) in place of the total number of volumes.

Young, Ralph F., ed. *Dissent in America*. Vol. 1. New York: Longman-Pearson, 2005. Print.

The publisher's name is hyphenated: the first name is the imprint; the second is the publisher.

31. Article in a multivolume work

Provide the author's name and the title of the article in quotation marks. Note the page numbers for the article after the date of publication.

Baxby, Derrick. "Jenner, Edward." *Oxford Dictionary of National Biography*. Ed. H. C. G. Matthew and Brian Harrison. Vol. 30. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2004. 4-8. Print.

If required by your instructor, include the number of volumes and the inclusive publication dates after the medium of publication: Print. 60 vols. 2004-2008.

32. Book in a series

Sumner, Colin, ed. *Blackwell Companion to Criminology*. Malden: Blackwell, 2004. Print. Blackwell Companions to Sociology 8.

When citing a book that is part of a series, add the name of the series and, if one is listed, the number. Abbreviate words in the series name according to the MLA guidelines; for example, the word *Series* is abbreviated *Ser.*

33. Dictionary entry

When citing a specific dictionary definition for a word, use the abbreviation *Def.* (for "Definition") and indicate which one you used if the entry has two or more.

"Reactive." Def. 2a. *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*. 10th ed. 2001. Print.

34. Sacred text

Begin with the title of the work, rather than information about editors or translators.

New American Standard Bible. Anaheim: Foundation, 1997. Print.

The Qur'an. Trans. Muhammad A. S. Abdel Haleem. Oxford: Oxford UP, 2004. Print.

ONLINE SOURCES

Many of the guidelines for documenting online sources are similar to those for print sources. For sources found online, provide electronic publication information and access information.

Electronic publication information

Indicate the author's name, the title of the work, the title of the website, the site's sponsoring organization (usually found at the bottom of the site's home page; see citation map 13.4), the date of publication, and the medium of publication (*Web*). All of this information precedes the access information.

Access information

When you document an online source, you must include the date of access: the day, month, and year on which you consulted the source. Either keep track of the date of access or print out the source so that you have a record.

If your readers can easily locate the online source by searching for the author's name and the title of the work, no URL is necessary. Otherwise, you should provide the complete and accurate URL (between angle brackets) following the date of access after a period and a space. When the URL does not fit on a single line, break it only after a slash. The closing angle bracket should be followed by a period.

The following formats apply to articles available only online.

35. Article in an online journal

Bowdon, Melody, and Russell Carpenter. "Introduction: Digital Media and Community Literacy." *Community Literacy Journal* 6.1 (2011): 1-4. Web. 9 Feb. 2013.

When page numbers are not provided for online journals, write *n. pag.* (for "no pagination"). If they are provided, place them after the colon that follows the date of publication.

36. Article in an online magazine

Dickerson, John. "Karl Rove's Courage: Why It Was Brave—and Smart—for Him to Challenge the Tea Party." *Slate.com*. Washington Post Company, 8 Feb. 2013. Web. 9 Feb. 2013.

37. Newspaper article

"Damages Sought for Accident at Bank." *Santa Fe New Mexican*. Santa Fe New Mexican. 8 Feb. 2013. Web. 8 Feb. 2013.

When no author is identified, begin with the title of the article. If the article is an editorial, include *Editorial* (not italicized) after the title: "America's Promises." Editorial. (In the sample entry, the first mention of *Santa Fe New Mexican* is the title of the newspaper's website, and the second, which is not italicized, is the name of the site's sponsor.)

38. Book available only online

Ames, James Barr, Jeremiah Smith, and Roscoe Pound. *A Selection of Cases on the Law of Torts*. Cambridge: Harvard UP, 1919. U of Toronto Lib. Web. 3 Aug. 2013.

Note that in this example the name of the sponsoring organization, the University of Toronto Libraries, is included.

39. Book available online and in print

Rohrbough, Malcolm J. *Days of Gold: The California Gold Rush and the American Nation*. Berkeley: U of California P, 1997. *History E-book Project*. Web. 17 Feb. 2005.

Begin the citation with print citation information: the author's name, the title of the work, city of publication, publisher, and date. Follow this information with the title of the database or website (italicized), the medium of publication (*Web*), and the date of access.

To cite books available via devices such as the Kindle, follow the relevant guidelines for a book (whether an actual or online book) including relevant publication information. Finally, include the format *(Kindle, Kindle file,* or *Kindle AZW file).*

Mankell, Henning. *Treacherous Paradise*. New York: Knopf, 2013. Kindle.

40. Part of an online book

Strunk, William, Jr. "Elementary Rules of Usage." *The Elements of Style.* Ithaca: Humphrey, 1918. N. pag. *Bartleby.com.* Web. 6 June 2003.

DATABASES

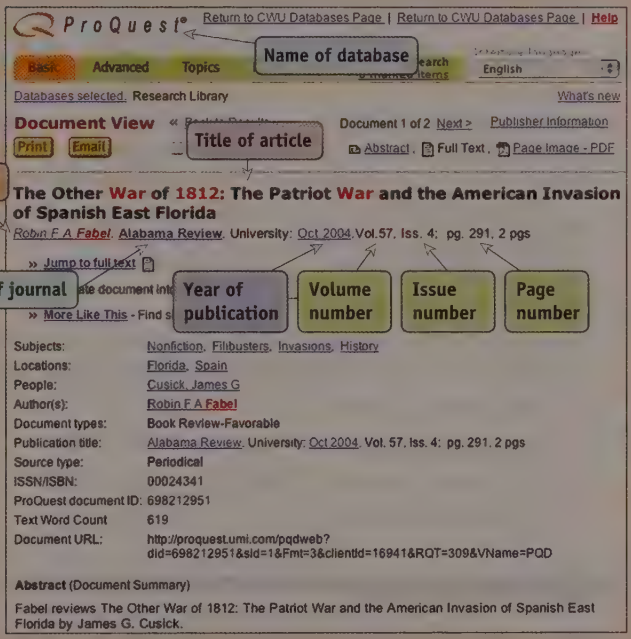
Many print materials are available online through a database (JSTOR, Project MUSE, ERIC, PsycINFO, Academic Universe, LexisNexis, ProQuest, InfoTrac, SilverPlatter, or EBSCO). To cite material from a database, begin with the author, the title of the article (in quotation marks), the title of the publication (in italics), the volume and issue numbers, the year of publication, and the page numbers (or the abbreviation *n. pag.*). Then add the name of the database (in italics), the medium of publication consulted (*Web*), and the date of access. You can find most of the information you need for a works-cited entry on the abstract page of the article you select.

41. Article through ERIC

Taylor, Steven J. "Caught in the Continuum: A Critical Analysis of the Principle of the Least Restrictive Environment." *Research and Practice for Persons with Severe Disabilities* 29.4 (2004): 218-30. *ERIC*. Web. 3 Mar. 2009.

CITATION MAP 13.3: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, MLA STYLE

Include the following elements when citing an article in a database.


ProQuest
Return to CWU Databases Page | Return to CWU Databases Page | Help
Name of database
Basic
Advanced
Topics
English
Databases selected: Research Library
What's new
Document View
Document 1 of 2 Next >
Publisher Information
Print
Email
Title of article
Abstract, Full Text, Page Image - PDF
Author
The Other War of 1812: The Patriot War and the American Invasion of Spanish East Florida
Robin F A Fabel. Alabama Review. University: Oct 2004.Vol.57. Iss. 4: pg. 291. 2 pgs
» Jump to full text
Title of journal
Year of publication
Volume number
Issue number
Page number
» More Like This - Find s
Subjects: Nonfiction. Filibusters. Invasions. History
Locations: Florida. Spain
People: Cusick. James G
Author(s): Robin F A Fabel
Document types: Book Review-Favorable
Publication title: Alabama Review. University: Oct 2004. Vol. 57. Iss. 4: pg. 291. 2 pgs
Source type: Periodical
ISSN/ISBN: 00024341
ProQuest document ID: 698212951
Text Word Count 619
Document URL: http://proquest.umi.com/pqdweb?did=698212951&sid=1&Fmt=3&clientId=16941&RQT=309&VName=PQD
Abstract (Document Summary)
Fabel reviews The Other War of 1812: The Patriot War and the American Invasion of Spanish East Florida by James G. Cusick.

MLA

WORKS-CITED ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE IN A DATABASE

Author

Title of article

Fabel, Robin F. A. "The Other War of 1812: The Patriot War and the American Invasion of Spanish East Florida." *Alabama Review* 57.4 (2004): 291-92. *ProQuest*. Web. 30 June 2013.

Year of publication

Page numbers

Name of database

Medium

Date of access

Title of journal

Volume and issue numbers

42. Article through EBSCO

Folks, Jeffrey J. "Crowd and Self: William Faulkner's Sources of Agency in *The Sound and the Fury*." *Southern Literary Journal* 34.2 (2002): 30+. *EBSCO*. Web. 6 June 2013.

For sources that list only the page number on which a work begins, include that number followed by a plus sign.

43. Article through LexisNexis

Suggs, Welch. "A Hard Year in College Sports." *Chronicle of Higher Education* 19 Dec. 2003: 37. *LexisNexis*. Web. 17 July 2004.

44. Article through ProQuest

Fabel, Robin F. A. "The Other War of 1812: The Patriot War and the American Invasion of Spanish East Florida." *Alabama Review* 57.4 (2004): 291-92. *ProQuest*. Web. 30 June 2013.

45. Article through InfoTrac

Priest, Ann-Marie. "Between Being and Nothingness: The 'Astonishing Precipice' of Virginia Woolf's *Night and Day*." *Journal of Modern Literature* 26.2 (2002-03): 66-80. *InfoTrac*. Web. 12 Jan. 2004.

46. Article through JSTOR

Blum, Susan D. "Five Approaches to Explaining 'Truth' and 'Deception' in Human Communication." *Journal of Anthropological Research* 61.3 (2005): 289-315. *JSTOR*. Web. 3 Mar. 2009.

47. Article through Project MUSE

Muñoz, Alejandro Anaya. "Transnational and Domestic Processes in the Definition of Human Rights Policies in Mexico." *Human Rights Quarterly* 31.1 (2009): 35-58. *Project MUSE*. Web. 3 Mar. 2013.

48. Abstract from a database

Landers, Susan J. "FDA Panel Findings Intensify Struggles with Prescribing of Antidepressants." *American Medical News* 47.37 (2004): 1-2. *ProQuest Direct*. Web. 7 Feb. 2005.

49. Entire website

McGann, Jerome, ed. *The Complete Writings and Pictures of Dante Gabriel Rossetti*. Inst. for Advanced Technology in the Humanities, U of Virginia, n.d. Web. 16 Mar. 2009.

Include the name of the author, editor, compiler, director, or translator, followed by the title of the site (italicized), the version or edition (if given), the publisher or sponsor (if not available, use *N.p.*), the date of publication (if not available, use *n.d.*), the medium of publication (*Web*), and the date of access.

50. Website with untitled work

Breastcancer.org. N.p., 2 Feb. 2008. Web. 5 Feb. 2008.

If a website does not provide all the information usually included in a works-cited entry, list as much as is available.

51. Section of a website

Altman, Andrew. "Civil Rights." *Stanford Encyclopedia of Philosophy*. Ed. Edward N. Zalta. Center for the Study of Lang. and Information, Stanford U, 3 Feb. 2003. Web. 12 June 2003.

Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus. "Concerto No. 3 for Horn, K. 447." *Essentials of Music*. Sony Music Entertainment, 2001. Web. 3 Mar. 2009.

52. E-mail

Socarides, Alexandra. "Scholarships for Women." Message to the author. 15 Feb. 2013. E-mail.

53. Posting to a discussion forum

Schipper, William. "Re: Quirk and Wrenn Grammar." *Ansaxnet*. N.p., 5 Jan. 1995. Web. 12 Sept. 1996.

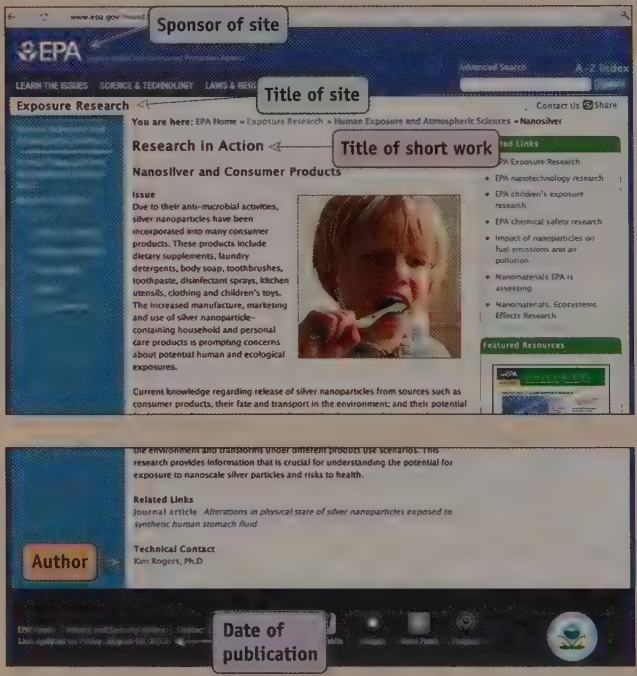
If the posting is untitled, identify the genre (e.g., *Online posting*) instead of providing the title.

54. Entire blog

Sullivan, Andrew. *The Dish*. N.p. 2013. Web. 1 July 2013.

CITATION MAP 13.4: WORK FROM A WEBSITE, MLA STYLE

Include the following elements when citing a document you find on the web.


Sponsor of site
Title of site
Title of short work
Author
Date of publication
EPA
Exposure Research
Research in Action
Nanosilver and Consumer Products
Issue
Due to their anti-microbial activities, silver nanoparticles have been incorporated into many consumer products. These products include dietary supplements, laundry detergents, body soap, toothbrushes, toothpaste, disinfectant sprays, kitchen utensils, clothing and children's toys. The increased manufacture, marketing and use of silver nanoparticle–containing household and personal care products is prompting concerns about potential human and ecological exposures.
Current knowledge regarding release of silver nanoparticles from sources such as consumer products, their fate and transport in the environment; and their potential
Related Links
Journal article Alterations in physical state of silver nanoparticles exposed to synthetic human stomach fluid
Technical Contact
Kim Rogers, Ph.D

Source: Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)

WORKS-CITED ENTRY FOR A SHORT WORK FROM A WEBSITE

Author — Title of short work

Rogers, Kim. **"Research in Action: Nanosilver and Consumer Products."** ***Exposure Research.*** **United States Environmental Protection Agency, 9 Aug. 2013. Web. 3 Sept. 2013.**

Title of site — Date of publication — Medium of publication — Date of access — Sponsor of site

Cite as you would a website. If a blog has no sponsor or publisher, include *N.p.* (for "no publisher") after the title.

55. Blog entry

Silver, Nate. "As More Attend College, Majors Become More Career-Focused." *FiveThirtyEight*. New York Times, 25 June 2013. Web. 1 July 2013.

56. Entry in an online reference work

"Iran." *Encyclopaedia Britannica Online*. Encyclopaedia Britannica, 2002. Web. 6 Mar. 2004.

57. Wiki entry

"Buddy Love." *WikiScreenplay*. WikiScreenplay, 5 Dec. 2009. Web. 1 July 2013.

58. Online congressional document

United States. Cong. Senate. Special Committee on Aging. *Global Aging: Opportunity or Threat for the U.S. Economy?* 108th Cong., 1st sess. S. Hrg. 108-30. GPO, 2003. *GPO Access*. Web. 7 Jan. 2005.

Provide the number and session of Congress and the type and number of publication. (*S* stands for "Senate"; *H* or *HR* stands for "House of Representatives.")

59. Online government document

United States. Dept. of State. Bur. of Democracy, Human Rights, and Labor. *Guatemala Country Report on Human Rights Practices for 1998*. Feb. 1999. Web. 1 May 1999.

Begin with the name of the country, state, or city whose government is responsible for the document and the department or agency that issued it. If a subdivision of the larger organization is responsible, name the subdivision. If an author is identified, provide the name, preceded by the word *By*, between the title and the date of issue of the document.

60. Online legal source

Tennessee v. Lane. 541 US 509. Supreme Court of the US. 2004. *Supreme Court Collection.* Legal Information Inst., Cornell U Law School, n.d. Web. 28 Jan. 2005.

61. Online public law

Individuals with Disabilities Education Act. Pub. L. 105-17. 104 Stat. 587-698. *Thomas.* Lib. of Cong., 4 June 1997. Web. 29 Jan. 2005.

62. Online sacred text

Sama Veda. Trans. Ralph T. H. Griffith. 1895. *Sacred-Texts.com.* Ed. John B. Hare. N.p., 2008. Web. 6 Mar. 2008.

ONLINE AUDIO AND VISUAL SOURCES

63. Digital file (PDF, JPEG)

Digital files include PDFs, JPEGs, MP3s, and other documents, images, or recordings that can exist independently from the web.

National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases. "CDC and the Food Safety Modernization Act." CDC Division of Foodborne, Waterborne, and Environmental Diseases, May 2011. PDF file.

64. Sound recording

Moran, Jason. "Jump Up." *Same Mother.* Blue Note, 2005. *Blue Note.* Blue Note Records. Web. 7 Mar. 2005.

In this entry, "Blue Note" is the manufacturer of the CD, *Blue Note* is the title of the website where the song was accessed, and "Blue Note Records" is the sponsor of that site.

65. Podcast

"Episode 402: David Sedaris." Host Marc Maron. *WTF with Marc Maron.* WTF, 1 July 2013. MP3 file.

"Out Loud: Justice and Ruth Bader Ginsburg." Narr. Margaret Talbot, Jeffrey Toobin, and Amy Davidson. *New Yorker.* New Yorker. Conde Nast, 4 Mar. 2013. Web. 23 May 2013.

Podcasts found online are cited much like short works from a website (see item 51). Cite a podcast you download as you would a digital file (see item 63), ending with the file type (*MP3*).

66. Online speech

Malcolm X. "The Ballot or the Bullet." Detroit. 12 Apr. 1964. *American Rhetoric: Top One Hundred Speeches*. Ed. Michael E. Eidenmuller. N.p., 2005. Web. 14 Jan. 2005.

"12 Apr. 1964" is the date the speech was delivered, "2005" is the year of the speech's electronic publication, "Web" is the medium, and "14 Jan. 2005" is the date of access.

67. Online video

Riefenstahl, Leni, dir. *Triumph of the Will*. Reichsparteitag-Film, 1935. *Movieflix.com*. MovieFlix, 2005. Web. 17 Feb. 2005.

"1935" is the year in which the movie was originally released, "2005" is the year in which it was made available online, and "17 Feb. 2005" is the date of access.

To cite a YouTube clip following the MLA guidelines for a video, begin with author name (or poster's username), followed by the title of the image or video (in quotation marks), the media type, name of website (in italics), name of website's publisher, date of posting, medium, and date accessed.

SciShow. "Is Sharknado Possible?" Online video. *YouTube*, 31 July 2013. Web. 3 Aug. 2013.

68. Online television or radio program

"Religion and the American Election." Narr. Tony Hassan. *The Religion Report*. ABC Radio National, 3 Nov. 2004. Web. 18 Feb. 2005.

69. Online interview

McLaughlin, John. Interview by Wolf Blitzer. *CNN.com*. Cable News Network, 14 July 2004. Web. 21 Dec. 2004.

70. Online review

Dombal, Ryan. "Kanye West, *Yeezus*." *Pitchfork*. Pitchfork Media, 18 June 2013. Web. 30 June 2013.

71. Online editorial

"A Bump in the Road for Tesla." Editorial. *Washington Post*. Washington Post, 13 June 2013. Web. 30 June 2013.

72. Online work of art

Vermeer, Johannes. *Young Woman with a Water Pitcher*. c. 1660. Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York. *The Metropolitan Museum of Art*. Web. 2 Oct. 2002.

73. Online photograph

Marmon, Lee. *Engine Rock*. 1985. *Lee Marmon Gallery*. Web. 9 Feb. 2009.

74. Online map or chart

"Virginia 1624." Map. *Map Collections 1544-1996*. Lib. of Cong. N.d. Web. 26 Apr. 1999.

United States. Dept. of Health and Human Services. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. "Daily Cigarette Smoking among High School Seniors." Chart. *National Center for Health Statistics*. 27 Jan. 2005. Web. 25 Feb. 2005.

75. Online advertisement

Milk Processor Education Program. "Got Milk?" Advertisement. *MilkPEP*. MilkPEP, n.d. Web. 16 Feb. 2005.

76. Online cartoon or comic strip

Cagle, Daryl. "Social Security Pays 3 to 2." Cartoon. *Slate.com*. Newsweek Interactive, 4 Feb. 2005. Web. 5 Feb. 2005.

OTHER SOURCES

77. Government publication

United States. Office of Management and Budget. *A Citizen's Guide to the Federal Budget*. Washington: GPO, 1999. Print.

List the author, if given. Otherwise, begin with the name of the government, followed by the agency. Italicize the title of a book or pamphlet. Indicate the city of publication. Federal publications are usually (but not always) printed by the Government Printing Office (GPO). For an online government publication, follow the guidelines for an entire website or for a section of a website (items 49 and 51).

When the name of an author, editor, or compiler appears on a government publication, you can begin the entry with that name, followed by the abbreviation *ed.* or *comp.* if the person is not the author. Alternatively, insert that name after the publication's title and introduce it with the word *By* or the abbreviation *Ed.* or *Comp.*

78. Historical document

Eisenhower, Dwight D. Farewell Address. 1961. *Our Documents: 100 Milestone Documents from the National Archives*. Foreword by Michael Beschloss. New York: Oxford UP, 2003. 217-19.

79. Law case

Chavez v. Martinez. 538 US 760. Supreme Court of the US. 2003. *United States Reports*. Washington: GPO, 2004. Print.

Include the last name of the first plaintiff, the abbreviation *v.* for "versus," the last name of the first defendant, data on the law report (volume, abbreviated name, and page or reference number), the name of the deciding court, and the year of the decision. Although law cases are italicized in the text of a paper, they are *not* italicized in works-cited entries.

80. Public law

No Child Left Behind Act of 2001. Pub. L. 107-10. 115 Stat. 1425-2094. 8 Jan. 2002. Print.

Include the name of the act, its public law number, its Statutes at Large cataloging number and page numbers, the date it was

enacted, and the medium of publication. Notice the use of abbreviations in the example.

81. Pamphlet, bulletin, or report

Stucco in Residential Construction. St. Paul: Lath & Plaster Bureau, 2000. Print.

If the pamphlet has an author, begin with the author's name, as you would for a book.

82. Published dissertation

Fukuda, Kay Louise. *Differing Perceptions and Constructions of the Meaning of Assessment in Education*. Diss. Ohio State U, 2001. Ann Arbor: UMI, 2002. Print.

After the title of the dissertation, include the abbreviation *Diss.*, the name of the university granting the degree, the date of completion, and the publication information. In the example, *UMI* stands for "University Microfilms International," which publishes many dissertations.

83. Published letter

Jackson, Helen Hunt. "To Thomas Bailey Aldrich." 4 May 1883. *The Indian Reform Letters of Helen Hunt Jackson, 1879-1885*. Ed. Valerie Sherer Mathes. Norman: U of Oklahoma P, 1998. 258-59. Print.

In general, treat a published letter like a work in an anthology, adding the date of the letter and the number (if the editor assigned one).

84. Personal letter

Lethem, Jonathan. Letter to the author. 30 June 2013. TS.

To cite an unpublished letter you received, include the phrase *Letter to the author*, followed by the date, and the medium of deliver (*MS* for "manuscript" or *TS* for "typescript," meaning a typed letter).

85. Cartoon or comic strip

Cheney, Tom. Cartoon. *New Yorker* 9 June 2003: 93. Print.

Trudeau, Garry. "Doonesbury." Comic strip. *Daily Record* [Ellensburg] 21 Apr. 2005: A4. Print.

After the creator's name, place the title of the work (if given) in quotation marks and include the descriptor *Cartoon* or *Comic strip*.

86. Map or chart

Cincinnati and Vicinity. Map. Chicago: Rand, 2008. Print.

87. Advertisement

Nu by Yves Saint Laurent. Advertisement. *Allure* June 2003: 40. Print.

88. Live performance

Proof. By David Auburn. Dir. Daniel Sullivan. Walter Kerr Theater, New York. 8 Oct. 2002. Performance.

Cite the date of the performance you attended.

89. Lecture or presentation

Guinier, Lani. Barbara Jordan Lecture Ser. Schwab Auditorium, Pennsylvania State U, University Park. 4 Oct. 2004. Address.

Scharnhorst, Gary. English 296.003. Dane Smith Hall, U of New Mexico, Albuquerque. 30 Apr. 2013. Guest lecture.

Identify the site and the date of the lecture or presentation. Use the title if available; otherwise, provide a descriptive label.

90. Conference paper in published proceedings

Crosetto, Alice. "Food in Children's Literature: An Exploration of Use and Meaning." *Proceedings of the 54th Annual Midwest Modern Language Association, November 8-11, 2012*. Chicago: MMLA, 2012. Print.

91. Interview

Furstenheim, Ursula. Personal interview. 16 Jan. 2003.

Sugo, Misuzu. Telephone interview. 20 Feb. 2003.

If the interview was conducted by someone else, add the name of the interviewer, a title or a descriptive label, and the name of the source.

Harryhausen, Ray. Interview by Terry Gross. *Fresh Air*. Natl. Public Radio. WHYY, Philadelphia. 6 Jan. 2003. Radio.

92. Film

My Big Fat Greek Wedding. Dir. Joel Zwick. IFC, 2002. Film.

When you want to highlight the contribution of a specific person, list the contributor's name first. Other supplementary information may be included after the title.

Gomez, Ian, perf. *My Big Fat Greek Wedding*. Screenplay by Nia Vardalos. Dir. Joel Zwick. IFC, 2002. Film.

93. Radio or television program

When referring to a specific episode, place quotation marks around its title. Italicize the title of the program.

"'Barbarian' Forces." *Ancient Warriors*. Narr. Colgate Salsbury. Dir. Phil Grabsky. Learning Channel. 1 Jan. 1996. Television.

To highlight a specific contributor or contributors, begin the entry with the name or names and note the nature of the contribution.

Abumrad, Jad, and Robert Kulwich, narrs. "Choice." *Radiolab*. New York Public Radio. WNYC, New York. 14 Nov. 2008. Radio.

94. Painting or other artwork

Gauguin, Paul. *Ancestors of Tehamana*. 1893. Oil on canvas. Art Inst. of Chicago, Chicago.

Identify the artist's name, the title of the work (italicized), the date of composition (if known; otherwise, write *N.d.*), the medium of composition, the organization or individual holding the work, and the city in which the work is located. For a photograph or reproduction of a work of art, provide the preceding

information followed by complete publication information for the source, including medium of publication. For works you locate online, omit the medium of composition. Include the name of the website, medium, and date of access.

Gaugin, Paul. *Ancestors of Tehamana*. 1893. Art. Inst. of Chicago. Web. 3 Aug. 2013.

95. Photograph

Marmon, Lee. *White Man's Moccasins*. 1954. Photograph. Native American Cultural Center, Albuquerque.

96. CD-ROM

"About *Richard III*." *Cinemania 96*. Redmond: Microsoft, 1996. CD-ROM.

Jordan, June. "Moving towards Home." *Database of Twentieth-Century African American Poetry on CD-ROM*. Alexandria: Chadwyck-Healey, 1999. CD-ROM.

97. DVD or Blu-ray

A River Runs through It. Screenplay by Richard Friedenberg. Dir. Robert Redford. 1992. Columbia, 1999. DVD.

Cite relevant information about the title and director as you would for a film. Note the release date for the DVD or Blu-ray and include the original release date of the film when relevant.

98. Clip or section from DVD

"From Script to Screen." Prod. Allison Abbate. *Fantastic Mr. Fox*. Dir. Wes Anderson. Twentieth Century Fox, 2009. DVD. Disc 1.

End with information about the DVD including the disc number, if appropriate.

99. Sound recording on CD

Franklin, Aretha. *Amazing Grace: The Complete Recordings*. Atlantic, 1999. CD.

When citing a recording of a specific song, begin with the name of the performer and place the song title in quotation marks. Identify the author(s) after the song title. If the

performance is a reissue from an earlier recording, provide the original date of recording (preceded by *Rec.* for "Recorded").

Horne, Lena. "The Man I Love." By George Gershwin and Ira Gershwin. Rec. 15 Dec. 1941. *Stormy Weather*. BMG, 1990. CD.

13c Sample MLA-style paper

(1) Submit a title page if your instructor requires one

The MLA recommends omitting a title page and instead providing identifying information on the first page of the essay, including your name, the instructor's name, the name of the course with its section number, and the date. If your instructor requires a separate title page, follow the specific directions for doing so.

(2) Sample MLA-style paper

Interested in the controversy surrounding prison reform, Marie Heller explores the issue in the MLA-style essay that follows.

TIPS FOR PREPARING AN MLA-STYLE ESSAY

- Double-space throughout.
- Number all pages (including the first one) with an Arabic numeral in the upper right-hand corner, one-half inch from the top. Put your last name before the page number.
- On the left side of the first page, one inch from the top, type a double-spaced heading that includes your name, the name of your instructor, the course number, and the date of submission.
- Double-space between the heading and the title of your essay and the line(s) of your title. Center your title.
- Double-space between your title and the first line of the text.
- Indent the first paragraph and every subsequent paragraph one-half inch.

1 inch

1/2 inch

The writer's last name and the page number

Marie Heller
Professor Browne
Liberal Arts 101H, Section 014
9 January 2013

Heading

Prison Problems: Correctional System Reform

Center the title

Proposal for Congress

In George Orwell's dark vision of a future fascist state, *Nineteen Eighty-Four*, all of the government institutions are precisely named for what they are not. The Ministry of Love tortures its citizens; the Ministry of Peace orchestrates wars; the Ministry of Truth fabricates propaganda; and the Ministry of Plenty rations all food. Just as Orwell's readers are rightfully suspicious of those names, I am suspicious of "Department of Corrections," the term used to describe prison systems in this country. After all, the *Oxford English Dictionary* tells us that "corrective" means "having the property or function of correcting or setting right what is erroneous or faulty." Given that definition, how could our prisons be considered correctional when they are actually and primarily punitive? Either we should drop the pretense and call the system the "Department of Punishment," or we should reexamine and reform the way we run the US prison system.

Writer opens with an attention-getting statement

Double-space throughout

Reform is needed urgently. At present, there are nearly 2.5 million Americans locked behind bars (see fig. 1), a rise in the

Use one-inch margins on both sides of the page

1 inch

MLA

number of convicts not reflected in an increased number of prison cells. While our prisons are bursting at the seams, we should consider it our duty as a society to see that criminals are reformed at the same time they are punished and treated humanely and with respect.

Thesis

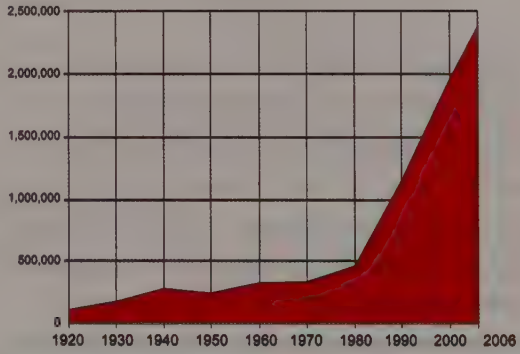


Fig. 1. Number of incarcerated Americans between 1920 and 2006. Sources: Justice Policy Institute. "The Punishing Decade." *US Bureau of Justice Statistics Bulletin*. NCJ [National Criminal Justice] 219416-Prisoners in 2006. N.d. Web. 3 Jan. 2013.

Before discussing potential reforms, however, I want to outline the current state of America's prison system and assess its effectiveness as a correctional tool. An examination of trends in the past decade alone yields interesting data about incarceration. Prison inmates constitute only 0.7% of the total population, a seemingly negligible percentage except that those prisoners live in

Background information

MLA

cramped conditions, within an overextended prison system ("Prisoner Statistics" 1). In 2009, 743 out of every 100,000 Americans were incarcerated ("Correctional" 2). That number might seem relatively insignificant until we consider that it is one of the highest incarceration rates in the world. The world's highest incarceration rate in modern times belongs to the Soviet Union and its Gulag system of prison camps and colonies, where, from 1934 to 1953, over a million people were imprisoned, at a rate of 800 out of every 100,000 (Rosefielde 117). As recently as 2008, the United States was ranked first as the world's leading jailer, now followed by Russia (see fig. 2).

Citation of a work by an organization

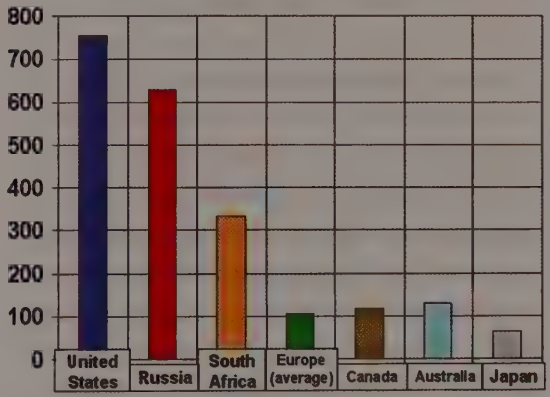


Fig. 2. The United States remains the world's leading jailer. Source: Roy Walmsley. *World Prison Population List, 2009*. 8th ed. International Centre of Prison Studies. King's College. 2008. Web. 3 Jan. 2013.

Indent each paragraph one-half inch

These dire statistics frame the discussion for prison reform by defining the shape and magnitude of the current US prison system. In terms of the causes for these incarcerations, the rate of violent crimes has been decreasing for decades with 49% of criminals convicted of nonviolent crimes ("Incarcerated America"). Some scholars argue that this steep drop in violent crimes in relation to the high incarceration rate can be attributed to the "war on drugs" in the United States and the concomitant implementation of three-strike laws, mandatory minimum sentencing, and similar social policy legislation.

An examination of the characteristics of the US prison population brings to light a deep racial and economic divide. A 2007 report by the Associated Press reveals that blacks and Hispanics are more likely to be found in a prison cell than in a college dorm room ("More Blacks"). While blacks account for only 13.6% of the US population, they constitute 39.4% of prison population. Furthermore, non-Hispanic whites make up 37% of the US prison population, and Hispanics 19% ("More Blacks"). As far as Hispanics are concerned, they represent only 16.3% of the total US population yet 20.6% of jail and prison populations (*American FactFinder*; "Prison Inmates"). The racial discrepancy is obvious.

The writer supplies details about the US prison population

Refers to two sources in one parenthetical reference

Just a cursory racial profile of the US prison population indicates a systemic problem of legal and judicial racism. Such legal

racism intersects with three-strike laws, mandatory minimum sentencing, and the associated incarceration of nonviolent offenders, thereby causing the huge increase in the US prison population. With the overcrowding of prisons comes more cause for releasing prisoners. And with more release of prisoners comes the question of a prison's correctional efficacy, defined by its recidivism rate.

Perhaps the best measurement of a prison's correctional efficacy lies in its recidivism rates. Recidivism, defined as "relapsing into crime, or reoffending, especially habitually," is difficult to measure. The recidivism rates in the United States are incredibly fuzzy. Despite the implementation of recidivism-incentive programs, state correctional departments are not required to report them. In fact, the most recent available US Department of Corrections recidivism statistics are from 1994, with very few states providing those statistics since then. Nevertheless, recidivism rates are often linked to the effectiveness of a correctional facility. In terms of such links, however, no researcher has yet definitively determined the likelihood of an inmate's relapse. One study finds no evidence to link one incarceration with repeated incarcerations (Langan). On the other hand, the researchers for "Incarcerated America" argue that extended prison stays gradually destroy the positive social networks inmates have on the outside, the friends, family, and employees who can offer

Direct quotation of a phrase from a cited work

positive yet informal social pressure, pressure that helps keep them from committing further crimes, from relapsing. Without that informal social control, inmates are more likely to relapse ("Incarcerated America"). In the absence of firm findings that connect prison policies and practices with low rates of recidivism, the US public has no sense of whether our correctional facilities actually succeed in transforming criminal behavior.

Oregon, however, has taken the initiative to report its recidivism rates as well as to improve those rates. Oregon has a 30% recidivism rate, compared with other states, most of which have 50% or higher rates (Baer). The state has made it a point to implement social and judicial policies aimed toward incentivizing good recidivism rates for Oregon prisons. For instance, in 2003, the Oregon legislature passed a bill that mandated state prisons use rehabilitation programs that were proven effective. As a result, "between 2004 and 2007, Oregon's recidivism rate dropped 22.8 percent" (Baer). Oregon made decisions about who should and should not be spending time behind bars in order to both lower their recidivism rate and save taxpayer money. Adam Gelb, leader of the Pew Study on State Recidivism Rates, suggests alternatives:

> In some cases, that means diverting offenders to community corrections programs instead of state prisons. In others, it means training offenders in decision-making

MLA

The writer examines the reasons for the lack of firm findings

Writer indents a block quotation one-inch on the left margin only

and thinking skills, instead of just sending them through drug treatment programs that may or may not stick. (qtd. in Baer)

Abbreviation *qtd. in* indicates quotation of Gelb appears in a source written by someone else

While creating a compromise between the needs of society and those of the prisoner seems almost impossible, some correctional facilities succeed at not only sufficiently caring for their inmates but achieving unbelievable rehabilitation rates like the ones found in Oregon. Rehabilitation *is* possible and should be actively pursued.

So how do we fix the US prison system? The problem with changing the current corrections system is that radical reforms may be necessary. Therefore, a more practical approach might help to gradually improve the current corrections system, by gradually transitioning US prison policies and practices away from those that make the United States the world leader in incarcerations.

The writer offers some steps toward prison reform

The most obvious and perhaps least controversial reform would be to reduce the length of sentencing or eliminate it altogether for the majority of nonviolent crimes. Instead, nonviolent offenders might be better served by conducting mandated community service, participating in support groups tailored to their specific conviction (anger-management courses, drug-education courses), and enrolling in educational programs that teach critical thinking and long-term planning skills. Diverted from the prison system,

The writer offers solutions in emphatic order, from least to most controversial and effective

minor offenders will be able to maintain their social support network and any informal control that such a network might provide. In addition, when nonviolent yet convicted criminals become involved in community projects, they have the opportunity to become more integrated into their community and to feel more invested in the welfare of that community.

Another reform, more controversial than the previous one, would include bipartisan congressional reconsideration. Might conservatives want to cut the massive cost of the "war or drugs"? Might liberals want to keep people out of prison and in drug-rehabilitation programs? Both sides of the aisle could agree that the current situation is not productive, let alone effective. Therefore, they might also agree that our nation now deserves a public exchange on the possibilities for the decriminalization of nonviolent offenses. The decriminalization of nonviolent offenses would reduce the strain on our prisons and—more important—the strain on (mostly poor) communities, families, and individuals. When nonviolent charges are decriminalized, nonviolent criminals can be diverted to community-service projects. For instance, among the nonviolent crimes might be "low-quantity possession," which might merit an addiction-education program rather than years of imprisonment.

Perhaps Americans will come to support even more radical reforms of our prison systems, especially if they see that practical

approaches can make a difference. This discussion of crimes, prisons, and recidivism is one that the American public and their elected representatives desperately need to have, given that our current prison policies and practices are not working to reduce recidivism on a national scale. The US legal system has locked prisoners away to the point that they are living in overcrowded conditions with little hope of rehabilitation.

Therefore, we must refocus the current prison system from punitive to correctional. I am not arguing that criminal offenders, let alone violent criminals, should be coddled. However, they should be treated with respect and compassion, particularly when they are nonviolent offenders. As we work to reform our current prisons, we should model them after effective international rehabilitation correctional facilities, like those found in Oregon and also in Pennsylvania. The Pennsylvania Department of Corrections has made good progress toward reform, having established a recidivism-risk-reduction-incentive program for state prisons in 2010. According to the RRRI [Recidivism Risk Reduction Incentive], "the Commonwealth has saved approximately $37.1 million (an estimated $10,693 per RRRI inmate) due to reduced prison stays," reads the 2012 RRRI report ("RRRI"). These numbers serve as proof that a correctional system can be beneficial to the inmates as well as to the taxpayers who invest in the prison system.

Conclusion sums up argument and restates thesis

Congress has a duty to American citizens, both incarcerated and free, to make sure the prison system is the best it can be. By keeping nonviolent criminals out of the general prison population, the US prison system could move from a position of struggling to punish inmates housed at overcapacity to one of focusing on true correctional and rehabilitation practices and programs. After all, a more effective prison system means a more effective society overall, with more citizens contributing to their local and national communities.

Works Cited

Center the heading

American FactFinder. 10 Apr. 2012. Web. 7 Jan. 2013.

Baer, April. "Pew Study Finds Low Recidivism Rate in Oregon Prisons." *Oregon Public Broadcasting*. OPB News, 13 Apr. 2011. Web. 30 Dec. 2012.

"Correctional Populations in the United States, 2009." *Bureau of Justice Statistics (BJS)—Total Correctional Population*. Bureau of Justice Statistics, n.d. Web. 30 Dec. 2012.

"Corrective." Def. 1a. *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. March 2012. Web. 7 Jan. 2013.

"Incarcerated America, April 2003." *Human Rights Watch*. Apr. 2003. Web. 7 Jan. 2013.

Langan, Patrick A., and David J. Levin. "Recidivism of Prisoners Released in 1994." Bureau of Justice Statistics, 2 June 2002. PDF file.

"More Blacks, Latinos in Jail Than College Dorms." *MSNBC*. 27 Sept. 2007. Web. 5 Jan. 2013.

"Prison Inmates at Midyear 2009—Statistical Tables." *Bureau of Justice Statistics (BJS)*. Bureau of Justice Statistics, 23 June 2010. Web. 5 Jan. 2013.

"Prisoner Statistics." *Correctional Population in the United States, 2011*. Bureau of Justice Statistics, 2011. Web. 7 Jan. 2013.

Alphabetize the entries according to the authors' last names or the name of the article itself

Indent second and subsequent lines of each entry one-half inch

The writer includes the medium of publication for every entry

"Recidivism." *OED Online*. Oxford University Press. March 2012. Web. 5 Jan. 2013.

Rosefielde, Steven. *The Russian Economy: From Lenin to Putin*. Malden, MA: Blackwell, 2007. Print.

"RRRI 2012 Report." *Research & Statistics*. Pennsylvania Department of Corrections, 2012. Web. 30 Dec. 2012.

14 APA Documentation

The American Psychological Association (APA) publishes a style guide entitled *Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association* (currently, the sixth edition). Its documentation system (called an *author-date system*) is used in psychology and many other disciplines, including education, economics, and sociology.

14a APA-style in-text citations

APA-style in-text citations usually include just the last name(s) of the author(s) of the work and the year of publication. If you do not know the author's name, use a shortened version of the source's title instead.

Be sure to specify the page number(s) for any quotations you use in your paper. The abbreviation *p.* (for "page") or *pp.* (for "pages") should precede the number(s). If visible paragraph numbers are provided instead of page numbers, use the abbreviation *para.* For documents that have neither page nor paragraph numbers, include the name of the section or an abbreviated heading. Then determine the number of the paragraph and include that number.

The following examples are representative of the types of in-text citations you can expect to use.

Directory to APA-Style Parenthetical Citations

1. Work by one author 160
2. Work by two authors 160
3. Work by more than two authors 161
4. Anonymous work 161
5. Two or more works by different authors in the same parenthetical citation 161
6. Two or more works by the same author in the same parenthetical citation 162
7. Personal communication 162
8. Indirect source 162

1. Work by one author

Yang (2006) admits that speech, when examined closely, is a "remarkably messy means of communication" (p. 13).

OR

When examined closely, speech is "a remarkably messy means of communication" (Yang, 2006, p. 13).

Use commas to separate the author's name from the date and the date from the page number. Include page numbers only when quoting from the source.

2. Work by two authors

According to Goodie and Fortune (2013), "impaired control . . . is a gambler's belief that he or she cannot control his or her own problematic gambling behaviors" (p. 2).

OR

Many compulsive gamblers believe they have no control over their behaviors (Goodie & Fortune, 2013).

When the authors' names are in parentheses, use an ampersand (&) to separate them.

3. Work by more than two authors

Interference between conversation and driving occurs because both are "complex, multimodal, attention-demanding tasks" (Bergen, Medeiros-Ward, Wheeler, Drews, & Strayer, 2013, Introduction section, para. 2).

For works with three to five authors, cite all the authors the first time the work is referred to, but in subsequent references give only the last name of the first author followed by *et al.* (meaning "and others").

The research of Bergen et al. (2013) confirms previous studies "demonstrating that language use, even without a handheld device, interferes with successful control of a vehicle" (Discussion section, para. 2).

For works with six or more authors, provide only the last name of the first author followed by *et al.* in both the first and subsequent citations.

4. Anonymous work

Use a shortened version of the title to identify an anonymous work.

Chronic insomnia often requires medical intervention ("Sleep," 2009).

This citation refers to an article identified in the bibliography as "Sleep disorders: Standard methods of treatment."

If the word *Anonymous* is used in the source itself to designate the author, it appears in place of an author's name.

The documents could damage the governor's reputation (Anonymous, 2009).

5. Two or more works by different authors in the same parenthetical citation

Smokers frequently underestimate the long-term effects of smoking (O'Conner, 2005; Polson & Truss, 2007).

Arrange the citations in alphabetical order, using a semicolon to separate them.

6. Two or more works by the same author in the same parenthetical citation

The amygdala is active when a person experiences fear or anger (Carey, 2001, 2002).

Jameson (2007a, 2007b) has proposed an anxiety index for use by counselors.

Order the publication dates of works by the same author from earliest to most recent; however, if the works have the same publication date, distinguish the dates with lowercase letters (a, b, c, and so on) assigned according to the order in which the entries for the works are listed in your bibliography.

7. Personal communication

State educational outcomes are often interpreted differently by teachers in the same school (J. K. Jurgensen, personal communication, May 4, 2009).

Letters, memos, e-mail messages, interviews, and telephone conversations are cited in the text only, not in the reference list.

8. Indirect source

Korovessis (2002) points out Toqueville's description of the "strange melancholy" (p. 63) exhibited by citizens living amid abundance.

Toqueville (as cited in Korovessis, 2002) observed the "strange melancholy" (p. 63) exhibited by citizens living amid abundance.

In the reference list, include a bibliographic entry for the source read, not for the original source. Use an indirect source only when you are unable to obtain the original.

14b APA-style reference list

All of the works you cite should be listed at the end of your paper, beginning on a separate page with the heading "References." The following tips will help you prepare your list.

TIPS FOR PREPARING A REFERENCE LIST

- Center the heading "References" one inch from the top of the page.
- Include entries for only those sources you explicitly cite in your paper but not for personal communications or original works cited in indirect sources.
- Arrange the list of works alphabetically by the author's last name or by the last name of the first author. For a work without an author, alphabetize the entry according to the first important word in the title.
- If you use more than one work by the same author(s), arrange the entries according to the date of publication, placing the entry with the earliest date first. (See item 6.) If two or more works by the same author(s) have the same publication date, the entries are arranged so that the titles of the works are in alphabetical order, according to the first important word in each title; lowercase letters are then added to the date (2013a, 2013b) to distinguish the works. (See item 7.)
- When an author's name appears both in a single-author entry and as the first name in a multiple-author entry, place the single-author entry first.
- Type the first line of each entry flush with the left margin and indent subsequent lines one-half inch or five spaces (a hanging indent).
- Double-space between lines of each entry and between entries.

Directory to APA Entries for the Reference List

AUTHORS IN REFERENCE ENTRIES

1. One author 165
2. Two to seven authors 166
3. Eight or more authors 166
4. No author listed 166

5. Corporate author 166
6. Two or more works by the same author 166
7. Two or more works by the same author published in the same year 167

ARTICLES (PRINT)

8. Article in a journal paginated by volume 167
9. Article in a journal paginated by issue 167
10. Abstract of a journal article 167
CITATION MAP 14.1: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, APA STYLE 168
11. Article in a monthly, biweekly, or weekly magazine 169
12. Article in a newspaper 169
13. Letter to the editor 169
14. Editorial 169
15. Book review 169

BOOKS (PRINT)

16. Book with author(s) listed 169
CITATION MAP 14.2: BOOK, APA STYLE 170
17. Book with editor(s) 171
18. Edition after the first 171
19. Translation 171
20. Multivolume work 171
21. Government report 171
22. Chapter or article from an edited book 172
23. Selection from a reference work 172
24. Republished book 172
25. Book with a title within its title 172

ONLINE SOURCES

26. Article from a database 173
27. Article from an online journal 173
28. Article from an online magazine 173
29. Article from an online newspaper 173
30. Online book 173
CITATION MAP 14.3: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, APA STYLE 174

31. Online book chapter 175
32. Blog post 175
33. Lecture notes posted online 175
34. Short work from a website 175
CITATION MAP 14.4: SECTION IN A WEB DOCUMENT, APA STYLE 176
35. E-mail messages and other personal communication 177
36. Online encyclopedia 177
37. Wiki entry 177
38. Online brochure or newsletter 177
39. Report online 177
40. Online government document 178
41. Online audio and video 178

OTHER SOURCES

42. Film, video, or DVD 178
43. Television series episode 179
44. Advertisement 179
45. Dissertation from a database 179
46. Published interview 179
47. Map or chart 179
48. Work of art 179
49. Photograph 180
50. Lecture, speech, or address 180

AUTHORS IN REFERENCE ENTRIES

Citations begin with the authors' last names, followed by initials for first and middle names. Consult this section when deciding how to list different numbers of authors.

1. One author

Read, A. (2013, May). Rural sustainability: Factors and resources for communities to consider. *Public Management 95*(4), 14–17. Retrieved from http://icma.org/en/press/pm_magazine/about_pm

2. Two to seven authors

Zenz, G., Tahmasebi, N., & Risse, T. (2013). Towards mobile language evolution exploitation. *Multimedia Tools and Applications 66*(1), 147–159. doi:10.1007/s11042-011-0973-0

Invert the last names and initials of all authors. Use a comma after each last name and after each set of initials except the last. Use an ampersand (in addition to the comma) before the last author's name.

3. Eight or more authors

Kawakami, K., Phills, C. E., Greenwald, A. G., Simard, D., Pontiero, J., Brnjas, A., . . . Dovidio, J. F. (2012). In perfect harmony: Synchronizing the self to activated social categories. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, *102*(3), 562–575.

List the first six names followed by a comma and three ellipsis points and then the last author's name.

4. No author listed

Atlas of the world (19th ed.). (2012). New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Start the entry with the title.

5. Corporate author

American Psychiatric Association. (1995). *American Psychiatric Association capitation handbook*. Washington, DC: Author.

When the author and the publisher are the same, use the word *Author* as the publisher at the end of the entry.

6. Two or more works by the same author.

The book published first is listed first.

Eagleman, D. (2009). *Sum: Tales from the afterlives*. Edinburgh, Scotland: Canongate Books.

Eagleman, D. (2011). *Incognito: The secret lives of the brain*. New York, NY: Pantheon Books.

7. Two or more works by the same author published in the same year

If works appear in the same year, list them alphabetically by title and add letters (*a*, *b*, and so on) to the year.

Wheelen, C. (2013a). *The centrist manifesto.* New York, NY: Norton.

Wheelen, C. (2013b). *Naked statistics: Stripping the dread from the data.* New York, NY: Norton.

ARTICLES (PRINT)

8. Article in a journal paginated by volume

North, M. S., & Fiske, S. T. (2013). Act your (old) age: Prescriptive, ageist biases over succession, consumption, and identity. *Personality and Social Psychology Bulletin, 39*, 720–734. doi:10.1177/0146167213480043

Capitalize only the first word of the title and subtitle (if there is one) and any proper nouns. Italicize the name of the journal; capitalize all major words, as well as any other words consisting of four or more letters. Some journals include a DOI (digital object identifier) on the first page of an article, in both print and electronic versions. Include the DOI at the end of the entry.

9. Article in a journal paginated by issue

Hall-Lew, L., & Stephens, N. (2013). Country talk. *Journal of English Linguistics, 40*(3), 256–280.

Provide the issue number (placed in parentheses) directly after the volume number (italicized).

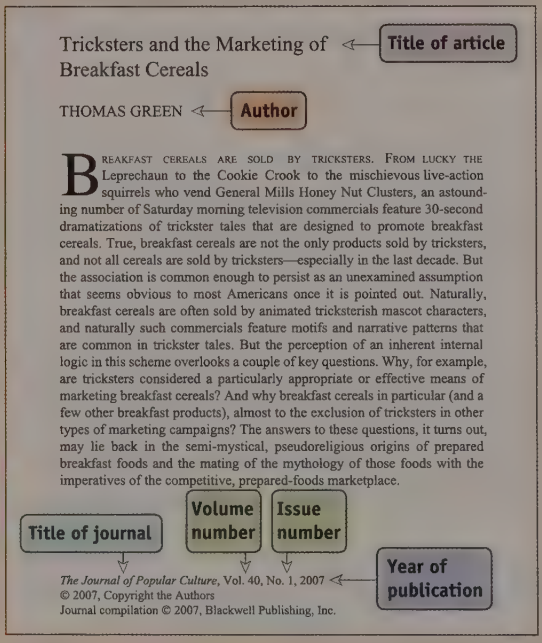
10. Abstract of a journal article

Huang, H. D., & Hung, S. A. (2013). Comparing the effects of test anxiety on independent and integrated speaking test performance [Abstract]. *TESOL Quarterly, 47*(2), 244–269.

CITATION MAP 14.1: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, APA STYLE

To cite an article from a journal, include the following elements. If an issue number is provided, include that as well.

FIRST PAGE OF ARTICLE



Tricksters and the Marketing of Breakfast Cereals

Title of article

THOMAS GREEN

Author

BREAKFAST CEREALS ARE SOLD BY TRICKSTERS. FROM LUCKY THE Leprechaun to the Cookie Crook to the mischievous live-action squirrels who vend General Mills Honey Nut Clusters, an astounding number of Saturday morning television commercials feature 30-second dramatizations of trickster tales that are designed to promote breakfast cereals. True, breakfast cereals are not the only products sold by tricksters, and not all cereals are sold by tricksters—especially in the last decade. But the association is common enough to persist as an unexamined assumption that seems obvious to most Americans once it is pointed out. Naturally, breakfast cereals are often sold by animated tricksterish mascot characters, and naturally such commercials feature motifs and narrative patterns that are common in trickster tales. But the perception of an inherent internal logic in this scheme overlooks a couple of key questions. Why, for example, are tricksters considered a particularly appropriate or effective means of marketing breakfast cereals? And why breakfast cereals in particular (and a few other breakfast products), almost to the exclusion of tricksters in other types of marketing campaigns? The answers to these questions, it turns out, may lie back in the semi-mystical, pseudoreligious origins of prepared breakfast foods and the mating of the mythology of those foods with the imperatives of the competitive, prepared-foods marketplace.

Title of journal | Volume number | Issue number

The Journal of Popular Culture, Vol. 40, No. 1, 2007

Year of publication

© 2007, Copyright the Authors
Journal compilation © 2007, Blackwell Publishing, Inc.

REFERENCES LIST ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE FROM A JOURNAL

Author | Year of publication | Title of article

Green, T. (2007). Tricksters and the marketing of breakfast cereals. *The Journal of Popular Culture, 40*(1), 49–68.

Title of journal | Volume number | Issue number | Page numbers

11. Article in a monthly, biweekly, or weekly magazine

Finkel, M. (2013, June). First Australians. *National Geographic, 223*(6), 66–83.

For monthly publications, provide both the year and the month. For magazines published weekly or biweekly, add the day of the issue: (2013, May 8).

12. Article in a newspaper

Simon, S. (2007, October 14). Winning hearts, minds, homes. *Los Angeles Times*, p. A1.

Include both the section letter and the page number.

13. Letter to the editor

Budington, N. (2010, July 20). Social class and college admissions [Letter to the editor]. *The New York Times*, p. A26.

14. Editorial

Editorial: Print is dead! Or is it? [Editorial]. (2012). *New Oxford Review, 79*(10), 4–7.

15. Book review

Orford, J. (2007). Drug addiction and families [Review of the book *Drug addiction and families,* by M. Barnhard]. *Addiction, 102,* 1841–1842.

If the review does not have its own title, use the title of the book, but do not italicize it.

BOOKS (PRINT)

When preparing an entry for the reference list, be sure to copy the bibliographic information directly from the title page of the book (see citation map 14.2).

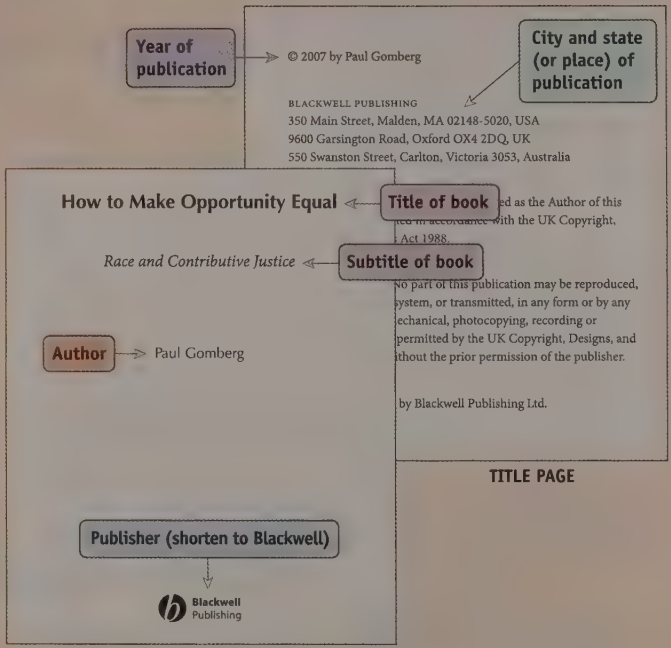
16. Book with author(s) listed

Pollan, M. (2013). *Cooked: A history of transformation.* New York, NY: Penguin.

Edwards, M., & Titman, P. (2010). *Promoting psychological well-being in children with acute and chronic illness.* London, England: Jessica Kingsley.

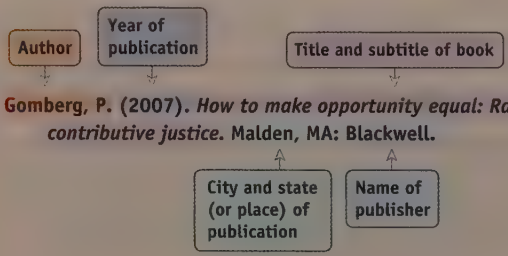
CITATION MAP 14.2: BOOK, APA STYLE

Include the following elements when citing a book.



Source: Used by permission of Wiley-Blackwell.

REFERENCES LIST ENTRY FOR A BOOK


Author
Year of publication
Title and subtitle of book
Gomberg, P. (2007). How to make opportunity equal: Race and contributive justice. Malden, MA: Blackwell.
City and state (or place) of publication
Name of publisher

Capitalize only the first word and any proper nouns in the title and subtitle. Italicize both title and subtitle. Include the city of publication and the United States Postal Service two-letter state abbreviation. For books published outside the United States, include the country.

17. Book with editor(s)

Wolfe, D. A., & Mash, E. J. (Eds.). (2005). *Behavioral and emotional disorders in adolescents: Nature, assessment, and treatment.* New York, NY: Guilford Press.

Provide only enough of the publisher's name so that it can be identified clearly. Omit *Publishers, Inc.*, and *Co.*, but retain *Books* and *Press*.

18. Edition after the first

Lycan, W., & Prinz, J. (Eds.). (2008). *Mind and cognition* (3rd ed.). Malden, MA: Blackwell.

19. Translation

Rank, O. (2002). *Psychology and the soul: A study of the origin, conceptual evolution, and nature of the soul* (G. C. Richter & E. J. Lieberman, Trans.). Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press. (Original work published 1930)

20. Multivolume work

Hawthorne, N. (1962–1997). *The centenary edition of the works of Nathaniel Hawthorne* (Vols. 1–23). Columbus: Ohio University Press.

If the multivolume work was published over a period of more than one year, use the range of years for the publication date. If the publisher is a university press whose name mentions a state, do not include the state abbreviation.

21. Government report

Executive Office of the President. (2003). *Economic report of the President, 2003* (GPO Publication No. 040-000-0760-1). Washington, DC: Government Printing Office.

22. Chapter or article from an edited book

Empson, R. (2007). Enlivened memories: Recalling absence and loss in Mongolia. In J. Carsten (Ed.), *Ghosts of memory: Essays on remembrance and relatedness* (pp. 58–82). Malden, MA: Blackwell.

23. Selection from a reference work

Wickens, D. (2001). Classical conditioning. In *The Corsini encyclopedia of psychology and behavioral science* (Vol. 1, pp. 293–298). New York, NY: Wiley.

24. Republished book

Petersen, J. (2009). *Our street* (B. Rensen, Trans.). London, England: Faber. (Original work published 1938)

25. Book with a title within its title

Wheen, F. (2007). *Marx's* Das Kapital: *A biography*. New York, NY: Atlantic Monthly Press.

A title within a book title is not italicized.

ONLINE SOURCES

The APA guidelines for online sources are similar to those for print sources. Many scholarly journals use a Digital Object Identifier (DOI) to simplify searching for an article. The DOI is listed on the first page of the article, which usually contains the abstract. Citation map 14.3 shows the location of a DOI and other pertinent bibliographic information on the first page of an online journal. If available, insert the DOI (without a period following it) at the end of the entry.

To cite an article without a DOI, use the URL for the periodical's home page. If the URL has to continue on a new line, break it before a punctuation mark or other special character. Do not add a period after the URL.

26. Article from a database

Hill, E. J., Erickson, J. J., Holmes, E. K., & Ferris, M. (2010). Workplace flexibility, work hours, and work-life conflict: Finding an extra day or two. *Journal of Family Psychology, 24*(3), 349–358. doi:10.1037/a0019282

Acocella, J. (2008, May 26). A few too many. *The New Yorker, 84*(15), 32–37. Retrieved from http://www.newyorker.com

27. Article from an online journal

Buhrmester, M. D., Blanton, H., & Swann, W. B., Jr. (2011). Implicit self-esteem: Nature, measurement, and a new way forward. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 100*(2), 365–385. doi:10.1037/a0021341

Tuladhar-Douglas, W. (2007). Leaf blowers and antibiotics: A Buddhist stance for science and technology. *Journal of Buddhist Ethics, 14*, 200–238. Retrieved from http://www.buddhistethics.org

28. Article from an online magazine

Saletan, W. (2008, August 27). Unfinished race: Race, genes, and the future of medicine. *Slate*. Retrieved from http://www.slate.com

29. Article from an online newspaper

Shellenbarger, S. (2010, July 21). Kids quit the team for more family time. *The Wall Street Journal*. Retrieved from http://online.wsj.com/home-page

30. Online book

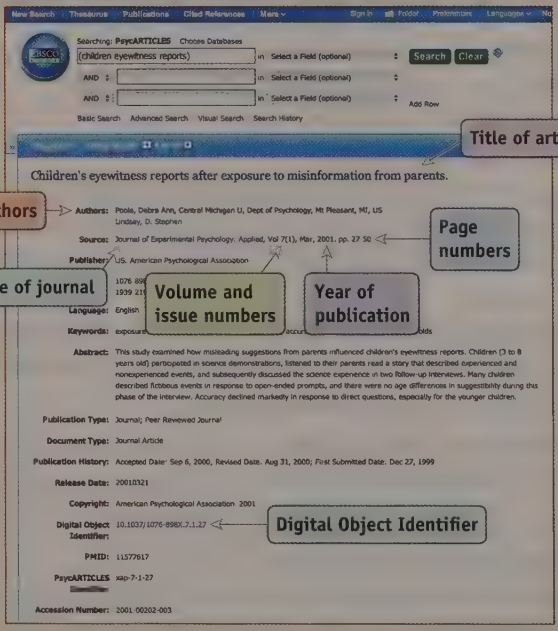
Pine, R. C. (2004). *Science and the human prospect*. Retrieved from http://home.honolulu.hawaii.edu/~pine/book1-2.html

If access to the book is not free, use "Available from" instead of "Retrieved from."

CITATION MAP 14.3: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, APA STYLE

Include the following elements when citing an article in a database. If there is no Digital Object Identifier (DOI), use the URL for the journal's home page instead of the URL of the article.

DATABASE RECORD FOR AN ARTICLE


Searching: PsycARTICLES Choose Databases
(children eyewitness reports)
Search
Clear
Basic Search
Advanced Search
Visual Search
Search History
Title of article
Children's eyewitness reports after exposure to misinformation from parents.
Authors
Authors: Poole, Debra Ann, Central Michigan U, Dept of Psychology, Mt Pleasant, MI, US
Lindsay, D. Stephen
Source: Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied, Vol 7(1), Mar, 2001. pp. 27-50
Page numbers
Publisher: US: American Psychological Association
Title of journal
Volume and issue numbers
Year of publication
Language: English
Keywords:
Abstract: This study examined how misleading suggestions from parents influenced children's eyewitness reports. Children (3 to 8 years old) participated in science demonstrations, listened to their parents read a story that described experienced and nonexperienced events, and subsequently discussed the science experience in two follow-up interviews. Many children described fictitious events in response to open-ended prompts, and there were no age differences in suggestibility during this phase of the interview. Accuracy declined markedly in response to direct questions, especially for the younger children.
Publication Type: Journal; Peer Reviewed Journal
Document Type: Journal Article
Publication History: Accepted Date: Sep 6, 2000; Revised Date: Aug 31, 2000; First Submitted Date: Dec 27, 1999
Release Date: 20010321
Copyright: American Psychological Association 2001
Digital Object Identifier: 10.1037/1076-898X.7.1.27
Digital Object Identifier
PMID: 11577617
PsycARTICLES: xap-7-1-27
Accession Number: 2001-00202-003

REFERENCES LIST ENTRY FOR AN ARTICLE IN A DATABASE

Authors — Year of publication — Title of article

Poole, D. A., & Lindsay, D. S. (2001). Children's eyewitness reports after exposure to misinformation from parents. ***Journal of Experimental Psychology: Applied, 7*****(1), 27–50. doi:10.1037//1076-898X.7.1.27**

Title of journal — Volume and issue numbers — Page numbers — Digital Object Identifier

31. Online book chapter

Brady, V. (2006). A flaw in the nation-building process: Negotiating the sacred in our multicultural society. In E. B. Coleman & K. White (Eds.), *Negotiating the sacred: Blasphemy and sacrilege in a multicultural society* (pp. 43–49). Retrieved from http://epress.anu.edu.au/nts_citation.html

32. Blog post

Chatham, C. (2008, August 29). Action without intention: Parietal damage alters attention awareness [Web log post]. Retrieved from http://scienceblogs.com/developingintelligence/2008/08/action_without_intention_parie.php

If you are quoting a comment instead of the original post, place in square brackets *Web log comment*.

33. Lecture notes posted online

Gabaix , X. (2004). *Lecture 14: Happiness* [Lecture notes]. Retrieved from http://ocw.mit.edu/courses/economics/14-13-economics-and-psychology-spring-2004/lecture-notes/

34. Short work from a website

Ennis, R. H. (2002, July 20). *An outline of goals for a critical thinking curriculum and its assessment*. Retrieved from http://faculty.ed.uiuc.edu/rhennis/outlinegoalsctcurassess3.html

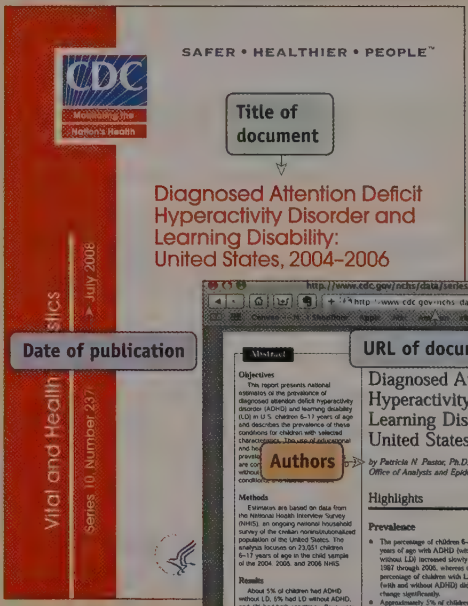
When the document is from a large website, such as one sponsored by a university or governmental body, provide the name of the host organization before the URL. Do not include a date with the retrieval information unless the work is likely to change or be updated, as in a wiki for example.

Darling, C. (2002). *Guide to grammar and writing*. Retrieved September 12, 2003, from Capital Community College website: http://cctc2.commnet.edu/grammar/modifiers.htm

CITATION MAP 14.4: SECTION IN A WEB DOCUMENT, APA STYLE

Include the following elements when citing a section in a document you find on the web.

TITLE PAGE OF A WORK FROM A WEBSITE


SAFER • HEALTHIER • PEOPLE™
Title of document
Diagnosed Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder and Learning Disability: United States, 2004–2006
Date of publication
Vital and Health Statistics
Series 10, Number 237
July 2006
SECTION IN A WORK FROM A WEBSITE
URL of document
Abstract
Diagnosed Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder and Learning Disability: United States, 2004–2006
Authors
by Patricia N. Pastor, Ph.D., and Cynthia A. Reuben, M.A., Office of Analysis and Epidemiology
Objectives
Methods
Results
Highlights
Prevalence
Use of Health Care and Educational Services

REFERENCES LIST ENTRY FOR A DOCUMENT FROM THE WEB

Authors | Date of publication (or recent update) | Name of section | Title of document

Pastor, P. N. and Reuben, C. A. (2008, July). Introduction. In *Diagnosed Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder and Learning Disability: United States, 2004–2006*. Retrieved from http://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/series/sr_10/sr10_237.pdf

URL of document

American School Counselor Association. (2006). *Position statement: Equity for all students*. Retrieved from http://asca2.timberlakepublishing.com/content.asp?contentid=503

When no author is listed, use the name of the organization hosting the website as the author of the document.

35. E-mail messages and other personal communication

Personal communications such as e-mail messages, letters, interviews, and telephone conversations are not included in the reference list but should be cited in the text as follows: (S. L. Johnson, personal communication, September 3, 2013).

36. Online encyclopedia

Dowe, P. (2007). Causal processes. In E. N. Zalta (Ed.), *The Stanford encyclopedia of philosophy* (Fall 2008 ed.). Retrieved from http://plato.stanford.edu/archives/sum2007/entries/cognitive-science/

37. Wiki entry

Déjà vu. (n.d.). In *Wikipedia*. Retrieved May 20, 2013, from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deja_vu

If no date is provided, use the abbreviation *n.d.*

38. Article in a newsletter

Brady, B. Essential strategies for teaching large classes. (2013, August). *TESOL Connections*. Retrieved from http://www.tesol.org/read-and-publish/newsletters-other-publications/tesol-connections

39. Report online

Yones, M. (n.d.). *Psychology of happiness and unhappiness.* Retrieved from International Institute of Management website: http://www.iim-edu.org/executivejournal/index.htm

If the report has a number, mention the number in parentheses after the title: *Title* (Report No. XX).

40. Online government document

Pashler, H., Bain, P., Bottge, B., Graesser, A., Koedinger, K., McDaniel, M., & Metcalfe, J. (2007). *Organizing instruction and study to improve student learning* (NCER 2007–2004). Washington, DC: National Center for Education Research, Institute of Education Sciences, U.S. Department of Education. Retrieved from Institute of Education Sciences website: http://ncer.ed.gov

If no authors had been listed, this entry would have been written as follows:

National Center for Education Research, Institute of Education Sciences. (2007). *Organizing instruction and study to improve student learning* (NCER 2007–2004). Retrieved from http://ncer.ed.gov

41. Online audio and video

Davies, D. (Host). (2010, July 13). A psychiatrist's prescription for his profession [Audio file]. In T. Gross & D. Miller (Executive producers), *Fresh air.* Retrieved from http://www.npr.org/templates/story/story.php?storyId=13

For podcasts, place the main contributor at the beginning of the entry; place in parentheses the contributor's role (producer, director, writer, host, presenter). Place between square brackets the medium (audio file, video file, podcast, webcast).

Gopnik, A. (Presenter). (2009, July 28). Moments of absolute absorption [Video file]. In D. McGee & P. W. Kunhardt (Executive producers), *This emotional life.* Retrieved from http://www.pbs.org/thisemotionallife/perspective/meaning-happiness

OTHER SOURCES

42. Film, video, or DVD

Seidler, D. (Writer), & Hooper, T. (Director). (2011). *The king's speech* [Motion picture]. England: Momentum Pictures.

43. Television series episode

Weiner, M. (Writer), & Hornbacher, S. (Director). (2013). The doorway [Television series episode]. In M. Weiner (Executive producer), *Mad men*. New York, NY: AMC.

If referring to the series as a whole, write *Television series* in the square brackets.

44. Advertisement

RosettaStone [Advertisement]. (2010, July). *National Geographic, 218*(1), 27.

45. Dissertation from a database

Aakre, J. M. (2010). Attributional style in schizophrenia: Associations with suspiciousness and depressed mood (Doctoral dissertation). Retrieved from http://www.ohiolink.edu

46. Published interview

Bell, G. (2012). Why people really love technology: An interview with Genevieve Bell [Interview by A. C. Madrigal]. Retrieved from http://www.theatlantic.com/

An interview you conducted personally is considered a personal communication. See item 35.

47. Map or chart

Central Intelligence Agency (Cartographer). (2011). China physiography [Map]. Retrieved from https://www.cia.gov/library/publications/cia-maps-publications/

48. Work of art

Bates, D. (1995). *Male head IV* [Sculpture]. Fort Worth, TX: Modern Art Museum of Fort Worth.

Condo, G. (2009). *The fallen butler* [Painting]. New York, NY: Museum of Modern Art.

49. Photograph

[Photograph of Louise Bieriot]. (1909). Bain Collection. Library of Congress, Washington, DC.

If you are using a photograph you have taken yourself, you do not need to include an entry on your references page.

50. Lecture, speech, or address

The White House, Office of the Press Secretary. (2013, April 23). *Remarks by the president at teacher of the year event.* Retrieved from http://www.whitehouse.gov/the-press-office/2013/04/23/remarks-president-teacher-year-event

14c Sample APA-style paper

The APA recognizes that a paper may have to be modified so that it adheres to an instructor's requirements. The following boxes offer tips for preparing a title page, an abstract page, and the body of a typical student paper. For tips on preparing a reference list, see **14b**.

TIPS FOR PREPARING THE TITLE PAGE OF AN APA-STYLE PAPER

- The title page includes both the full title of the paper and a shortened version of it. The shortened version, along with a page number, is placed in the header. On the left side of the header, include the words "Running head:" (note the colon) and a version of your title that consists of no more than fifty characters. Use all uppercase letters for this title. On the right side of the header, insert the page number. The title page is page 1 of your paper.
- Place the full title in the upper half of the page, with your name below it. You may include your affiliation or a course name or number if your instructor requests one. Double-space these lines.

TIPS FOR PREPARING THE ABSTRACT AND THE BODY OF AN APA-STYLE PAPER

- The header for the remaining parts of the paper (including the abstract page, which is page 2) is similar to the header on the title page. It should have the shortened title on the left and the page number on the right. The body of the paper begins on page 3.
- Center the word "Abstract" one inch from the top of the page.
- Unless your instructor provides a word limit, be sure that your abstract is no more than 250 words. For advice on summarizing, see **11f**.
- Double-space throughout the body of the abstract. Do not indent the first line of the abstract.
- Provide the title again on page 3. Center it one inch from the top of the page.
- Use one-inch margins on both the left and right sides of all pages.
- Double-space throughout the body of the paper, indenting each paragraph one-half inch or five to seven spaces.

Running head: SOCIAL STATUS OF AN ART 1

The running head should consist of no more than 50 characters

Use one-inch margins on both sides of the page

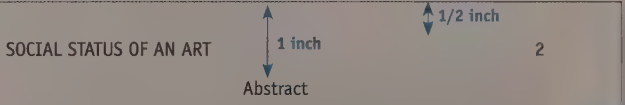
The Social Status of an Art:

Historical and Current Trends in Tattooing

Rachel L. Pinter and Sarah M. Cronin

Central Washington University

If required by the instructor, the course name and number replace the institutional affiliation



Center the heading

An abstract generally contains between 150 and 250 words

Current research demonstrates that the social practice of tattooing has changed greatly over the years. Not only have the images chosen for tattoos and the demographic of people getting tattoos changed, but the ideology behind tattooing itself has evolved. This paper first briefly describes the cross-cultural history of the practice. It then examines current social trends in the United States and related ideological issues.

Center the title

The Social Status of an Art: Historical and Current Trends in Tattooing

Use one-inch margins on both sides of the page

Tattoos, defined as marks made by inserting pigment into the skin, have existed throughout history in countless cultures. Currently, tattoos are considered popular art forms. They can be seen on men and women from all walks of life in the United States, ranging from a trainer at the local gym to a character on a television show or even a sociology professor. Due to an increase in the popularity of tattooing, studies of tattooing behavior have proliferated as researchers attempt to identify trends. This paper seeks to explore both the history of tattooing and its current practice in the United States.

The writers' thesis statement forecasts the content of the essay

Tattooing has a long history in most of the world, though its origin is currently unknown. Krcmarik (2003) provides a helpful geographical overview. In Asia, tattooing has existed for thousands of years in Chinese, Japanese, Middle Eastern, and Indian cultures. Evidence of its existence can be seen on artifacts such as 7,000-year-old engravings. In Europe, tattooing flourished during the 19th century, most notably in England. Many of the sailors traveling with Captain James Cook returned with tales of exotic tattooing practices and sometimes with tattoos themselves. The Samoans in the South Pacific are famous for their centuries-old tattooing practice, known as *tatau*—the word from which *tattoo* is said to have originated. The Maori of New Zealand are also well known for their

The writers provide historical and cultural information about tattooing

hand-carved facial tattoos, known as *Moko* (see Figure 1).

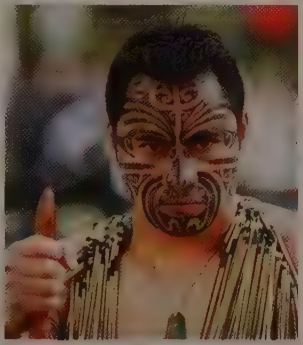


Figure 1. A Maori man with a facial tattoo. *Note.* Photo © Tim Graham/ Getty Images.

In Africa, tattoos can be found on Egyptian and Nubian mummies, which date back to approximately 2000 BCE. Tattooing is noted in the written accounts of Spanish explorers' encounters with tattooed Mayans in Central America. Finally, in North America, tattooing became popular during the 1900s and has experienced advances and retreats in social acceptance since then. Starting in the 1960s, its popularity rose dramatically.

Clearly, the history of tattooing spans generations and cultures. The practice has gained and lost popularity, often as a result of rather extreme changes in the ideologies supporting or discouraging it. This roller-coaster pattern of acceptance is well demonstrated in the United States. Since the 19th century, the wearing of tattoos has allowed for subculture identification by such persons as sailors, bikers, circus "freak" performers, and prison inmates (DeMello, 1995). As a collective group behavior indicating

The writers discuss changing perspectives on the appropriateness of tattoos

deviant subculture membership, tattooing flourished during this time but remained plagued by negative stereotypes and associations. In the last 10 years, however, the practice has represented a more individualistic yet mainstream means of body adornment. As Figure 2 illustrates, it is not unusual to see a white-collar worker sporting a tattoo.

Figure 2. Tattoos are becoming more common among middle-class professionals. *Note.* Photo © Eric Anthony Photography/Monsoon Images/PhotoLibrary.

Citation of a work by one author

Tattooing is now common among both teenagers and older adults, men and women, urbanites and suburbanites, the college-educated and the uneducated, and the rich as well as the poor (Kosut, 2006). Table 1 indicates the wide range of Americans wearing tattoos in 2003 and 2008.

TABLE 1 PERCENTAGES OF AMERICAN ADULTS WITH ONE OR MORE TATTOOS

	Year	
Category	2003	2008
All adults	16	14
Region		
East	14	12
Midwest	14	10
South	15	13
West	20	20
Age range		
18–24	13	9
25–29	36	32
30–39	28	25
40–49	14	12
50–64	10	8
65+	7	9
Sex		
Male	16	15
Female	15	13

Note. Adapted from "Three in Ten Americans with a Tattoo Say Having One Makes Them Feel Sexier," by R. A. Corso, 2008, *Harris Interactive.*

The trend toward acceptance of tattoos may be a result of how American society views the people who wear them. Earlier, tattoos were depicted in mainstream print and visual media as worn by people with low socioeconomic or marginal status; now, they are considered to be an artful expression among celebrities as well as educated middle- and upper-class individuals (Kosut, 2006).

This shift in the symbolic status of tattoos—to a form of self-expression among the social elite rather than deviant expression among the lower classes—has allowed tattoos to be obtained in greater numbers, owing in great part to the importance placed on self-expression in the United States. Even in the workplace, where employees had often been forbidden to display tattoos, employers now "take advantage of the open-mindedness and innovation that younger [tattooed] employees bring into the workplace" (Org, 2003, p. D1).

To clarify a direct quotation from a source, the writers insert a word in square brackets

As the popularity and acceptability of tattoos has increased, tattooing has become part of the greater consumer culture and has thus undergone the process of commercialization that frequently occurs in the United States. Tattoos are now acquired as status symbols, and their prevalence helps to sell tattoo maintenance products, clothing, and skateboards (Kosut, 2006). This introduction into the consumer culture allows tattoos to gain even more popularity; they are now intertwined with mainstream culture.

Researchers have been tracking the popularity of tattoos, though no one seems able to agree on exact numbers (Libbon, 2000). In 2000, MSNBC aired an investigative piece called *Tattoos—Skin Deep*, which cited the tattooing rate at 20% of the population (Rosenbaum, 2000). In 2003, citing a lower number, Harris Interactive reported that 16% of all adults in the United

States have at least one tattoo (Sever, 2003). The actual number of individuals with tattoos is unknown, but most researchers believe the trend has been consistently gaining ground since the 1960s. Statistics on the frequency of tattooing among specific age groups generally show increases (Armstrong, Owen, Roberts, & Koch, 2002; Mayers, Judelson, Moriarty, & Rundell, 2002) although one study (Corso, 2008) showed a slight decrease. However, because of the limitations of the various research designs, more research on a national level is needed to obtain truly representative figures.

The writers list statistics to support a claim

Two citations of articles, both written by four authors, are separated by a semicolon

Significantly, the increase in acquisition of tattoos has resulted in trends concerning the images and locations of tattoos, which appear to be divided along lines of gender. Many of the tattoo images commonly found on men include, but are not limited to, death themes, various wildlife, military insignia, tribal armbands, and family crests or last names. During the 1980s, cartoon images such as Bugs Bunny and the Tasmanian Devil were also popular for males. Males choose various locations for tattoos, but the most popular male sites are the upper back, back of the calves, and the upper arm, according to tattoo artist Ben Reames (personal communication, March 20, 2008). Conversely, females often obtain tattoos that symbolize traditional femininity, such as flowers, stars, hearts, and butterflies. A noticeable trend for females in the 1980s was the rose tattoo which was often located

Citation of an interview with a tattoo artist

The writers include a photograph to support a point

on the breast or ankle. Stars and butterflies now rival the rose in popularity. The ankle continues to be a popular location for females today. Other popular spots for tattoos include the hip, foot (see Figure 3), and lower back. In fact, the lower back experienced a huge surge in popularity during the 1990s (B. Reames, personal communication, July 12, 2007).

Figure 3. Many females who get a tattoo choose to have it on the foot. *Note.* Photo © Color-Blind Images/Blend Images/Corbis.

The art of tattooing has existed in many culturally determined forms throughout human history, and its current manifestations are as varied as the cultures themselves. However, based on the current literature, the social behavior of tattooing is still quite common in the United States. In fact, Kosut (2006) argues, "New generations of American children are growing up in a cultural landscape that is more tattoo-friendly and tattoo-flooded than any other time in history" (p. 1037). Because today's children see tattoos and tattoo-related products everywhere, usually in neutral or positive situations, they will likely be more accepting of tattoos than earlier generations were. Certainly, the tattooing trend shows no signs of decreasing significantly.

Last paragraph is the conclusion

References

Center the heading

Armstrong, M. L., Owen, D. C., Roberts, A. E., & Koch, J. R. (2002). College students and tattoos: Influence of image, identity, and family. *Journal of Psychosocial Nursing, 40*(10), 20–29.

Corso, R. A. (2008, February 12). *Three in ten Americans with a tattoo say having one makes them feel sexier.* Retrieved from http://www.harrisinteractive.com/Insights/HarrisVault.aspx

DeMello, M. (1995). Not just for bikers anymore: Popular representations of American tattooing. *Journal of Popular Culture, 29*(3), 37–53. Retrieved from http://www.wiley.com/bw/journal.asp?ref=0022-3840

Kosut, M. (2006). An ironic fad: The commodification and consumption of tattoos. *Journal of Popular Culture, 39*(6), 1035–1049. Retrieved from http://www.wiley.com/bw/journal.asp?ref=0022-3840

Krcmarik, K. L. (2003). *History of tattooing*. Retrieved from Michigan State University website: http://www.msu.edu/~krcmari1/individual/history.html

Libbon, R. P. (2000). Dear data dog: Why do so many kids sport tattoos? *American Demographics, 22*(9), 26. Retrieved from http://amiga.adage.com/de

Mayers, L. B., Judelson, D. A., Moriarity, B. W., & Rundell, K. W. (2002). Prevalence of body art (body piercing and tattooing)

Alphabetize the entries according to the author's (or first author's) last name

Indent second and subsequent lines of each entry one-half inch or five spaces

No period follows a URL at the end of an entry

in university undergraduates and incidence of medical complications. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings, 77*, 20–34.

Org, M. (2003, August 28). The tattooed executive. *The Wall Street Journal*. Retrieved from http://online.wsj.com/public/us

Rosenbaum, S. (Executive producer). (2000, August 20). *MSNBC investigates: Tattoos—skin deep* [Television broadcast]. New York, NY: MSNBC.

Sever, J. (2003, October 8). *A third of Americans with tattoos say they make them feel more sexy*. Retrieved from http://www.harrisinteractive.com/Insights/HarrisVault.aspx

Identification of the type of medium is placed in square brackets

15 CMS Documentation

The Chicago Manual of Style (CMS), now in its sixteenth edition and published by the University of Chicago Press (2010), provides guidelines for writers, editors, and publishers in history and other subject areas in the arts and humanities. The CMS documentation system uses either footnotes or endnotes and, for most assignments, a bibliography. Each of these citations demonstrates that you have conducted relevant research, credited your sources, and provided the details necessary for your reader to locate your source.

15a CMS note and bibliographic forms

According to CMS style, in-text citations take the form of sequential superscript numbers that refer to **footnotes** (notes at the bottom of each page) or **endnotes** (notes at the end of the text). The information in these notes may be condensed if a bibliography lists all the sources used in the text. The condensed, or short, form for a note includes only the author's last name, the title (sometimes shortened if longer than four words), and the relevant page number(s): Eggers, *Court Reporters*, 312–15.

When a text has no bibliography, the full note form is used for the first citation of each source. For either footnotes or endnotes, place a superscript number in the text wherever documentation of a source is necessary. The number should be as close as possible to whatever it refers to, following most punctuation that appears at the end of the direct quotation or paraphrase but preceding a dash.

TIPS FOR PREPARING FOOTNOTES

- Most word-processing programs will footnote your work automatically. In your software, review the toolbars and menus to locate the tool to allow you to insert a footnote. A superscript number will appear in the cursor's position. A box will also appear at the bottom of your page in which you can insert the requisite information.
- Each note begins with a full-size number followed by a period and a space.
- Indent the first line of a note five spaces.
- Single-space lines within a footnote.
- Double-space between footnotes when more than one appears on a page.
- Use the abbreviation *Ibid.* (not italicized) to indicate that the source cited in an entry is identical to the one in the preceding entry. Include page numbers if they differ from those in the preceding entry: Ibid., 331–32.
- No bibliography is necessary when the footnotes provide complete bibliographic information for all sources.

TIPS FOR PREPARING ENDNOTES

- Place endnotes on a separate page, following the last page of your text and preceding the bibliography (if one is included).
- Center the word *Notes* (not italicized) at the top of the page.
- Use the abbreviation *Ibid.* (not italicized) to indicate that a source cited in an entry is identical to the one in the preceding entry. Include page numbers if they differ from those in the preceding entry: Ibid., 331–32.
- Indent the first line of a note five spaces.
- Single-space within an endnote and leave one blank line between endnotes.
- No bibliography is necessary when the endnotes provide complete bibliographic information for all sources used in the paper.

TIPS FOR PREPARING A BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Start the bibliography on a separate page, following the last page of the body of the text if footnotes are used or following the last page of endnotes.
- Center the word *Bibliography* (not italicized) at the top of your page.
- Alphabetize entries in the bibliography according to the author's last name.
- If a source has more than one author, alphabetize by the last name of the first author.
- For a work without an author, alphabetize the entry according to the first important word in the title.
- To indicate that a source has the same author(s) as in the preceding entry, begin an entry with six hyphens or a three-em dash (———) instead of the name(s) of the author(s). (If you do not know how to create this mark, search for *em dash*, using the Help function of your word processor.)
- Indent the second and subsequent lines of an entry five spaces (that is, use a hanging indent).
- Double-space within entries, as with other parts of your text.

Directory to CMS Note and Bibliographic Forms

BOOKS

1. Book with one author 197
2. Book with two authors 197
   CITATION MAP 15.1: BOOK, CMS STYLE 198
3. Book with three authors 199
4. Book with more than three authors 199
5. Multiple works by the same author 199
6. Author not named or unknown 200
7. Book with an editor 200

8. Book with an author and an editor 200
9. Translated book 200
10. Entry in a reference work 201
11. Sacred text 201
12. Source quoted in another source 201
13. Edition after the first 202
14. One volume in a multivolume work 202
15. Government document 202
16. Selection from an anthology 202
17. Published letter 203

ARTICLES

18. Article in a journal 203
CITATION MAP 15.2: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, CMS STYLE 204
19. Article in a magazine 205
20. Review or book review 205
21. Newspaper article 205
22. Unsigned article in a newspaper 206

ONLINE SOURCES

23. Article from an online journal 206
24. Article from a journal database 206
CITATION MAP 15.3: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, CMS STYLE 207
25. Article from an online magazine 208
26. Online book 208
27. Electronic book (e-book) 209
28. Website 209
29. Work from a website 209
CITATION MAP 15.4: WORK FROM A WEBSITE, CMS STYLE 210
30. Blog entry 211
31. E-mail and other personal communication 211
32. Podcast 211
33. Video or audio 211

OTHER SOURCES

34. DVD or Blu-ray 212
35. Interviews, published and unpublished 212
36. Sound recording 213

The following list contains entries for the full note form and the bibliographic form. The short note form is provided only for the first example.

BOOKS

1. Book with one author

Full note form

1. Carlo D'Este, *Eisenhower: A Soldier's Life* (New York: Holt, 2002), 417–18.

Provide the author's full name, in normal order, followed by a comma. Italicize the titles of books, magazines, journals, and films. Capitalize all major words. The city of publication, publisher, and date of publication are all within parentheses. Omit the words *Inc.*, *Publishing*, *Publishers*, and *Co.*, but retain the words *Press* and *Books*. You may shorten *University* to *Univ.* as long as you do so consistently.

Short note form

1. D'Este, *Eisenhower*, 417–18.

Bibliographic form

D'Este, Carlo. *Eisenhower: A Soldier's Life.* New York: Holt, 2002.

Provide the author's full name, last name first, followed by a comma and the first name. Provide either the full name of the publisher or an abbreviated version. The style chosen must be used consistently throughout the notes and the bibliography. End the entry with a period.

2. Book with two authors

Full note form

2. Alice H. Eagly and Linda L. Carli, *Through the Labyrinth: The Truth about How Women Become Leaders* (Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2007), 28.

Use the word *and* between the authors' names.

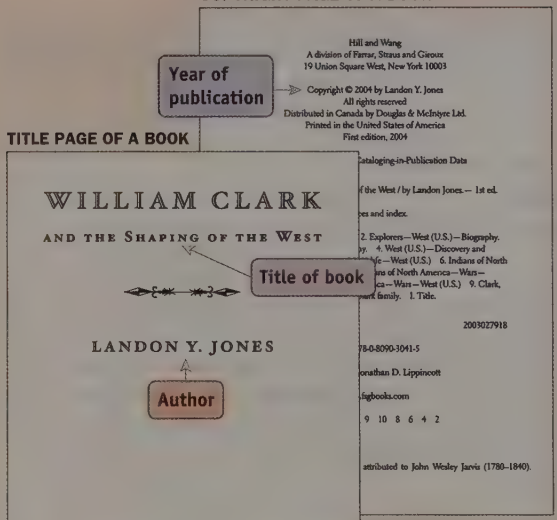
Bibliographic form

Eagly, Alice H., and Linda L. Carli. *Through the Labyrinth: The Truth about How Women Become Leaders.* Boston: Harvard Business School Press, 2007.

CITATION MAP 15.1: BOOK, CMS STYLE

Include the following elements when citing a book.

COPYRIGHT PAGE OF A BOOK


Year of publication
Hill and Wang
A division of Farrar, Straus and Giroux
19 Union Square West, New York 10003
Copyright © 2004 by Landon Y. Jones
All rights reserved
Distributed in Canada by Douglas & McIntyre Ltd.
Printed in the United States of America
First edition, 2004
TITLE PAGE OF A BOOK
WILLIAM CLARK
AND THE SHAPING OF THE WEST
Title of book
LANDON Y. JONES
Author
HILL AND WANG
A DIVISION OF FARRAR, STRAUS AND GIROUX
NEW YORK
Publisher
City of publication

Source: *William Clark and the Shaping of the West* by Landon Y. Jones. Copyright © 2004 by Farrar, Straus and Giroux, LLC.

FULL NOTE FORM FOR A BOOK

Author — Title of book

1. Landon Y. Jones, *William Clark and the Shaping of the West* (New York: Hill and Wang, 2004), 180–81.

City of publication — Publisher — Year of publication — Page numbers

BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR A BOOK

Author — Title of book

Jones, Landon Y. *William Clark and the Shaping of the West.* New York: Hill and Wang, 2004.

City of publication — Publisher — Year of publication

Invert the first author's name and follow it with a comma, the word *and* (not italicized), and the second author's name in normal order. The second and subsequent lines of an entry are indented five spaces by using the hanging indent in your word processing program.

3. Book with three authors

Full note form

3. Karen A. Foss, Sonja K. Foss, and Cindy L. Griffin, *Feminist Rhetorical Theories* (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 1999).

Bibliographic form

Foss, Karen A., Sonja K. Foss, and Cindy L. Griffin. *Feminist Rhetorical Theories.* Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 1999.

Only the first author's name is inverted. If the city of publication is not widely known, include a two-letter state abbreviation.

4. Book with more than three authors

Full note form

4. Mike Palmquist et al., *Transitions: Teaching Writing in Computer-Supported and Traditional Classrooms* (Greenwich, CT: Ablex, 1998), 153.

In a note use the first person's name followed by the phrase *et al.*, which means *and others*. Include all authors' names in the bibliographic form.

Bibliographic form

Palmquist, Mike, Kate Kiefer, James Hartvigsen, and Barbara Goodlew. *Transitions: Teaching Writing in Computer-Supported and Traditional Classrooms.* Greenwich, CT: Ablex, 1998.

5. Multiple works by the same author

In the bibliography, list the works alphabetically by title. After the first work, type six hyphens or a three-em dash in place of the author's name for subsequent entries.

Bibliographic form

Diaz, Junot. *The Brief Wondrous Life of Oscar Wao.* New York: Riverhead Books, 2007.

———. *This Is How You Lose Her.* New York: Riverhead Books, 2012.

6. Author not named or unknown
Full note form

6. *Beowulf: A New Verse Translation,* trans. Seamus Heaney (New York: Farrar, Strauss, and Giroux, 2000), 24.

Bibliography form

Beowulf: A New Verse Translation. Translated by Seamus Heaney. New York: Farrar, Strauss, and Giroux, 2000.

7. Book with an editor
Full note form

7. Hanna Schissler, ed., *The Miracle Years* (Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2001).

Place the abbreviation *ed.* after the editor's name.

Bibliographic form

Schissler, Hanna, ed. *The Miracle Years.* Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, 2001.

8. Book with an author and an editor
Full note form

8. Ayn Rand, *The Art of Fiction,* ed. Tore Boeckmann (New York: Plume, 2000).

Use the abbreviation *ed.* for "edited by."

Bibliographic form

Rand, Ayn. *The Art of Fiction.* Edited by Tore Boeckmann. New York: Plume, 2000.

Write out the words *Edited by.*

9. Translated book
Full note form

9. Orhan Pamuk, *Silent House,* trans. Robert Finn (New York: Knopf, 2012).

Use the abbreviation *trans.* for "translated by."

Bibliographic form

Pamuk, Orhan. *Silent House.* Translated by Robert Finn. New York: Knopf, 2012.

Write out the words *Translated by.*

10. Entry in a reference work
Full note form

10. Robert Cox and Christina R. Foust, "Social Movement Rhetoric," in *The SAGE Handbook of Rhetorical Studies*, ed. Andrea A. Lunsford, Kirt H. Wilson, and Rosa A. Eberly (Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2009), 613.

Bibliographic form

Cox, Robert, and Christina R. Foust. "Social Movement Rhetoric." In *The SAGE Handbook of Rhetorical Studies,* edited by Andrea A. Lunsford, Kirt H. Wilson, and Rosa A. Eberly, 605–27. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage, 2009.

11. Sacred text
Full note form

11. John 3:16 (New Revised Standard Version).

11. Qur'an 7:1–7.

CMS does not include sacred or religious texts in the bibliography.

12. Source quoted in another source
Full note form

12. Toni Morrison, *Playing in the Dark* (New York: Vintage, 1992), 26, quoted in Jonathan Goldberg, *Willa Cather and Others* (Durham, NC: Duke University Press, 2001), 37.

Bibliographic form

Goldberg, Jonathan. *Willa Cather and Others*. Durham, NC: Duke University Press, 2001.

In the note cite both the original work and the secondary source in which it is quoted. In the bibliography cite the secondary source.

13. Edition after the first

Full note form

13. Edward O. Wilson, *On Human Nature,* 14th ed. (Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 2001).

Bibliographic form

Wilson, Edward O. *On Human Nature.* 14th ed. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 2001.

14. One volume in a multivolume work

Full note form

14. Thomas Cleary, *Classics of Buddhism and Zen,* vol. 3 (Boston: Shambhala, 2001), 116.

Bibliographic form

Cleary, Thomas. *Classics of Buddhism and Zen.* Vol. 3. Boston: Shambhala, 2001.

15. Government document

Full note form

15. US Bureau of the Census, *Statistical Abstract of the United States,* 120th ed. (Washington, DC, 2001), 16.

Bibliographic form

US Bureau of the Census. *Statistical Abstract of the United States.* 120th ed. Washington, DC, 2001.

16. Selection from an anthology

Full note form

16. Elizabeth Spencer, "The Everlasting Light," in *The Cry of an Occasion,* ed. Richard Bausch (Baton Rouge: Louisiana State University Press, 2001), 171–82.

If you are citing information from a specific page or pages of a book or an article, place the page number(s) at the end of the note.

Bibliographic form

Spencer, Elizabeth. "The Everlasting Light." In *The Cry of an Occasion,* edited by Richard Bausch, 171–82. Baton Rouge: Louisiana State University Press, 2001.

Use quotation marks to enclose the titles of selections from anthologies. The title is followed by a comma in the note form or by a period in the bibliographic form.

When only one selection from an anthology is used, inclusive page numbers precede the publication data in the bibliographic entry.

17. Published letter

Full note form

17. Lincoln to George McClellan, Washington, DC, 13 October 1862, in *This Fiery Trial: The Speeches and Writings of Abraham Lincoln,* ed. William E. Gienapp (New York: Oxford University Press, 2002), 178.

Bibliographic form

Lincoln, Abraham. Abraham Lincoln to George McClellan, Washington, DC, 13 October 1862. In *This Fiery Trial: The Speeches and Writings of Abraham Lincoln,* edited by William E. Gienapp, 178. New York: Oxford University Press, 2002.

ARTICLES

18. Article in a journal

Full note form

18. A. Schedler, "The Menu of Manipulation," *Journal of Democracy* 13, no. 2 (2002): 48.

Use initials for an author's first and middle names only when they are used in the original publication. Include the page number of the specific citation.

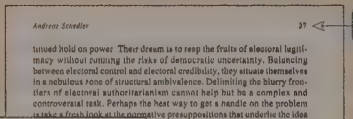
Bibliographic form

Schedler, A. "The Menu of Manipulation." *Journal of Democracy* 13, no. 2 (2002): 36–50.

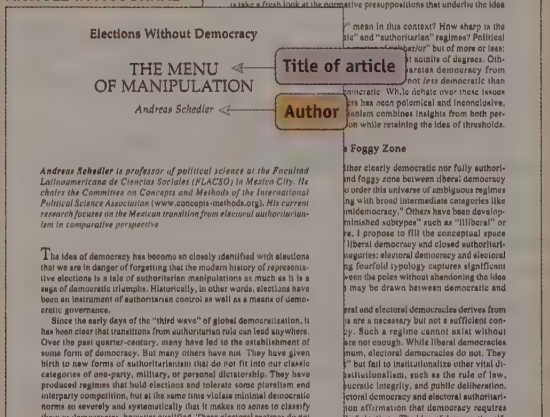
CITATION MAP 15.2: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, CMS STYLE

To cite an article from a journal, include the following elements.

SECOND PAGE OF ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL



FIRST PAGE OF ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL


Elections Without Democracy
THE MENU OF MANIPULATION
Title of article
Andreas Schedler
Author
Andreas Schedler is professor of political science at the Facultad Latinoamericana de Ciencias Sociales (FLACSO) in Mexico City. He chairs the Committee on Concepts and Methods of the International Political Science Association (www.concepts-methods.org). His current research focuses on the Mexican transition from electoral authoritarianism to comparative perspective
Foggy Zone
Volume number
Title of journal
Issue number
Year of publication
Journal of Democracy Volume 13 Number 2 April 2002

FULL NOTE FOR AN ARTICLE

Note number · Author · Title of article · Title of journal · Volume number

18. A. Schedler, "The Menu of Manipulation," *Journal of Democracy* 13, no. 2 (2002): 37.

Page number · Issue number · Year of publication

BIBLIOGRAPHIC FORM FOR AN ARTICLE

Author · Title of article · Title of journal · Volume number

Schedler, A. "The Menu of Manipulation," *Journal of Democracy* 13, no. 2 (2002): 36–50.

Page numbers · Issue number · Year of publication

In the bibliographic form, include the page span of the article.

19. Article in a magazine
Full note form

19. John O'Sullivan, "The Overskeptics," *National Review,* June 17, 2002, 23.

Bibliographic form

O'Sullivan, John. "The Overskeptics." *National Review,* June 17, 2002, 22–26.

For a magazine published monthly, include only the month and the year, with no comma inserted between them. In a note, mention only the cited page. In the bibliography, include the full page range of the article.

20. Review or book review
Full note form

20. Franny Howes, review of *Out of Athens: The New Ancient Greeks*, by Page duBois, *Rhetoric Society Quarterly* 42, no. 1 (2012), 88.

Bibliographic form

Howes, Franny. Review of *Out of Athens: The New Ancient Greeks*, by Page duBois. *Rhetoric Society Quarterly* 42, no. 1 (2012): 88–90.

21. Newspaper article
Full note form

21. Rick Bragg, "An Oyster and a Way of Life, Both at Risk," *New York Times*, June 15, 2002, national edition, sec. A.

Omit the initial *The* in the newspaper's name. If the city of publication is not part of the name, add it at the beginning (italicized) as part of the name: *St. Paul Pioneer Press.* If the city is not well known or could be confused with another city of the same name, add the state name or abbreviation in parentheses after the city's name. If the paper is a well-known national one, such as the *Wall Street Journal*, it is not necessary to add the city.

Bibliographic form

Bragg, Rick. "An Oyster and a Way of Life, Both at Risk." *New York Times.* June 15, 2002, national edition, sec. A.

If the name of the newspaper and the date of publication are mentioned in your text, no bibliographic entry is needed.

22. Unsigned article in a newspaper
Full note form

22. "Nittany Lions Finish with a Flourish," *Centre Daily Times* (State College, PA), February 26, 2012.

Bibliographic form

Centre Daily Times (State College, PA). "Nittany Lions Finish with a Flourish." February 26, 2012.

Neither page numbers nor section is required.

ONLINE SOURCES

23. Article from an online journal
Full note form

23. Zina Peterson, "Teaching Margery and Julian in Anthropology-Based Survey Courses," *College English* 68, no. 5 (2006): 481–501, accessed May 5, 2010, doi:10.2307/25472167.

Give the DOI (digital object identifier), a permanent identifying number, when citing electronic sources. If the source does not have a DOI, list the URL (see item 25). If the material is time-sensitive or if your discipline or instructor requires it, include the access date before the DOI or URL.

Bibliographic form

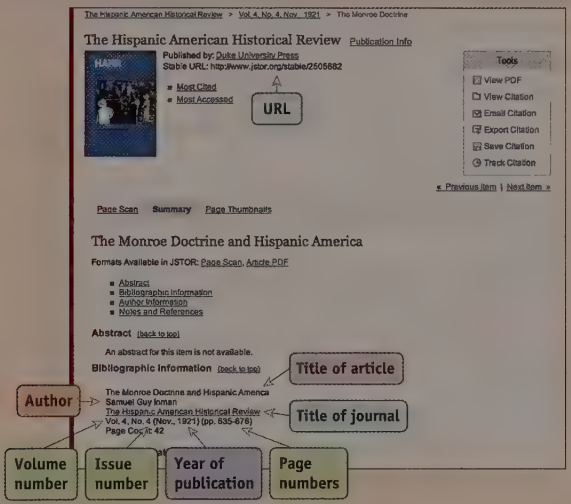
Peterson, Zina. "Teaching Margery and Julian in Anthropology-Based Survey Courses." *College English* 68, no. 5 (2006): 481–501. Accessed May 5, 2010. doi:10.2307/25472167.

24. Article from a journal database
Full note form

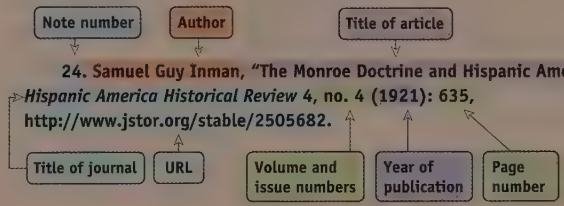
24. Samuel Guy Inman, "The Monroe Doctrine and Hispanic America," *Hispanic America Historical Review* 4, no. 4 (1921): 635, http://www.jstor.org/stable/2505682.

CITATION MAP 15.3: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, CMS STYLE

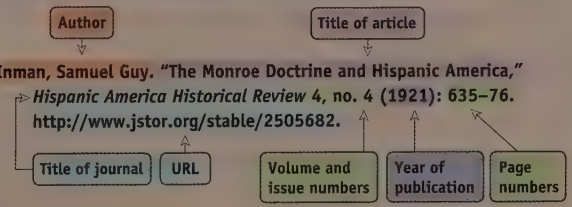
Include the following elements when citing an article in a database.



FULL NOTE FORM FOR AN ARTICLE IN A DATABASE



BIBLIOGRAPHIC FORM FOR AN ARTICLE IN A DATABASE



If there is no DOI, give a stable URL for the article in the online database.

Bibliographic form

Inman, Samuel Guy. "The Monroe Doctrine and Hispanic America." *Hispanic America Historical Review* 4, no. 4 (1921): 635–76. http://www.jstor.org/stable/2505682.

25. Article from an online magazine

Full note form

25. Mark Frank, "Judge for Themselves: Why a Supreme Court Ruling on Sentencing Guidelines Puts More Power Back on the Bench," *Time*, January 24, 2005, http://www.time.com/time/magazine/printout/0,8816,1018063,00.html.

Bibliographic form

Frank, Mark. "Judge for Themselves: Why a Supreme Court Ruling on Sentencing Guidelines Puts More Power Back on the Bench." *Time*, January 24, 2005. http://www.time.com/time/magazine/printout/0,8816,1018063,00.html.

If the source has no DOI, cite the URL. A URL or DOI continued on a second line may be broken *after* a colon or double slash or *before* a single slash, a comma, a period, a hyphen, a question mark, a percent symbol, a number sign (#), a tilde (~), or an underline (_). It can be broken either before or after an ampersand (&) or equals sign.

26. Online book

Full note form

26. Marian Hurd McNeely, *The Jumping-off Place*, illus. William Siegel (New York: Longmans, 1929), 28, http://digital.library.upenn.edu/women/mcneely/place/place.html.

Bibliographic form

McNeely, Marian Hurd. *The Jumping-off Place.* Illustrated by William Siegel. New York: Longmans, 1929. http://digitial.library.upenn.edu/women/mcneely/place/place.html.

Include the same information (author, title, city, publisher, year) as for a book. While some online books provide page images of the original book, others do not. If page numbers vary, use a chapter or other section number instead.

27. Electronic book (e-book)

Full note form

27. S. C. Gwynne, *Empire of the Summer Moon* (New York: Scribner, 2010), Kindle edition, chap. 11.

Bibliographic form

Gwynne, S. C. *Empire of the Summer Moon*. New York: Scribner, 2012. Kindle edition.

28. Website

Full note form

28. Jeremy Hylton, The Complete Works of William Shakespeare, *The Tech*, MIT, 1993, http://shakespeare.mit.edu.

Bibliographic form

Hylton, Jeremy. The Complete Works of William Shakespeare. *The Tech*. 1993. http://shakespeare.mit.edu.

Unless no other publication information is available, access dates are not necessary.

29. Work from a website

Full note form

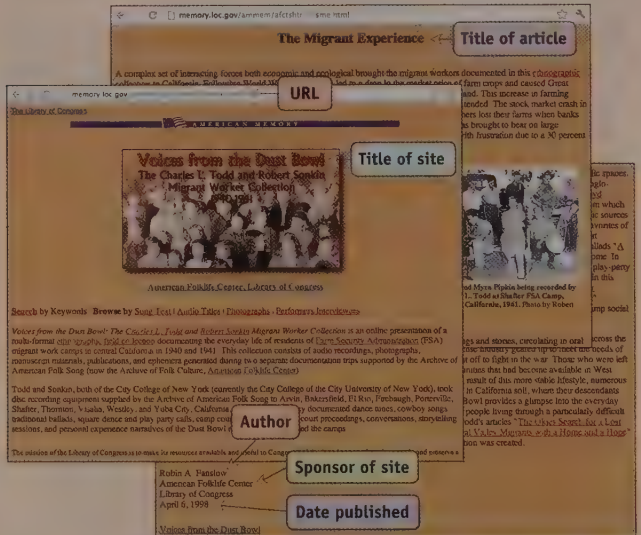
29. Eric Skalac, "BP Well to Stay Sealed after Gulf Spill, Experts Predict," *National Geographic*, last modified April 20, 2011, http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/Energy/2011/04/110418-oil-spill-anniversary-is-bp-well-sealed/.

Bibliographic form

Skalac, Eric. "BP Well to Stay Sealed after Gulf Spill, Experts Predict." *National Geographic*, last modified April 20, 2011. http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/Energy/2011/04/110418-oil-spill-anniversary-is-bp-well-sealed/.

CITATION MAP 15.4: WORK FROM A WEBSITE, CMS STYLE

Include the following elements when citing a short work from a website.



FULL NOTE FOR A WORK FROM A WEBSITE

Note number | Author | Title of article | Title of site | URL of website

29. Robin A. Fanslow, "The Migrant Experience," *Voices from the Dustbowl: The Charles L. Todd and Robert Sonkin Migrant Worker Collection*, American Folk Life Center, Library of Congress, last modified April 6, 1998, http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/afctshtml/tsme.html.

Date of publication | Sponsor of site

BIBLIOGRAPHIC FORM FOR A WORK FROM A WEBSITE

Author | Title of article | Title of site | URL of website

Fanslow, Robin A. "The Migrant Experience," *Voices from the Dustbowl: The Charles L. Todd and Robert Sonkin Migrant Worker Collection*, American Folk Life Center, Library of Congress, last modified April 6, 1998, http://memory.loc.gov/ammem/afctshtml/tsme.html.

Date of publication | Sponsor of site

30. Blog entry
Full note form

30. Megan Slack, "What Is the Sequester?" *The White House Blog*, February 22, 2013, http://www.whitehouse.gov/blog/2013/02/22/what-sequester.

Bibliographic form

Slack, Megan. "What Is the Sequester?" *The White House Blog*. February 22, 2013. http://www.whitehouse.gov/blog/2012/02/22/what-sequester.

If *blog* does not appear as part of the name, add it in parentheses after the name. Although all blogs can be cited in notes, only frequently cited blogs appear in the bibliography.

31. E-mail and other personal communication
Full note form

31. Evan Micheals, e-mail message to James Smith, February 22, 2013.

It is not necessary to list personal communications, such as e-mails, in the bibliography.

32. Podcast
Full note form

32. Ira Glass, "363: Enforcers," *This American Life*, podcast audio, 57:53, February 22, 2013, http://www.thisamericanlife.org/play_full.php?play=363.

Bibliographic form

Glass, Ira. "363: Enforcers." *This American Life*. Podcast audio, 57:53. February 22, 2013. http://www.thisamericanlife.org/play_full.php?play=363.

33. Video or audio
Full note form

33. Adam Savage, *How Simple Ideas Lead to Scientific Discoveries—Adam Savage*, video, 7:31, March 13, 2012, https://www.youtube.com/watch?v+F8UFGu2MgM.

Bibliographic form

Savage, Adam. *How Simple Ideas Lead to Scientific Discoveries—Adam Savage*. Video, 7:31. March 13, 2012. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v+F8UFGu2MgM.

OTHER SOURCES

34. DVD or Blu-ray

Full note form

34. *The Girl with the Dragon Tattoo*, directed by David Fincher (Culver City, CA: Sony Pictures Entertainment, 2011), DVD and Blu-ray.

Bibliographic form

The Girl with the Dragon Tattoo. Directed by David Fincher. Culver City, CA: Sony Pictures Entertainment, 2011. DVD and Blu-ray.

35. Interviews, published and unpublished

Full note form (PUBLISHED)

35. Aldous Huxley, interview by Mike Wallace, *The Mike Wallace Interview: Aldous Huxley (1958-05-18)*, YouTube video, last modified Aug. 1, 2008, http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KGaYXahbcL4.

Bibliographic form (PUBLISHED)

Huxley, Aldous. Interviewed by Mike Wallace. *The Mike Wallace Interview: Aldous Huxley (1958-05-18)*. YouTube video. Last modified Aug. 1, 2008. http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=KGaYXahbcL4.

Full note form (UNPUBLISHED)

35. John Teodori, interview by James Timothy, November 16, 2007, transcript.

Bibliographic form (UNPUBLISHED)

Unpublished interviews rarely appear in the bibliography, but, if they do, they should include the name of the person being interviewed, the interviewer, the place and date of the interview, and the availability of a transcript or recording.

36. Sound recording

Full note form

36. Frédéric Chopin, *Nocturne Op. 9 No. 2*, with Ivan Moravec (piano), recorded in 1966, Nonesuch B000005J03, 1991, compact disc.

Bibliographic form

Chopin, Frédéric. *Nocturne Op. 9 No. 2.* Ivan Moravec (piano). Nonesuch, B000005J03, 1991, compact disc. Recorded in 1966.

15b Sample CMS-style paper

The following student paper, a historical research project, addresses an ongoing struggle in South Africa related to electricity usage. Because he included a full bibliography, Cristian Nuñez supplied endnotes written in short form. Only the first pages of his essay, along with portions of his notes and bibliography appear here.

Local Politics and National Policy in a Globalized World:

South Africa's Ongoing Electricity Dilemma

Cristian Nuñez

Political Science 87

Professor Stone

December 15, 2010

Since its 1994 inception, the South African democracy has struggled to alleviate national poverty without alienating the global financial community on which it depends. Even though the government's moderate pro-business agenda is intended to reduce poverty, it continues to provide too little support for the nation's poor—an agenda harshly criticized by citizen-advocate groups. One such group is the Soweto Electricity Crisis Committee (SECC), a civic organization advocating free basic utilities for all South Africans, who charges that South Africa's government is not living up to the human rights core of its Constitution, guaranteeing all South Africans access to basic resources.[1] The SECC addresses human rights through its controversial—and illegal—practice of delivering free electricity to South Africa's poorest people.

This introduction establishes the importance of the topic. The thesis statement is the final sentence of the first paragraph

The Electricity Crisis

Following the 1993 end of apartheid, the majority (African National Congress [ANC]) government swept into power with a mandate to reverse the injustices prevalent in South Africa. Millions of poor nonwhites hoped that affordable housing, modern education, and basic utilities would be expanded in their long-neglected neighborhoods. However, carrying out these goals would prove to be extremely difficult for the new ANC president Nelson Mandela, who had inherited a huge financial crisis from the old National Party regime. To avert a spending crisis of any kind

Writer explains how the change from apartheid to democracy inadvertently created additional economic woes for nonwhites in South Africa

(one that would devalue South African currency both locally and globally), Mandela's ANC government implemented broad economic reforms in the hope of directing the foreign investment and capital inflows necessary for growing the South African economy.[2]

Figure 1. This township settlement in Soweto typifies the poverty and lack of access to public services for many South African citizens.

One of the economic reforms included the plan to privatize the nation's many parastatals (state-owned enterprises). In preparation for privatization, each parastatal enacted cost-recovery pricing to make itself more competitive and more attractive to foreign investors. Unfortunately for the South African poor, such cost-recovery measures eliminated both subsidized utilities and rent in nonwhite neighborhoods like Soweto, which is located

just outside of Johannesburg and has long been a hotbed of revolutionary actions and ideas. In response, a number of civics (community action groups) protested the government's economic reforms, the most brash of them being the SECC.

By 2001, in an effort to remain financially solvent, South Africa's public utility company, the Electricity Supply Commission (Eskom), was disconnecting twenty thousand households a month for not paying their bills. In response, the SECC illegally reconnected more than three thousand Soweto households in a program called "Reconnect the Power."[3] Because no workable solutions to this problem have yet been discovered since those early disconnections, those illegal reconnections remain in place. In 2009, SECC's electricians were reconnecting nearly forty houses per week, resulting in an estimated 60 percent of Soweto residents receiving electricity without charge. For many of the SECC electricians having electric power is a constitutional right, not a luxury. SECC electrician Levy argues that he and the electricians "are giving back what belongs to the people," thereby justifying the SECC's ongoing activism.[4]

The Legacy of Apartheid and Perceptions of Eskom

Although the SECC was established in 2000, the practice of nonpayment for basic needs has a much longer history in South Africa. During apartheid, the ANC urged residents of Soweto and

other townships to stop paying their rent and their electricity and water bills (which were often higher than those of households in upper-class white neighborhoods). The boycott the ANC organized was a powerful weapon against apartheid, eventually bankrupting local authorities. Many people retained this stance of resistance following the end of apartheid. "We did not expect this," said Chris Ngcobo, an organizer of the Soweto boycott under apartheid, who now helps oversee an ANC/Eskom project to reverse the culture of nonpayment. "We expected that after the elections people would just pay. But it will not be so easy."[5]

The rest of the paper describes the ways in which the SECC has intervened in order to provide electricity to poor, nonwhite South Africans

For many residents, nonpayment as protest continued as an intentional act during the Mandela years. During these early post-apartheid years, bill payment was presented as a patriotic gesture in support of the Mandela government.[6] The residents, however, wanted to see improvements first before resuming payment.

Notes

1. *Countries of the World*.
2. McNeil, "Shedding State Companies."
3. Bond, *Against Global Apartheid*, 170.
4. Fisher, "South Africa Crisis."
5. Daley, "In South Africa."
6. Ibid.

Bibliography

Bibliography begins on a new page

Bond, Patrick. *Against Global Apartheid: South Africa Meets the World Bank, IMF and International Finance*. Cape Town: Univ. of Cape Town Press, 2003.

Chang, Claude V. *Privatisation and Development: Theory, Policy and Evidence*. Hampshire, UK: Ashgate, 2006.

Countries of the World and Their Leaders Yearbook 2011. 2 vols. Detroit: Gale, 2010. http://go.galegroup.com.

Daley, Suzanne. "In South Africa, a Culture of Resistance Dies Hard." *New York Times*, July 19, 1995. http://www.nytimes.com/1995/07/19/world/in-south-africa-a-culture-of-resistance-dies-hard.html.

Entries use hanging indent

———. "Seeing Bias in Their Utility Rates, Mixed Race South Africans Riot." *New York Times*, February 7, 1997. http://www.nytimes.com/1997/02/07/world/seeing-bias-in-their-utility-rates-mixed-race-south-africans-riot.html.

Two articles by the same author

Eskom. *Annual Report 1999*. n.d. http://www.eskom.co.za/annreport/main.htm.

Fisher, Jonah. "South Africa Crisis Creates Crusading Electricians." *BBC News*, November 24, 2009. http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/8376400.stm.

Kingsnorth, Paul. *One No, Many Yeses*. Sydney: Simon and Schuster, 2003.

McNeil, Donald G., Jr. "Shedding State Companies, if Sometimes Reluctantly." *New York Times*, February 27, 1997. http://www.nytimes.com/1997/02/27/business/shedding-state-companies-if-sometimes-reluctantly.html.

CSE Documentation

The Council of Science Editors (CSE) has established guidelines for writers in the life and physical sciences: *Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers*, seventh edition, presents three systems for citing and documenting research sources: the citation-sequence system, the name-year system, and the citation-name system.

16a CSE-style in-text citations

CSE's guidelines for the citation-sequence system, the name-year system, and the citation-name system differ significantly, so be sure to know which you will be expected to use before you get started. Once you know your instructor's preference, follow the guidelines in one of the following boxes as you prepare your in-text references.

- Place a superscript number after each mention of a source or each use of material from it. This number corresponds to the number assigned to the source in the end references.
- Be sure to place the number immediately after the material used or the word or phrase indicating the source: Herbert's original method[1] was used.
- Use the same number each time you refer to a source.
- Order the numbers according to the sequence in which sources are introduced: Both Li[1] and Holst[2] have shown . . .

(Continued on page 222)

TIPS FOR PREPARING CITATION-SEQUENCE IN-TEXT REFERENCES *(Continued)*

- When referring to more than one source, use commas to separate the numbers corresponding to the sources; there is no space after each comma. Use an en dash between two numbers to indicate a sequence of sources: The early studies[1,2,4–7] . . .

TIPS FOR PREPARING NAME-YEAR IN-TEXT REFERENCES

- Place the author's last name and the year of publication in parentheses after the mention of a source: In a more recent study (Karr 2013), these findings were not replicated. Using the author's last name, the reader will be able to find the corresponding entry in the alphabetized reference list.
- Omit the author's name from the parenthetical citation if it appears in the text preceding it: In Karr's study (2013), these findings were not replicated.
- If the source has two authors, use both of their last names: (Phill and Richardson 2013). If there are three or more authors, use the first author's last name and the abbreviation *et al.*: (Drake et al. 2012).
- Use semicolons to separate multiple citations. Order these citations chronologically when the years differ but alphabetically when the years are the same: (Li 2012; Holst 2013) but (Lamont 2012; Li 2012).

TIPS FOR PREPARING CITATION-NAME IN-TEXT REFERENCES

- Arrange your end references alphabetically. Then assign each reference a number. Use the superscript form of this number in the text immediately after the material used or the word or phrase indicating the source: Stress-related illnesses are common among college students.[1]
- Use the same number each time you refer to a source.
- When referring to more than one source, use commas to separate the numbers corresponding to the sources; there is no space after each comma. Use an en dash between two numbers to indicate a sequence of sources: Recent studies of posttraumatic stress disorder[1,2,4–7] . . .

CSE-style list of references

On the final page of your paper, list all the sources you have mentioned. The ordering of the entries will depend on which system you have chosen. Both the citation-name system and the name-year system require alphabetical ordering according to the authors' last names; the citation-sequence system requires that the sources be listed in the order they were mentioned in your text.

TIPS FOR PREPARING END REFERENCES

- Center the heading "References" or "Cited References" at the top of the page.
- If you are using the *citation-sequence system*, list the sources in the order in which they were introduced in the text.
- If you are using the *citation-name system*, your end references should be ordered alphabetically according to the first author's last name and then numbered.
- If you are using the *name-year system*, your end references should be ordered alphabetically.
- Entries on citation-sequence and citation-name reference lists differ only in overall organization: citation-sequence references are listed according to the order of occurrence within the text; citation-name references are listed alphabetically. The name-year system differs from both the citation-sequence and citation-name systems only in the placement of the date of publication: the name-year system calls for the date to be placed after the author's name; the citation-sequence and the citation-name systems call for the date to be placed after the publisher's name in entries for books and after the name of the periodical in entries for articles.
- When listing place of publication information, if the city is not well known or could be confused with another city, include an abbreviation for the state or country in parentheses after the name of the city. The name of a country may be spelled out.

The following entries are organized to present the citation-sequence or citation-name system first, followed by entries reflecting the name-year system.

Directory to CSE Reference List Entries

BOOKS

1. Book with one author 225
2. Book with two or more authors 225
3. Book with an organization (or organizations) listed as author 225
4. Book with editor(s) 226
5. Section of a book with an editor 226
6. Chapter or part of an edited book 226
7. Paper or abstract in conference proceedings 227

ARTICLES

8. Article in a scholarly journal 227
   [illegible] 228
9. Article in a weekly journal 229
10. Article in a magazine 229
11. Article in a newspaper 229

ONLINE SOURCES

12. Online book 229
13. Article in an online journal 230
14. Article in a database 230
    [illegible] 231
15. Article in an online magazine 232
16. Article in an online newspaper 232
17. Website 232
18. Short work from a website 233
19. Report from a government agency 233
20. Online video 234

BOOKS

1. Book with one author

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

1. King BJ. How animals grieve. Chicago: University of Chicago Press; 2013. 193 p.

Begin the entry with the author's last name and his or her first initial and middle initial (if given). Capitalize only the first word of the title and any proper nouns or adjectives. Include the place of publication, the publisher's name, and the year of publication. Provide the total page count if required, using the abbreviation *p* for "pages."

Name-year system

King BJ. 2013. How animals grieve. Chicago: University of Chicago Press. 193 p.

2. Book with two or more authors

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

2. Ohanian HC, Ruffini R. Gravitation and spacetime. 3rd ed. Cambridge (England): Cambridge University Press; 2013.

Invert the name and initials of all authors, using commas to separate the names.

Name-year system

Ohanian HC, Ruffini R. 2013. Gravitation and spacetime. 3rd ed. Cambridge (England): Cambridge University Press.

3. Book with an organization (or organizations) listed as author

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

3. International Organization for Migration. Migration, environment and climate change: assessing the evidence. Laczko F, Aghazarm C, editors. Geneva (Switzerland): International Organization for Migration; 2009.

The first word of a subtitle is not capitalized unless it is a proper noun.

Name-year system

[IOM] International Organization for Migration. 2009. Migration, environment and climate change: assessing the evidence. Laczko F, Aghazarm C, editors. Geneva (Switzerland): International Organization for Migration.

4. Book with editor(s)
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

4. Lund B, Hunter P, editors. The microbiological safety of food in healthcare settings. Malden (MA): Blackwell; 2007.

Include the word *editor* or *editors* after the last name.

Name-year system

Lund B, Hunter P, editors. 2007. The microbiological safety of food in healthcare settings. Malden (MA): Blackwell.

5. Section of a book with an editor
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

5. Banich, MT. Hemispheric specialization and cognition. In: Whitaker HA, editor. Concise encyclopedia of brain and language. Oxford (England): Elsevier; 2010. p. 224–230.

Name-year system

Banich, MT. 2010. Hemispheric specialization and cognition. In: Whitaker HA, editor. Concise encyclopedia of brain and language. Oxford (England): Elsevier. p. 224–230.

6. Chapter or part of an edited book
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

6. Martin DJ. Social data. In: Wilson J, Fotheringham AS, editors. The handbook of geographic information science. Malden (MA): Blackwell; 2008. p. 35–48.

Name-year system

Martin DJ. 2008. Social data. In: Wilson J, Fotheringham AS, editors. The handbook of geographic information science. Malden (MA): Blackwell. p. 35–48.

7. Paper or abstract in conference proceedings

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

7. Barge, RA. Using standards to support human factors engineering. In: Anderson M, editor. Contemporary ergonomics and human factors 2013: proceedings of the International Conference on Ergonomics and Human Factors; 2013 Apr 15–18, Cambridge, England. Croydon (England): Taylor & Francis; 2013. p. 135–137.

Name-year system

Barge, RA. 2013. Using standards to support human factors engineering. In: Anderson M, editor. Contemporary ergonomics and human factors 2013: proceedings of the International Conference on Ergonomics and Human Factors; 2013 Apr 15–18; Cambridge, England. Croydon (England): Taylor & Francis. p. 135–137.

ARTICLES

8. Article in a scholarly journal

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

8. Kao-Kniffin J, Freyre DS, Balser TC. Increased methane emissions from an invasive wetland plant under elevated carbon dioxide levels. Appl Soil Ecol. 2011;48(3):309–312.

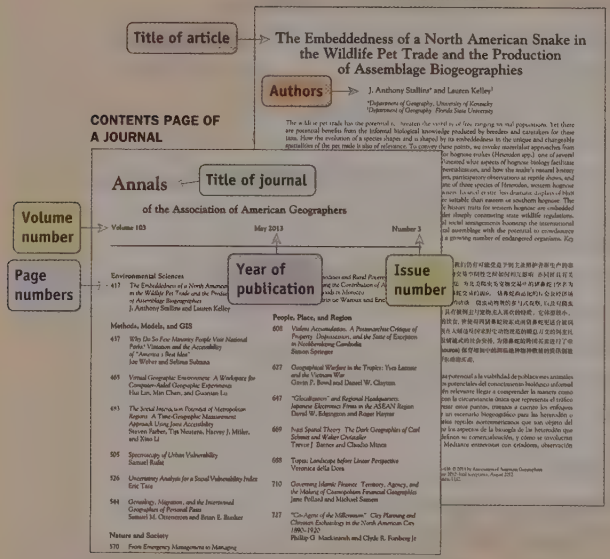
Place a period after the abbreviated name of the journal (abbreviations can be found online by searching for "CSE journal abbreviations"). Next, list the year of publication, the volume number, and the issue number. Place a semicolon between the year of publication and the volume number. Put the issue number in parentheses. Note that there are no spaces separating the year, the volume number, and the issue number. Page numbers should be expressed as a range.

Name-year system

Kao-Kniffin J, Freyre DS, Balser TC. 2011. Increased methane emissions from an invasive wetland plant under elevated carbon dioxide levels. Appl Soil Ecol. 48(3):309–312.

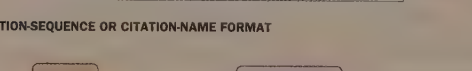
CITATION MAP 16.1: ARTICLE IN A JOURNAL, CSE STYLE

Include the following elements when citing an article from a journal.

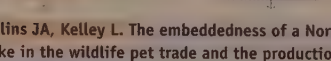

FIRST PAGE OF A JOURNAL ARTICLE
Title of article
The Embeddedness of a North American Snake in the Wildlife Pet Trade and the Production of Assemblage Biogeographies
Authors
J. Anthony Stallins* and Lauren Kelley†
*Department of Geography, University of Kentucky
†Department of Geography, Florida State University
CONTENTS PAGE OF A JOURNAL
Annals
Title of journal
of the Association of American Geographers
Volume 103
May 2013
Number 3
Volume number
Page numbers
Year of publication
Issue number
Environmental Sciences
417 The Embeddedness of a North American Snake in the Wildlife Pet Trade and the Production of Assemblage Biogeographies
J. Anthony Stallins and Lauren Kelley
Methods, Models, and GIS
437 Why Do So Few Monetary People Visit National Parks? Visitation and the Accessibility of "America's Best Idea"
Jan Weber and Bellona Sultana
465 Virtual Geographic Environments: A Workspace for Computer-Aided Geographic Experiments
Hui Lin, Min Chen, and Guonian Lu
493 The Social Interaction Potential of Metropolitan Regions: A Time-Geographic Measurement Approach Using Joint Accessibility
Steven Farber, Tijs Neutens, Harvey J. Miller, and Xinz Li
505 Spectroscopy of Urban Vulnerability
Samuel Rubit
526 Uncertainty Analysis for a Social Vulnerability Index
Eric Tate
544 Genealogy, Migration, and the Intertwined Geographies of Personal Pasts
Samuel M. Otterstrom and Brian E. Booher
Nature and Society
570 From Emergency Management to Managing
People, Place, and Region
601 Violent Accumulation: A Poststructuralist Critique of Property Dispossession, and the State of Exception in Northwestern Cambodia
Simon Springer
627 Geographical Warfare in the Tropics: Yves Lacoste and the Vietnam War
Gavin F. Bowd and Daniel W. Clayton
647 "Glocalization" and Regional Headquarters: Japanese Electronics Firms in the ASEAN Region
Daniel W. Edmiston and Roger Hayter
669 Iwad Spatial Theory: The Dark Geographies of Carl Schmitt and Walter Christaller
Trevor J. Barnes and Claudio Minca
688 Tupaia: Landscape before Linear Perspective
Veronica della Dora
710 Governing Islamic Finance: Territory, Agency, and the Making of Cosmopolitan Financial Geographies
Jane Pollard and Michael Samers
727 "Co-Agents of the Millennium": City Planning and Chronic Technology in the North American City, 1900–1920
Phillip G. Mackintosh and Clyde R. Forsberg Jr
Source: Used by permission of Taylor & Francis.

CITATION-SEQUENCE OR CITATION-NAME FORMAT

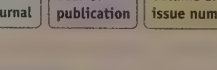
8. **Stallins JA, Kelley L. The embeddedness of a North American snake in the wildlife pet trade and the production of assemblage biogeographies. Ann Assoc Am Geogr. 2013;103(3):417–436.**



NAME-YEAR FORMAT



Stallins JA, Kelley L. 2013. The embeddedness of a North American snake in the wildlife pet trade and the production of assemblage biogeographies. Ann Assoc Am Geogr. 103(3):417–436.



9. Article in a weekly journal
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

9. Mishra SK, Hoon MA. The cells and circuitry for itch responses in mice. Science. 2013 May 24:968–971.

Name-year system

Mishra SK, Hoon MA. 2013 May 24. The cells and circuitry for itch responses in mice. Science. 968–971.

10. Article in a magazine
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

10. McKibben B. Carbon's new math. Natl Geogr. 2007;212(4):33–37.

List the volume and issue numbers when available.

Name-year system

McKibben B. 2007. Carbon's new math. Natl Geogr. 212(4):33–37.

11. Article in a newspaper
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

11. O'Connor A. Heart attack risk linked to time spent in traffic. New York Times. 2004 Oct 26;Sect. F:9 (col. 4).

Include the section letter, page number, and column number.

Name-year system

O'Connor A. 2004 Oct 26. Heart attack risk linked to time spent in traffic. New York Times. Sect. F:9 (col. 4).

ONLINE SOURCES

12. Online book
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

12. Institute of Medicine, Committee on the Effect of Climate Change on Indoor Air Quality and Public Health. Climate change, the indoor environment, and health [Internet]. Washington (DC): National Academy Press; 2011 [cited 2013 May 26]. Available from: http://www.nap.edu/catalog.php?record_id=13115

Place the word *Internet* in brackets after the title of the book or journal. Give the date of access in brackets after the date of publication. Provide the full URL unless it is excessively long, in which case give the URL for the home page only.

Name-year system

Institute of Medicine, Committee on the Effect of Climate Change on Indoor Air Quality and Public Health. 2011. Climate change, the indoor environment, and health [Internet]. Washington (DC): National Academy Press; [cited 2013 May 26]. Available from: http://www.nap.edu/catalog.php?record_id=13115

13. Article in an online journal
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

13. Miller MR, White A, Boots M. Host life span and the evolution of resistance characteristics. Evol [Internet]. 2007 [cited 2007 Oct 31]; 61(1):2–14. Available from: http://www.blackwell-synergy.com/doi/full/10.1111/j.1558–5646.2007.00001.x

Name-year system

Miller MR, White A, Boots M. 2007. Host life span and the evolution of resistance characteristics. Evol [Internet]. [cited 2007 Oct 31]; 61(1):2–14. Available from: http://www.blackwell-synergy.com/doi/full/10.1111/j.1558–5646.2007.00001.x

14. Article in a database
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

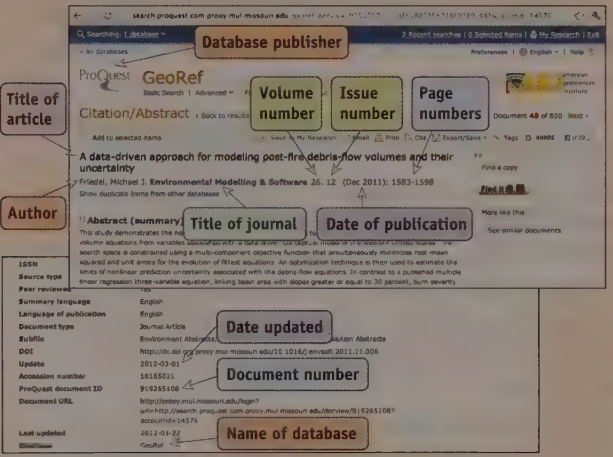
14. Stave G, Darcey DJ. Prevention of laboratory animal allergy in the United States. J Occup Environ Med [Internet]. 2012 [cited 2013 May 17]; 54(5):558–563. Academic Search Complete. Ipswich (MA): EBSCO. Available from: http://web.ebscohost.com. Document No.: 75239696.

Because CSE does not provide specific guidelines for citing an article retrieved from a database, this entry follows the guidelines for citing an online journal and a database.

CITATION MAP 16.2: ARTICLE IN A DATABASE, CSE STYLE

Include the following elements when citing an article in a database.

RECORD FOR AN ARTICLE IN A DATABASE



END OF DATABASE RECORD

CITATION-SEQUENCE OR CITATION-NAME FORMAT

Author | Title of article | Title of journal

14. Friedel M. A data driven approach for modeling post-fire debris-flow volumes and their uncertainty. Environ Model Softw [Internet]. 2011 [updated 2012 Mar 1; cited 2013 May 2];26(12):1583-1598. GeoRef. Ann Arbor (MI): ProQuest. Available from: http://dx.doi.org.proxy.mul.missouri.edu/10.1016/j.bbr.2011.03.031. Document No.: 919265108.

Name of database | Document number | Date updated | URL | Volume and issue numbers | Page numbers | Date of publication | Publication information for database

NAME-YEAR FORMAT

Author | Date of publication | Title of article | Title of journal

Friedel M. 2011. A data driven approach for modeling post-fire debris-flow volumes and their uncertainty. Environ Model Softw [Internet]. [updated 2012 Mar 1; cited 2013 May 2];26(12):1583-1598. GeoRef. Ann Arbor (MI): ProQuest. Available from: http://dx.doi.org.proxy.mul.missouri.edu/10.1016/j.bbr.2011.03.031. Document No.: 919265108.

Date updated | URL | Publication information for database | Volume and issue numbers | Page numbers | Document number | Name of database

Name-year system

Stave G, Darcey DJ. 2012. Prevention of laboratory animal allergy in the United States. J Occup Environ Med [Internet]. [cited 2013 May 17]; 54(5):558–563. Academic Search Complete. Ipswich (MA): EBSCO. Available from: http://web.ebscohost.com. Document No.: 75239696.

15. Article in an online magazine

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

15. Shermer M. Weirdonomics and quirkology: how the curious science of the oddities of everyday life yields new insights. Sci Am [Internet]. 2007 [cited 2007 Nov 1]; 1297(5):45. Available from: http://www.sciam.com/issue.cfm after clicking on the article link.

Name-year system

Shermer M. 2007. Weirdonomics and quirkology: how the curious science of the oddities of everyday life yields new insights. Sci Am [Internet]. [cited 2007 Nov 1]; 1297(5):45. Available from: http://www.sciam.com/issue.cfm after clicking on the article link.

16. Article in an online newspaper

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

16. Singer N. Making ads that whisper to the brain. New York Times [Internet]. Online version. 2010 Nov 13 [cited 2010 Nov 29]; [1 p.]. Available from: http://www.nytimes.com/2010/11/14/business/14stream.html?ref=health

Name-year system

Singer N. 2010 Nov 13. Making ads that whisper to the brain. New York Times [Internet]. Online version. [cited 2010 Nov 29]; [1 p.]. Available from: http://www.nytimes.com/2010/11/14/business/14stream.html?ref=health

17. Website

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

17. Southern California Earthquake Data Center [Internet]. Pasadena (CA): Caltech; c2013 [updated 2013 Jan 31; cited 2013 Jun 3]. Available from: http://www.data.scec.org/

Name-year system

Southern California Earthquake Data Center [Internet]. c2013. Pasadena (CA): Caltech; [updated 2013 Jan 31; cited 2013 Jun 3]. Available from: http://www.data.scec.org/

18. Short work from a website
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

18. National Wind Institute [Internet]. Lubbock (TX): Texas Tech University; c2013. The Enhanced Fujita scale; 2011 Aug 4 [cited 2013 Jun 3]; [13 paragraphs]. Available from: http://www.spc.noaa.gov/efscale/

Be sure to include both the copyright date for the site and the publication date for the short work.

Name-year system

National Wind Institute [Internet]. c2013. Lubbock (TX): Texas Tech University. The Enhanced Fujita scale; 2011 Aug 4 [cited 2013 Jun 3]; [13 paragraphs]. Available from: http://www.spc.noaa.gov/efscale/

19. Report from a government agency
Citation-sequence or citation-name system

19. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Department of Health and Human Services. Fourth National Report on Human Exposure to Environmental Chemicals, 2009 [Internet]. Atlanta (GA): Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2009 [cited 2010 Dec 10]. Available from: http://www.cdc.gov/exposurereport/pdf/FourthReport.pdf

Name-year system

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Department of Health and Human Services. 2009. Fourth National Report on Human Exposure to Environmental Chemicals, 2009 [Internet]. Atlanta (GA): Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; [cited 2010 Dec 10]. Available from: http://www.cdc.gov/exposurereport/pdf/FourthReport.pdf

20. Online video

Citation-sequence or citation-name system

20. Cresci C, Mullinkosson B, Price-Waldman S. Among giants [video on the Internet]. [place unknown]: Rainhouse Cinema; 2011 [cited 2013 May 26]. Available from: http://rainhousecinema.com/films/

Name-year system

Cresci C, Mullinkosson B, Price-Waldman S. 2011. Among giants [video on the Internet]. [place unknown]: Rainhouse Cinema; [cited 2013 May 26]. Available from: http://rainhousecinema.com/films/

16c Sample CSE-style paper

Writing assignments in the natural sciences range from literature reviews to laboratory reports. Kayla Berg, whose research paper follows, was asked to review the causes and impacts of a natural disaster for a geology course. Kayla applied the guidelines in the CSE manual in formatting her paper. However, those guidelines do not cover all features of undergraduate papers, and Kayla's title page was formatted according to her instructor's directions. Kayla used the CSE name-year system to cite and document her sources.

Thailand Tsunami

Kayla Berg
Geology 380: Environmental Geology
November 5, 2009

Abstract

In 2004, an earthquake off the coast of Sumatra caused a tsunami that struck the coasts of several countries, causing not only a great deal of human suffering but also much environmental damage. This paper reports on various types of damage caused by the tsunami and the safety precautions that have been put into place to avoid similar destruction in the future.

Page header includes short form of title and

her

Introduction

In December 2004, an earthquake with a magnitude of 9.0 occurred about 250 km off the west coast of Sumatra (in Indonesia) (Figure 1). The epicenter of the earthquake was located in the Indian Ocean at 3.3°N and 95.9°E. (Lukkunprasit and Ruangrassamee 2008).

This earthquake caused a series of tsunami waves that struck the coasts of Thailand, Indonesia, Sri Lanka, India, Somalia, Madagascar, Kenya, Tanzania, Malaysia, Myanmar, and Bangladesh (At-a-glance 2005). These waves had a negative impact on these areas. They caused damage to groundwater, wells, ecosystems,

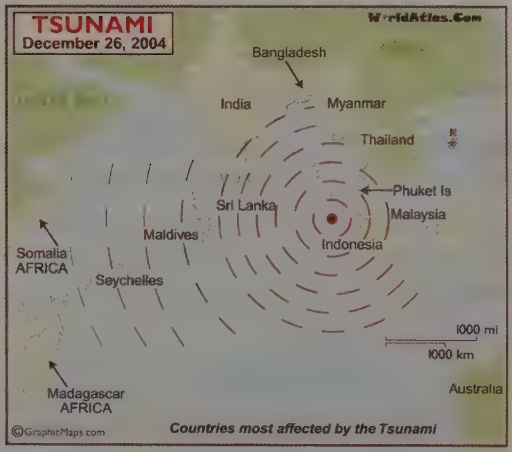


Figure 1. Epicenter of the earthquake and the areas affected by the tsunami (© GraphicMaps.com)

mangrove trees, coral reefs, and buildings (Szczucinski et al. 2006). This paper investigates the damage caused by this tsunami, commonly known as the Thailand Tsunami.

Causes and Consequences of the Tsunami

Plate Tectonics

Tsunamis are commonly generated by earthquakes that arise in subduction zones. These earthquakes are created when one plate subducts beneath (descends under) another plate and becomes stuck as a result of friction. The motion of the subducting plate causes distortion of the overriding plate, which results in an accumulation of energy. At some point, the energy built up in the overriding plate is released, causing the plates to unlock. When the plates unlock, the bottom plate continues to move downward while the top plate snaps upward. The amount the seafloor moves as a result of movement of the upper plate determines the size of the tsunami that will be created (Geist et al. 2006).

Cause of the 2004 Tsunami

Off the coast of Sumatra in the Indian Ocean, the India Plate and the Eurasia Plate meet to form a subduction zone (Geist et al. 2006). In this zone, the India Plate, because it is denser, subducts beneath the Eurasia Plate. It is believed that on the day of the tsunami, the Eurasia Plate moved upward a small amount at first and then jumped violently. When this occurred, a magnitude 9.0 earthquake occurred and caused the seafloor to rise 8 m in

some areas and a tsunami to form. When the earthquake happened, waves formed on the surface of the water. These waves were seen by satellite and looked no bigger than 1 m high. However, when the waves reached the coast of Sumatra about 2 hours later, they were about 30 m in height (Geist et al. 2006).

In this section and the following sections, the writer discusses the types of harm caused by the tsunami

Loss of Life and Property

More than 1 million people were displaced because of the tsunami's environmental impact, and more than 285,000 people were killed. The greatest loss of human life occurred along the coast of Sumatra. In addition, the tsunami caused over $10 billion worth of damage to houses, buildings, and farms (Szczucinski et al. 2006). Buildings have been reconstructed and improved since the disaster. To help protect houses from future tsunamis, openings have been built to create a path for the water to flow through. Low sea walls have also been created. These will reduce the force of the waves before they hit the shoreline (Lukkunprasit and Ruangrassamee 2008).

Environmental Impacts

Erosion

In the countries affected by the tsunami, major coastal erosion occurred. The two main causes of the erosion were wave scour and subsidence. Wave scour is caused when waves hit the coast with enough force to carry sediment displaced by the wave back out to sea. Subsidence is a decrease in elevation of the land, generally caused by the depletion of water that underlies the area

that subsided. In some areas along the coast, human activity such as cast mining had already caused the ground to subside. Therefore, when the waves hit the coast, the depressions were filled with salty water. This water sat in the depressions and contaminated the groundwater. In areas with flat beaches, there was a large amount of wave scour and erosion. The areas with flatter coastal regions also experienced inundation by seawater that extended between 340 m and 560 m inland. Along coasts with steep rocky cliff faces, the water was not able to travel inland more than 100 m (Figure 2).

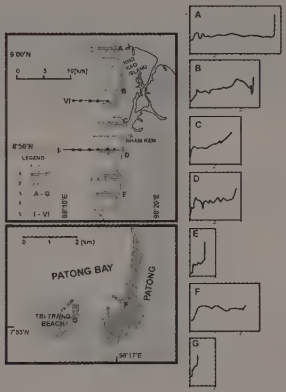


Figure 2. Points along the coast affected by the tsunami. Graphs A through G show inundation and run-up amounts. The vertical axis shows the height in meters the water attained above the average sea level. The horizontal axis shows the distance in meters the water traveled inland from the shoreline (Szczucinski et al. 2006).

Captions help readers understand graphs

Reefs and dunes also prevented run-up in some areas. If coral reefs or dunes are present, less run-up occurs because the reefs or dunes reduce the force of the waves (Szczucinski et al. 2006).

Tsunami Deposits

Most erosion occurred within 50 m of the shoreline. Within this high erosion area, no tsunami deposits could be found. However, beyond 50 m inland, tsunami deposits have been found. These deposits were composed of sand and marine sediments consisting of shells, corals, and microorganisms (Szczucinski et al. 2006). The thickness of these deposits varied based on the amount of run-up, the vegetation, the topography, and other obstructions. The average thickness of the tsunami deposits was 8 cm. However, in some places, the deposits were 52 cm thick and completely covered some of the vegetation. Figure 3 shows a typical tsunami deposit that occurred in an inundation zone. The bottom layer is the original layer of soil; on top of this layer is the tsunami deposit with layers of coarse sand and fine sand (Szczucinski et al. 2006). Large amounts of salt and heavy metals were found in the tsunami deposits. Of great concern were the deposits that included potassium, sodium, copper, lead, and zinc, substances that could reach toxic levels in crops (Szczucinski et al. 2006). In addition, small amounts of mercury sulfide were discovered in the seawater in the depressions that were due to cast mining in the area. Because it is highly toxic, mercury sulfide can pose a threat to

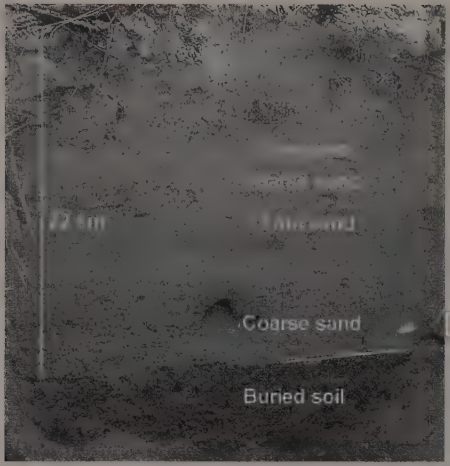


Figure 3. Cross section of a typical tsunami deposit (Szczucinski et al. 2006)

humans and other organisms. It can also leak into the groundwater system and pollute drinking water (Boszke and Astel 2007).

Salinity

The high salinity of the ocean water in the tsunami and of the tsunami deposits greatly affected groundwater and inland surfaces. Over time, the salt in tsunami deposits seeped into the soil and eventually into the groundwater, thus polluting it. The amount of pollution depended on the extent of inundation in an area. Groundwater and wells were also polluted by fecal bacteria

Following CSE style, the writer uses abbreviations for units of measurement

that leaked into the soil when septic systems were damaged by the tsunami (Szczucinski et al. 2006).

Ecosystems

Ecosystems were greatly affected by the tsunami. Coral reefs were destroyed, damaged, or moved. The closer the reefs were to the shoreline, the more they were affected by wave impact and backwash. Another part of the ecosystem that was destroyed was the sea grass beds, which are important sources of income for local fisherman and fishing companies. The beds were buried under sand from inland erosion and backwash (Szczucinski et al. 2006).

Vegetation

Mangrove trees located close to the shoreline were completely destroyed, while mangrove trees further inland experienced little to no damage. When the high-energy wave hit the mangroves close to the shoreline, it had a devastating effect because they have not evolved to withstand such conditions. Even though mangrove trees near the coast were destroyed, they helped protect vast areas of land from great damage. In areas where these trees were abundant, the amount of damage done by the water was greatly reduced (Yanagisawa et al. 2009). Many other types of trees were pulled out of the ground by the force of the wave (Szczucinski et al. 2006).

Other vegetation was affected by the salinity of the ocean water in the wave and the large amounts of tsunami deposits. Plants either withered from the intake of the salty water or died because they were buried under the tsunami deposits.

Conclusion

The amount of damage that different areas received was determined by multiple factors. For example, the bathymetry (the depth of water along the shoreline) and the morphology of the shoreline affected the amount of force the tsunami had when it hit the coast. If an area had offshore coral reefs or coastal mangroves, the amount of erosion and damage inland was often reduced. However, within 50 days of the tsunami, ecosystems in areas like Thailand were already beginning to heal and to rebuild themselves, and about 4 months after the event, water, animals, and sea grass, which had been depleted, were beginning to return to their original quantities (Szczucinski et al. 2006). Scientists have been able to study damage in different areas and determine factors that increase or decrease it.

By studying this tsunami, scientists have become able to predict which areas are prone to tsunami effects. They have also gained information that helps them predict the orientation of tsunami waves, where they will go and how far they will travel inland (Geist et al. 2006). Early prediction, along with the construction of seawalls and the improvement of houses, should lessen the impact of any future tsunami in the area devastated by the Thailand Tsunami.

The writer describes what was learned from studying the effects of the tsunami

References

At-a-glance: countries hit. 2005 Dec 22. BBC News [Internet]. [cited 2011 Jan 9]; [1 p.]. Available from: http://news.bbc.co.uk/2/hi/4126019.stm

Boszke, L, Astel A. 2007. Fractionation of mercury in sediments from coastal zone inundated by tsunami and in freshwater sediments from the rivers. J Environ Sci Health. 42(7):847–858.

Geist, EL, Titov, VV, Synolakis, CE. 2006. Tsunami: wave of change. Sci Am. 294(1):56–63.

Lukkunprasit P, Ruangrassamee, A. 2008. Building damage in Thailand in the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami and clues for tsunami-resistant design. IES J. 1(1Pt A: Civ & Struct Eng.):17–30.

Szczucinski W, Chaimanee N, Niedzielski G, Rachlewicz G, Saisuttichai D, Tepsuwan T, Lorenc S, Siepak J. 2006. Environmental and geological impacts of the 26 December 2004 tsunami in coastal zone of Thailand—overview of short- and long-term effects. Pol J of Environ Stud. 15(5):793–810.

Yanagisawa H, Koshimura S, Goto K, Miyagi T, Imamura F, Ruangrassamee A, Tanavud C. 2009. Damage to mangrove forest by 2004 tsunami at Pakarang Cape and Namkem, Thailand. Pol J of Environ Stud. 18(1):35–42.

G

GRAMMAR

17 Sentence Essentials 246

- a Parts of speech 246
- b Subjects and predicates 255
- c Complements 255
- d Phrases 258
- e Clauses 264

18 Sentence Fragments 269

- a Recognizing sentence fragments 269
- b Phrases as sentence fragments 270
- c Dependent clauses as sentence fragments 271

19 Comma Splices and Fused Sentences 272

- a Locating comma splices and fused sentences 273
- b Revising comma splices and fused sentences 274
- c Divided quotations 276

20 Verbs 278

- a Verb forms 278
- b Verb tenses 283
- c Verb tense consistency 284
- d Voice 286
- e Mood 288
- f Subject-verb agreement 291

21 Pronouns 296

- a Recognizing pronouns 296
- b Pronoun case 300
- c Pronoun-antecedent agreement 305
- d Clear pronoun reference 307
- e Pronoun consistency 309
- f Use of first-person and second-person pronouns 311

22 Modifiers 312

- a Recognizing modifiers 312
- b Comparatives and superlatives 316
- c Double negatives 317
- d Placement of modifiers 318
- e Dangling modifiers 320

17 Sentence Essentials

When you think of the word *grammar*, you might also think of the word *rule*—a regulation you must obey. But *rule* has another meaning: "a statement of what should be done to gain some benefit," as in *An important rule to follow when exercising is to drink plenty of water.* Grammar rules provide you with beneficial advice on how to achieve success as a writer. Because grammar rules describe how language is commonly or conventionally used, to follow grammar rules simply means to write in a way that is considered appropriate by a specific set of readers. This chapter covers concepts of grammar that will help you understand how to write clear, convincing, and conventional sentences.

17a Parts of speech

When you look up a word in the dictionary, you will often find it followed by one or more of these labels: *adj.*, *adv.*, *conj.*, *interj.*, *n.*, *prep.*, *pron.*, and *v.* (or *vb.*). These are the abbreviations for the traditional eight parts of speech: *adjective*, *adverb*, *conjunction*, *interjection*, *noun*, *preposition*, *pronoun*, and *verb.*

(1) Verbs

Verbs that indicate action (*walk*, *drive*, *study*) are called **action verbs**. Verbs that express being or experiencing are called **linking verbs**, which link a subject to a subject complement; they include *be*, *seem*, and *become* and the sensory verbs *look*, *taste*, *smell*, *feel*, and *sound.* Both action verbs and linking verbs are frequently accompanied by **auxiliary** or **helping verbs**, which

come before the main verb and add shades of meaning, such as information about time (*will* study this afternoon), ability (*can* study), or obligation (*must* study).

THINKING RHETORICALLY
VERBS

Decide which of the following sentences evokes a clearer image:

- The team captain **was** absolutely ecstatic.
- Grinning broadly, the team captain **shot** both her arms into the air.

You probably chose the sentence with the action verb *shot* rather than the sentence with *was*. When their goal is vibrant imagery, successful writers avoid using the verb *be* in any of its forms (*am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, or *been*). Instead, they use vivid action verbs.

(2) Nouns

Nouns usually name people, places, things, and ideas. **Proper nouns** are specific names: *Bill Gates*, *Redmond*, *Microsoft Corporation*. **Common nouns** refer to any member of a class or category: *person*, *city*, *company*. There are three types of common nouns.

- **Count nouns** refer to people, places, things, and ideas that can be counted. They have singular and plural forms: *boy*, *boys*; *car*, *cars*; *concept*, *concepts*.
- **Noncount nouns** refer to things or ideas that cannot be counted: *furniture*, *information*.
- **Collective nouns** are nouns that refer to groups and that can be either singular or plural, depending on the context of the sentence: *The* ***committee*** *published its report* [singular]. *The* ***committee*** *disagree about their duties* [plural].

THINKING RHETORICALLY

NOUNS

Nouns like *entertainment* and *nutrition* that refer to concepts are called **abstract nouns**. In contrast, nouns like *guitar* and *apple* that refer to things perceivable by the senses are called **concrete nouns**. When your rhetorical situation calls for the use of abstractions, balance them with tangible details conveyed through concrete nouns.

(3) Pronouns

Most pronouns (*it*, *he*, *she*, *they*, and many others) replace **antecedents**—nouns or noun phrases that have already been mentioned.

➤ My parents bought the cheap, decrepit house because **they** thought **it** had charm.

A pronoun and its antecedent may be found either in the same sentence or in separate, though usually adjacent, sentences.

➤ The students collaborated on a research project last year. **They** even presented their findings at a national conference.

The pronouns in the preceding examples are **personal pronouns**. For a discussion of other types of pronouns, see chapter **21**.

(4) Adjectives

Adjectives most commonly modify nouns: *spicy* food, *special* price. Sometimes they modify pronouns: *blue* ones, anyone *thin*. Adjectives usually answer one of these questions: Which one? What kind of . . . ? How many? What color or size or shape (and so on)? Although adjectives usually precede the nouns they modify, they occasionally follow them: *enough*

time, time *enough*. Adjectives may also follow linking verbs such as *be*, *seem*, and *become*:

The moon is **full** tonight. He seems **shy**.

Articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are also used before nouns. The article *a* is used before a consonant sound (**a** yard, **a** university, **a** VIP); *an* is used before a vowel sound (**an** apple, **an** hour, **an** NFL team).

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

ARTICLE USAGE

English has two types of articles: indefinite and definite. The **indefinite articles** *a* and *an* indicate that a singular noun is used in a general way, as when you introduce the noun for the first time or when you define a word.

- Pluto is **a** dwarf planet.
- There has been **a** controversy over the classification of Pluto.
- **A** planet is a celestial body orbiting a star such as our sun.

The **definite article**, *the,* is used before a noun that has already been introduced or when a reference is obvious. *The* is also used before a noun that is related in form or meaning to a word previously mentioned.

- Scientists distinguish between planets and dwarf planets. One of **the** dwarf planets in our solar system is Pluto.
- Scientists are not sure how to classify some celestial bodies. **The** classification of Pluto proved to be controversial.

The definite article also appears before a noun considered unique, such as *moon*, *universe*, and *sky*.

- **The** moon is full tonight.

(5) Adverbs

Adverbs most frequently modify verbs. They provide information about time, manner, place, and frequency, thus answering one of these questions: When? How? Where? How often?

- The conference starts **tomorrow**. [time]
- I **rapidly** calculated the cost. [manner]
- We met **here**. [place]
- They **often** work late on Thursdays. [frequency]

Adverbs that modify verbs can often move from one position in a sentence to another.

- He **carefully** removed the radio collar.
- He removed the radio collar **carefully**.

Adverbs also modify adjectives and other adverbs by intensifying or otherwise qualifying the meanings of those words.

- I was **extremely** curious. [modifying an adjective]
- The team played **surprisingly** well. [modifying an adverb]

THINKING RHETORICALLY
ADVERBS

What do the adverbs add to the following sentences?

- The scientist **delicately** places the slide under the microscope.
- "You're late," he whispered **vehemently**.
- She is **wistfully** hopeful.

Adverbs can help you portray an action, indicate how someone is speaking, and add detail to a description.

(6) Prepositions

A **preposition** is a word that combines with a noun and any of its modifiers to provide additional detail—often answering one of these questions: Where? When?

➤ **In** the early afternoon, we walked **through** our old neighborhood. [answers the questions *When?* and *Where?*]

A preposition may also combine with a pronoun.

➤ We walked **through** it.

A grammar rule that has caused much controversy over the years is the one that advises against ending a sentence with a preposition. Most professional writers now follow this rule only when they adopt a formal tone. If their rhetorical situation calls for an informal tone, they will not hesitate to place a preposition at the end of a sentence.

➤ He found friends **on** whom he could depend. [formal]

➤ He found friends he could depend **on**. [informal]

SOME COMMON PREPOSITIONS

about	behind	for	of	to
above	between	from	on	toward
after	by	in	out	under
as	despite	into	past	until
at	during	like	since	up
before	except	near	through	with

Phrasal prepositions consist of more than one word.

➤ **Except for** the last day, it was a wonderful trip.

SOME COMMON PHRASAL PREPOSITIONS

according to	due to	in spite of
as for	except for	instead of
because of	in addition to	with regard to

(7) Conjunctions

Conjunctions are connectors; they fall into four categories: coordinating, correlative, subordinating, and adverbial. A **coordinating conjunction** connects similar words or groups of words; that is, it generally links a word to a word, a phrase to a phrase (**17d**), or a clause to a clause (**17e**). There are seven coordinating conjunctions. Use the made-up word *fanboys* to help you remember them.

F	A	N	B	O	Y	S
for	and	nor	but	or	yet	so

- tired **yet** excited [*Yet* joins two words and signals contrast.]
- in the boat **or** on the pier [*Or* joins two phrases and marks them as alternatives.]
- We did not share a language, **but** somehow we communicated. [*But* joins two independent clauses and signals contrast.]

In the example sentence above, *but* links two independent clauses and thus is preceded by a comma. A coordinating conjunction such as *but* may also link independent clauses that stand alone as sentences.

> The momentum in the direction of globalization seems too powerful to buck, the economic logic unmatchable. **But** in a region where jobs are draining away, and where an ethic of self-reliance remains a dim, vestigial, but honored memory, it seems at least an outside possibility. —**BILL MCKIBBEN, "Small World"**

A **correlative conjunction** (or **correlative**) consists of two parts. The most common correlatives are *both . . . and*, *either . . . or*, *neither . . . nor*, and *not only . . . but also.*

- **Not only** did they run ten miles, **but** they **also** swam twenty laps. [*Not only . . . but also* joins two independent clauses and signals addition.]

Generally, a correlative conjunction links similar structures. The following sentence has been revised because the correlative conjunction was linking a phrase to a clause.

➤ **Not only** ~~saving~~ *did he save* the lives of the accident victims, **but** he **also** prevented many spinal injuries.

A **subordinating conjunction** introduces a dependent clause (**17e**). It also carries a specific meaning; for example, it may indicate cause, concession, condition, purpose, or time. A dependent clause that begins a sentence is followed by a comma.

➤ **Unless** the project receives funding, the research will stop. [*Unless* signals a condition.]

➤ She studied Spanish **when** she worked in Costa Rica. [*When* signals time.]

SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

after	before	once	unless
although	even if	since	until
as if	even though	so that	when
as though	if	than	whether
because	in that	though	while

Adverbial conjunctions—such as *however*, *nevertheless*, *then*, and *therefore*—link independent clauses (**17e**). These conjunctions, also called **conjunctive adverbs**, signal relationships such as cause, condition, and contrast. Adverbial conjunctions are set off by commas. An independent clause preceding an adverbial conjunction may end in a semicolon or a period.

➤ The senator thought the plan was reasonable**; however,** the voters did not.

➤ The senator thought the plan was reasonable**. However,** the voters did not.

- The senator thought the plan was reasonable. The voters, **however,** did not.
- The senator thought the plan was reasonable. The voters did not, **however**.

ADVERBIAL CONJUNCTIONS

also	indeed	moreover	still
finally	instead	nevertheless	then
furthermore	likewise	nonetheless	therefore
however	meanwhile	otherwise	thus

(8) Interjections

Interjections most commonly express an emotion such as surprise or dread. Interjections that come before a sentence end in a period or an exclamation point.

- **Oh.** Now I understand.
- **Wow!** Your design is astounding.

Interjections that begin or interrupt a sentence are set off by commas.

- **Hey,** what are you doing?
- The solution, **alas,** was not as simple as I had hoped it would be.

EXERCISE 17.1

Identify the part of speech for each word in the sentences below.

1. Hey, are you a fan of both anime and manga?
2. If you are, you should join the University Anime and Manga Club.
3. Every Tuesday at noon, we watch current anime or swap favorite manga.
4. Memberships are free; however, donations are always welcome.
5. Whenever you have time, you can simply look for us in the Student Union.

17b Subjects and predicates

A sentence consists of two parts:

SUBJECT + PREDICATE

The **subject** is generally someone or something that either performs an action or is described. The **predicate** expresses the action initiated by the subject or gives information about the subject.

The landlord + renovated the apartment.
[The subject performs an action; the predicate expresses the action.]

They + had sounded reasonable.
[The subject is described; the predicate gives information about the subject.]

The central components of the subject and the predicate are often called the **simple subject** (the main noun or pronoun) and the **simple predicate** (the main verb and any auxiliary verbs). They are underlined in the examples above.

Compound subjects and **compound predicates** include a connecting word (conjunction) such as *and*, *or*, or *but*.

- Republicans **and** Democrats are debating this issue. [compound subject]
- The candidate stated his views on abortion **but** did not discuss stem-cell research. [compound predicate]

17c Complements

Complements are parts of the predicate required by the verb to make a sentence complete. A complement is generally a pronoun, a noun, or a noun with modifiers.

➤ The committee chair introduced
- **her**. [pronoun]
- **Sylvia Holbrook**. [noun]
- **the new but well-known member**. [noun with modifiers]

There are four different complements: direct objects, indirect objects, subject complements, and object complements.

The **direct object** either receives the action of the verb or shows the result of the action.

➤ Steve McQueen drove **a Ford Mustang** in the movie *Bullitt*.

➤ I. M. Pei designed **the East Building of the National Gallery**.

Indirect objects typically name the person(s) receiving or benefiting from the action indicated by the verb. Verbs that often take indirect objects include *buy*, *give*, *lend*, *sell*, *send*, and *write*.

➤ The supervisor gave **the new employees** computers.
[*To whom* were the computers given?]

➤ She wrote **them** recommendation letters.
[*For whom* were the recommendation letters written?]

The **subject complement** follows a linking verb. The most common linking verb is *be* (*am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *been*). Other linking verbs are *become, seem,* and *appear* and the sensory verbs *feel*, *look*, *smell*, *sound*, and *taste*. A subject complement can be a pronoun, a noun, or a noun with modifiers. It can also be an adjective.

➤ The winner was
- **you**. [pronoun]
- **Harry Solano**. [noun]
- **the lucky person with the highest score**. [noun with modifiers]
- **ecstatic**. [adjective]

The **object complement** helps complete the meaning of a verb such as *call*, *elect*, *make*, *name*, or *paint*. The object complement can be a noun or an adjective, along with any modifiers.

➤ Reporters called the rookie **the best player**. [noun with modifiers]

➤ The strike left the fans **somewhat disappointed**. [adjective with modifier]

EXERCISE 17.2

Identify the subject and the predicate in each sentence. Then, looking at just the predicate, identify the type of complement the sentence contains.

1. A naturalist gave us a short lecture on the Cascade Mountains.
2. He showed slides of mountain lakes and heather meadows.
3. Douglas fir predominates in the Cascade forests.
4. Mountaineers and artists consider the North Cascades the most dramatic mountains in the range.
5. Timberlines are low because of the short growing season.
6. Many volcanoes are in the Cascades.
7. Mt. Rainier is the highest volcano in the range.
8. Many visitors to this area hike the Pacific Crest Trail.
9. My friend lent me his map of the trail.
10. The trail begins in southern California, passes through Oregon and Washington, and ends in British Columbia.

17d Phrases

A **phrase** is a sequence of grammatically related words without a subject, a predicate, or both. A phrase is categorized according to its most important word.

(1) Noun phrases

A noun phrase consists of a main noun and its modifiers. It can serve as a subject or as a complement. It can also be the object of a preposition such as *in*, *of*, *on*, *at*, or *to*.

- **The heavy frost** killed **many fruit trees**. [subject and direct object]
- **My cousin** is **an organic farmer**. [subject and subject complement]
- **His farm** is in **eastern Oregon**. [subject and object of the preposition *in*]

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

NUMBER AGREEMENT IN NOUN PHRASES

Some words must agree in number with the nouns they precede. The words *a*, *an*, *this*, and *that* are used before singular nouns; *some*, *few*, *these*, *those*, and *many* are used before plural nouns.

- **an/that** opportunity [singular noun]
- **some/few/those** opportunities [plural noun]

The words *less* and *much* precede nouns representing abstract concepts or masses that cannot be counted (noncount nouns).

- **less** freedom, **much** water [noncount nouns]

(2) Verb phrases

A verb is essential to the predicate of a sentence. It generally expresses action or a state of being. Besides a main verb, a **verb phrase** includes one or more **auxiliary verbs**, sometimes called *helping verbs*, such as *be*, *have*, *do*, *will*, and *should.*

➤ The passengers **have deplaned**. [auxiliary verb + main verb]

(3) Verbal phrases

A **verbal phrase** differs from a verb phrase in that the verb form in a verbal phrase serves as a noun or a modifier rather than as a verb.

➤ He was **reading** the story aloud. [*Reading* is part of the verb phrase *was reading*.]

➤ **Reading** is fundamental to academic success. [*Reading* serves as a noun. COMPARE: **It** is fundamental to academic success.]

➤ The student **reading** aloud is an education major. [*Reading aloud* modifies *the student*.]

Verbal phrases are divided into three types: gerund phrases, participial phrases, and infinitive phrases.

Gerund phrases include a verb form ending in *-ing*. A gerund phrase serves as a noun, usually functioning as the subject or object in a sentence.

➤ **Writing a bestseller** was her only goal. [subject]

➤ My neighbor enjoys **writing about distant places.** [object]

Because gerund phrases act as nouns, pronouns can replace them.

That was her only goal. My neighbor enjoys **it**.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

GERUNDS

What is the difference between the following sentences?

- They bundle products together, which often results in higher consumer costs.
- Bundling products together often results in higher consumer costs.

In the first sentence, the actor, *they*, is the focus. In the second sentence, the action of the gerund phrase, *bundling products together*, is the focus. As you revise, ask yourself whether you want to emphasize actors or actions.

Participial phrases include either a present participle (a verb form ending in *-ing*) or a past participle (a verb form ending in *-ed* for regular verbs or another form for irregular verbs). Participial phrases function as modifiers.

- **Fearing a drought**, the farmers used less irrigation water.
- All the farmers in the area, **plagued by drought**, used less irrigation water.
- Farmers conserved water, **fearing a drought in late summer**.

Remember that gerund and participial phrases differ in function. A gerund phrase functions as a noun; a participial phrase functions as a modifier.

- **Working together** can spur creativity. [gerund phrase]
- **Working together**, the students designed their own software. [participial phrase]

A present participle (*-ing* form) cannot function alone as the main verb in a sentence. It must be accompanied by a form of *be* (*am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, or *were*).

are
➤ They **thinking** about the future.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

PARTICIPIAL PHRASES

If some of your sentences sound monotonous or choppy, try combining them by using participial phrases.

Crowded along the city streets, fans celebrated
➤ ~~Fans crowded along the city streets. They were celebrating~~ their team's first state championship.

Infinitive phrases serve as nouns or as modifiers. The form of the infinitive is distinct—the infinitive marker *to* followed by the base form of the verb.

➤ The company intends **to hire twenty new employees**. [noun]

➤ We discussed his plan **to use a new packing process**. [modifier of the noun *plan*]

➤ **To attract customers**, the company changed its advertising strategy. [modifier of the verb *changed*]

Some instructors advise against putting words between the infinitive marker *to* and the base form of the verb.

Under the circumstances, the
➤ ~~The~~ jury was unable to~~, under the circumstances,~~ convict the defendant.

This is good advice to remember if the intervening words create a cumbersome sentence. However, most writers today recognize that a single word splitting an infinitive can provide emphasis.

➤ He did not expect to actually publish his work.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUNDS AND/OR INFINITIVES

Some verbs in English can be followed by a gerund, some can be followed by an infinitive, and some can be followed by either.

Followed by a Gerund

admit avoid consider deny dislike enjoy finish

➤ She **enjoys playing** the piano.

Followed by an Infinitive

agree decide deserve hope need plan promise seem

➤ She **promised to play** the piano for us.

Followed by Either a Gerund or an Infinitive

begin continue like prefer remember stop try

➤ She **likes to play** the piano. ➤ She **likes playing** the piano.

Although either a gerund phrase or an infinitive phrase can follow these verbs, the resulting sentences may differ in meaning.

➤ We **stopped discussing** the plan. [The discussion has ended.]

➤ We **stopped to discuss** the plan. [The discussion has not yet started.]

(4) Prepositional phrases

Prepositional phrases provide information about time, place, cause, manner, and so on. They can also answer one of these questions: Which one? What kind of . . . ?

➤ **With great feeling**, Martin Luther King expressed his dream **of freedom**.

[*With great feeling* describes the way the speech was delivered, and *of freedom* specifies the kind of dream.]

➤ King delivered his most famous speech **at a demonstration in Washington, DC**.
[Both *at a demonstration* and *in Washington, DC* provide information about place.]

A prepositional phrase consists of a **preposition** (a word such as *at*, *of*, or *in*) and a pronoun, noun, or noun phrase (called the **object of the preposition**). A prepositional phrase modifies another element in the sentence.

➤ Everyone **in class** went to the play. [modifier of the pronoun *everyone*]

➤ Some students met the professor **after the play**. [modifier of the verb *met*]

(5) Appositives

An **appositive** is most often a noun or a noun phrase that refers to the same person, place, thing, or idea as a preceding noun or noun phrase but in different words. When the appositive simply specifies the referent, no commas are used.

➤ Cormac McCarthy's novel ***The Road*** won a Pulitzer Prize. [specifies which of McCarthy's books won the award]

When the appositive provides extra details, commas set it off.

➤ *The Road*, **a novel by Cormac McCarthy,** won a Pulitzer Prize. [provides an extra detail about the book]

(6) Absolute phrases

An **absolute phrase** is usually a noun phrase modified by a prepositional phrase, an adjective phrase, or a participial phrase.

➤ **Her guitar in the front seat**, she pulled away from the curb.

➤ **More vaccine having arrived**, the staff scheduled its distribution.

The first absolute phrase provides details; the second expresses cause.

EXERCISE 17.3

Label the underlined phrases in the following sentences as noun phrases, verb phrases, prepositional phrases, or verbal phrases. For verbal phrases, specify the type: gerund, participial, or infinitive. When a long phrase includes a short phrase, identify just the long phrase. Finally, identify any appositive phrases or absolute phrases in the sentences.

1. After the Second World War, fifty-one countries formed the United Nations, an international organization dedicated to peace, tolerance, and cooperation.
2. The Charter of the United Nations was written in 1945.
3. According to this charter, the United Nations may address a wide range of issues.
4. The United Nations devotes most of its energies to protecting human rights, maintaining peace, and encouraging social development.
5. To reach its goals, the United Nations depends on funding from its member states.
6. Its blue flag easily recognized everywhere, the United Nations now includes 193 member states.
7. Symbolizing peace, the emblem on the flag is a map enclosed by olive branches.

17e Clauses

(1) Independent clauses

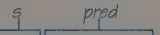
A **clause** is a group of related words that contains a subject and a predicate. An **independent clause**, sometimes called a *main clause*, has the same grammatical structure as a simple sentence: both contain a subject and a predicate.

➤ The students earned high grades.

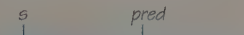
An independent clause can stand alone as a complete sentence. Other clauses can be added to independent clauses to form longer, more detailed sentences.

(2) Dependent clauses

A **dependent clause** also has a subject and a predicate. However, it cannot stand alone as a complete sentence because of the word introducing it—usually a relative pronoun or a subordinating conjunction.



➤ The athlete **who placed first** grew up in Argentina. [relative pronoun]



➤ She received the gold medal **because she performed flawlessly**. [subordinating conjunction]

Noun clauses are dependent clauses that serve as subjects or objects. They are introduced by *if*, *that*, or a *wh-* word such as *why*, *what*, or *when*. To decide whether a clause is a noun clause, try replacing it with a pronoun such as *it* or *this*.

➤ **What the witness said** may not be true. [subject]

➤ We do not understand **why they did it**. [direct object]

When no misunderstanding would result, the word *that* can be omitted from the beginning of a clause.

➤ The scientist said **she was moving to Australia**. [*that* omitted]

However, *that* should always be retained when there are two noun clauses.

➤ The scientist said **that she was moving to Australia** and **that her research team was planning to accompany her**. [*that* retained in both noun clauses]

An **adjectival clause**, or **relative clause**, follows a pronoun, noun, or noun phrase and answers one of these questions: Which one? What kind of . . . ? Such clauses, which nearly always follow the words they modify, usually begin with a **relative pronoun** (*who*, *whom*, *that*, *which*, or *whose*) but sometimes start with a **relative adverb** (*when*, *where*, or *why*).

- Nobody likes news reports **that pry into someone's private life**. [answers the question *What kind of news reports?*]
- Students **who have good study habits** begin their research early. [answers the question *Which students?*]

A relative pronoun can be omitted as long as the meaning of the sentence is still clear.

- Mother Teresa was someone **the whole world admired**. [*Whom*, the direct object of the clause, has been omitted: the whole world admired *whom*.]
- She was someone **who cared more about serving than being served**. [*Who* cannot be omitted because it is the subject of the clause.]

An **adverbial clause** usually answers one of the following questions: Where? When? Why? How? How frequently? In what manner? Adverbial clauses are introduced by subordinating conjunctions such as *because*, *although*, and *when*.

- **When the need arises**, the company hires new writers. [answers the question *How frequently does the company hire new writers?*]
- She acted **as though she cared only about herself**. [answers the question *How did she act?*]

THINKING RHETORICALLY

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

In an adverbial clause that refers to time or establishes a fact, both the subject and any form of the verb *be* can be omitted. Using such **elliptical constructions** will make your writing more concise.

➤ **Though tired**, they continued to study for the exam.
[COMPARE: **Though they were tired**, they continued to study for the exam.]

Be sure that the omitted subject of an elliptical clause is the same as the subject of the independent clause. Otherwise, revise either the adverbial clause or the main clause.

➤ While ^ *I was* reviewing your report, a few questions occurred to me.

OR

➤ While reviewing your report, ^ *I thought of* a few questions ~~occurred to me~~.

EXERCISE 17.4

1. Identify the dependent clauses in the following paragraph.
2. Identify the underlined words as coordinating, correlative, subordinating, or adverbial conjunctions.

[1]If you live by the sword, you might die by the sword. [2]However, if you make your living by swallowing swords, you will not necessarily die by swallowing swords. [3]At least, this is the conclusion Brian Witcombe and Dan Meyer reached after they surveyed forty-six professional sword swallowers. [4](Brian Witcombe is a radiologist, and Dan Meyer is a famous sword swallower.) [5]Some of those surveyed mentioned that they had experienced either "sword throats" or chest pains, and others who let their swords drop to their stomachs described perforation of their innards, but the researchers could find no listing of a sword-swallowing mortality in the medical studies they reviewed. [6]The researchers did not inquire into the reasons for swallowing swords in the first place.

CHECKLIST FOR USING A GRAMMAR CHECKER

Most word-processing programs have features that help writers identify grammar errors as well as problems with usage and style, but these grammar checkers have significant limitations. A grammar checker will usually identify certain errors.

- fused sentences, sometimes called run-on sentences (chapter **19**)
- wordy or overly long sentences (chapter **30**)
- missing apostrophes in contractions (**33b**)

However, a grammar checker can easily miss many kinds of errors.

- sentence fragments (chapter **18**)
- dangling or misplaced modifiers (chapter **22**)
- problems with pronoun-antecedent agreement (chapter **21**)
- errors in subject-verb agreement (**20f**)
- misused or missing commas (chapter **31**)

Because these omissions can weaken your credibility as a writer, you should never rely solely on a grammar checker to find them. Furthermore, grammar checkers can mark as wrong some words or phrases that you have chosen deliberately.

Used carefully, a grammar checker can be a helpful tool, but keep the following advice in mind.

- Use a grammar checker only in addition to your own editing and proofreading.
- Always evaluate any sentences flagged by a grammar checker to determine whether there is, in fact, a problem.
- Adjust the settings on your grammar checker to look for specific types of errors. If you are using Microsoft Word, select Tools; then select either Spelling and Grammar or Options to customize your settings.
- Carefully review the revisions proposed by a grammar checker before accepting them. Sometimes the proposed revisions create new errors.

18 Sentence Fragments

As its name suggests, a **sentence fragment** is only a piece of a sentence; it is not complete.

18a Recognizing sentence fragments

A sentence is considered a fragment when it is incomplete in one of three ways. It is missing a subject *or* a verb, it is missing both, or it is a dependent clause. Most fragments can be attached to adjacent sentences.

MISSING VERB

Alternative medical treatment may include hypnosis. ~~—~~ the **The placement of a patient into a sleeplike state**.

MISSING SUBJECT

Derived from a word meaning "nervous sleep.," hypnotism ~~Hypnotism~~ actually refers to a type of focused attention.

NO SUBJECT OR VERB

Contrary to popular belief, the ~~The~~ hypnotic state differs from sleep. ~~**Contrary to popular belief.**~~

DEPENDENT CLAUSE

Most people can be hypnotized easily. , although ~~**Although**~~ **the depth of the trance for each person varies**.

18b Phrases as sentence fragments

A phrase is a group of words without a subject and/or predicate. When punctuated as a sentence (that is, with a period or other end punctuation), it becomes a fragment. To revise a phrase fragment, you can often attach it to a nearby sentence.

VERBAL PHRASE AS A FRAGMENT

➤ Early humans valued color. ~~Creating~~ , creating **permanent colors with natural pigments**.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE AS A FRAGMENT

➤ For years, the Scottish have dyed sweaters with soot. ~~Originally~~ , originally **from the chimneys of peat-burning stoves**.

APPOSITIVE PHRASE AS A FRAGMENT

➤ During the Renaissance, one of the most highly valued pigments was ultramarine. ~~An~~ an **extract from lapis lazuli**.

ABSOLUTE PHRASE AS A FRAGMENT

➤ The deciduous trees of New England are known for their brilliant autumn color. ~~Sugar~~ , sugar **maples dazzling tourists with their orange and red leaves**.

Instead of attaching a fragment to a nearby sentence, you can sometimes recast the fragment as a complete sentence.

FRAGMENT Humans painted themselves for a variety of purposes. **To attract a mate, to hide themselves from game or predators, or to signal aggression.**

REVISION Humans used color for a variety of purposes. For example, they painted themselves to attract a mate, to hide themselves from game or predators, or to signal aggression.

18c Dependent clauses as sentence fragments

A dependent clause is a group of words with both a subject and a predicate, but because it begins with a subordinating conjunction or a relative pronoun, it cannot stand alone as a sentence.

➤ More than two thousand people were aboard the *Titanic*. ~~**Which was the largest ocean liner in 1912.**~~ *which*

➤ The iceberg was no surprise. ~~**Because the *Titanic*'s wireless operators had received reports of ice in the area.**~~ *because*

You can also recast the fragment as a complete sentence by removing the subordinating conjunction or relative pronoun and supplying any missing elements.

➤ The iceberg was no surprise. The *Titanic*'s wireless operators had received reports of ice in the area.

THINKING RHETORICALLY
FRAGMENTS

When used judiciously, fragments—like short sentences—emphasize ideas or add surprise. However, fragments are generally permitted only when the rhetorical situation allows the use of a casual tone.

> **May. When the earth's Northern Hemisphere awakens from winter's sleep and all of nature bristles with the energies of new life.** My work has kept me indoors for months now. I'm not sure I'll ever get used to it.
>
> —KEN CAREY, *Flat Rock Journal: A Day in the Ozark Mountains*

EXERCISE 18.1

Follow the guidelines in this chapter to locate and revise the fragments in the following paragraph. If you find it necessary, make other improvements as well. Be prepared to explain your revisions.

[1]One of the most popular rides at any county fair or amusement park is the Ferris wheel. [2]The original Ferris wheel, designed by George Washington Gale Ferris, Jr., for a national exposition in 1893. [3]Rose to a height of 264 feet. [4]And accommodated 2,140 passengers. [5]Ferris's goal was to build something that would surpass in effect the Eiffel Tower. [6]Which was constructed just a few years earlier. [7]Though Ferris's plans were not immediately accepted. [8]Once they were, and the wheel opened to the public, it became an immediate success. [9]At times carrying thirty-eight thousand passengers a day. [10]Since the nineteenth century. [11]Engineers have designed taller and taller Ferris wheels. [12]The 541-foot Singapore Flyer holds the record, but the Beijing Great Wheel, currently under construction. [13]Will be over a hundred feet taller.

19 Comma Splices and Fused Sentences

A **comma splice**, or **comma fault**, refers to the incorrect use of a comma between two independent clauses (a clause including a subject and predicate that can stand alone as a complete sentence).

➤ Most stockholders favored the merger, but the management did not.

A **fused sentence**, or **run-on sentence**, consists of two independent clauses run together without any punctuation at all.

➤ The first section of the proposal was approved ; however, the budget will have to be resubmitted.

To revise a comma splice or a fused sentence, include appropriate punctuation and any necessary connecting words.

19a Locating comma splices and fused sentences

You can find comma splices and fused sentences by remembering that they commonly occur in certain contexts.

- With transitional words and phrases such as *however, therefore,* and *for example*

COMMA SPLICE The director is unable to meet you this week ; however, next week she has time on Tuesday.

- When an explanation or an example is given in the second sentence

FUSED SENTENCE The cultural center has a new collection of spear points. Many of them were donated by a retired anthropologist.

- When a positive clause follows a negative clause, or vice versa

COMMA SPLICE A World Cup victory is not just an everyday sporting event. It is a national celebration.

- When the subject of the second clause is a pronoun whose antecedent is in the preceding clause

FUSED SENTENCE Lake Baikal is located in southern Russia. It is 394 miles long. [The pronoun *it* refers to Lake Baikal.]

19b Revising comma splices and fused sentences

If you find comma splices or fused sentences in your writing, try one of the following methods to revise them.

(1) Link independent clauses with a comma and a coordinating conjunction

By linking clauses with a comma and a coordinating conjunction (*and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *for*, *so*, or *yet*), you signal the relationship between the clauses.

FUSED SENTENCE The diplomats will end their discussion on Friday, and they will submit their final decision on Monday.

COMMA SPLICE Some diplomats applauded the treaty, but others opposed it vehemently.

(2) Link independent clauses with a semicolon or a colon or separate them with a period

When you link independent clauses with a semicolon, the semicolon usually indicates addition or contrast. When you link clauses with a colon, the second clause serves as an explanation or an elaboration of the first. A period indicates that each clause is a complete sentence, distinct from surrounding sentences.

COMMA SPLICE Our division's reports are posted on our web page; hard copies are available by request.

COMMA SPLICE Our division's reports are posted on our web page. Hard copies are available by request.

FUSED SENTENCE Our mission statement is simple: we aim to provide good athletic gear at affordable prices.

(3) Recast an independent clause as a dependent clause or as a phrase

A dependent clause includes a subordinating conjunction such as *although* or *because*, which indicates how the dependent and independent clauses are related (in a cause-and-effect relationship, for example). A prepositional phrase includes a preposition such as *in*, *on*, or *because of* that may also signal a relationship directly. Verbal, appositive, and absolute phrases suggest relationships less directly because they do not include connecting words.

COMMA SPLICE *Because the* ~~The~~ wind had blown down power lines, the whole city was without electricity for several hours. [dependent clause]

COMMA SPLICE *Because of the downed* ~~The wind had blown down~~ power lines, the whole city was without electricity for several hours. [prepositional phrase]

COMMA SPLICE *The wind having* ~~The wind had~~ blown down power lines, the whole city was without electricity for several hours. [absolute phrase]

(4) Integrate one clause into the other

When you integrate clauses, you will generally retain the important details but omit or change some words.

FUSED SENTENCE The proposal covers all *the points except assessment procedures.* ~~but one point it does not describe how the project will be assessed.~~

(5) Use transitional words or phrases to link independent clauses

Another way to revise fused sentences and comma splices is to use transitional words and phrases such as *however*, *on the contrary*, and *in the meantime*.

FUSED SENTENCE Sexual harassment is not an issue for just women. After all, men can be sexually harassed too.

COMMA SPLICE The word *status* refers to relative position within a group; however, it is often used to indicate only positions of prestige.

19c Divided quotations

When dividing quotations with signal phrases such as *he said* or *she asked*, use a period between independent clauses.

COMMA SPLICE "Beauty brings copies of itself into being," states Elaine Scarry, ~~"it~~. "It makes us draw it, take photographs of it, or describe it to other people."

Both parts of the quotation are complete sentences, so the signal phrase is attached to the first, and the sentence is punctuated with a period.

EXERCISE 19.1

Revise each comma splice or fused sentence in the following paragraph. Some sentences may not need revision.

[1]In *The Politics of Happiness*, Derek Bok, former president of Harvard University, discusses recent findings that researchers studying well-being have reported. [2]He mentions, for example, research showing that measurements of happiness in the United States have not risen much in the last fifty years, people are responding to survey questions about their levels of happiness in much the same way as they did in 1960. [3]Even though average incomes have grown, levels of happiness have not. [4]Bok believes that people become accustomed to higher standards of living they do not realize how quickly they adapt and so do not become happier. [5]Bok recognizes that not everyone's income has increased but notes that, strangely enough, the disparity between rich and poor has not caused increased dissatisfaction among the poor, he cites further studies showing that citizens in countries with costly welfare programs are not necessarily happier than citizens in countries with welfare programs that are not as generous. [6]Because of these studies, Bok suggests that our government not focus on economic growth alone as an indicator of well-being but that it instead take into account current research on what makes people happy. [7]This discussion "is bound to contribute to the evolution of society and the refinement of its values," he explains, "that alone will be an accomplishment of enduring importance to humankind" (212).

20 Verbs

Choosing verbs to convey your message precisely is the first step toward writing clear sentences.

20a Verb forms

Regular verbs have four forms: a base form, an *-s* form (third-person singular in the present tense), an *-ing* form (present participle), and an *-ed* form (past participle).

VERB FORMS OF REGULAR VERBS

Base Form	*-s* Form (Present Tense, Third Person, Singular)	*-ing* Form (Present Participle)	*-ed* Form (Past Form or Past Participle)
work	works	working	worked
watch	watches	watching	watched
apply	applies	applying	applied
stop	stops	stopping	stopped

CAUTION

When verbs are followed by words with similar sounds, you may find their endings (*-s* or *-ed*) difficult to hear. In addition, these verb endings may seem unfamiliar because your dialect does not have them. Nonetheless, you should use *-s* and *-ed* when you write for an audience that expects you to include these endings.

➤ She ~~seem~~ *seems* satisfied with the report.

➤ We were ~~suppose~~ *supposed* to receive the results yesterday.

Irregular verbs are not as predictable as regular verbs. The past form and the past participle seldom carry the *-ed* suffix. Most irregular verbs, such as *write*, have forms similar to some of those for regular verbs: base form (*write*), *-s* form (*writes*), and *-ing* form (*writing*). However, the past form (*wrote*) and the past participle (*written*) differ from the regular forms.

VERB FORMS OF COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS

Base Form	Past Form	Past Participle
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awaked, awoke	awaked, awoken
be	was/were	been
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
buy	bought	bought
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
dive	dived, dove	dived
do	did	done
dream	dreamed, dreamt	dreamed, dreamt
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
get	got	gotten, got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
hang (suspend)	hung	hung
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known

(*continues on page 280*)

(*continued*) **VERB FORMS OF COMMON IRREGULAR VERBS**

lay (to place)	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lie (to recline)	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
pay	paid	paid
prove	proved	proved, proven
rise	rose	risen
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
set	set	set
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
sneak	snuck, sneaked	snuck, sneaked
speak	spoke	spoken
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
tell	told	told
throw	threw	thrown
wear	wore	worn
write	wrote	written

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

OMISSION OF FORMS OF *BE* IN OTHER LANGUAGES

Forms of the verb *be* can be omitted in some languages. In English, however, they are necessary.

- Sentence without an auxiliary verb: The population is growing.
- Sentence without a linking verb: It is quite large.

A **prepositional verb** is a frequently occurring combination of a verb and a preposition. *Rely on*, *think about*, *look like*, and *ask for* are all prepositional verbs. A **phrasal verb** is a combination of a verb and a particle such as *up*, *out*, or *on*. A **particle** resembles an adverb or a preposition, but it is so closely associated with a verb that together they form a unit of meaning. *Carry out*, *make up*, *take on*, and *turn out* are common phrasal verbs. Notice that each one has a meaning that can be expressed in a single word: *do*, *form*, *accept*, and *attend*.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

PHRASAL VERBS

Definitions of phrasal verbs are sometimes difficult to determine. For example, *find out* means "to discover." If you are unsure of the definition of a phrasal verb, look it up. Phrasal verbs are often listed at the end of an entry for a common verb such as *do*, *make*, *take*, *turn*, or *find*.

The **auxiliary verbs** *be*, *do*, and *have* combine with main verbs, both regular and irregular.

be	*am, is, are, was, were surprised*
	am, is, are, was, were writing
do	*does, do, did call*
	doesn't, don't, didn't spend
have	*has, have, had prepared*
	has, have, had read

Another type of auxiliary verb is called a **modal auxiliary**. There are nine modal auxiliaries: *can*, *could*, *may*, *might*, *must*, *shall*, *should*, *will*, and *would*.

COMMON MEANINGS OF MODAL AUXILIARIES

Meaning	Modal Auxiliary +	Main Verb	Example
Ability	can, could	afford	They *can afford* to buy a small house.
Certainty	will	leave	We *will leave* tomorrow.
Obligation	must	return	You *must return* your books soon.
Advice	should	talk	He *should talk* with his counselor.
Permission	may	use	You *may use* the computers in the library.

CAUTION

When a modal auxiliary occurs with the auxiliary *have* (*must have forgotten*, *should have known*), *have* frequently sounds like the word *of*. When you proofread, be sure that modal auxiliaries are not followed by *of*.

have
➤ They **could ~~of~~ taken** another route.

Most modal verbs have more than one meaning. *Could* sometimes refers to ability (***I could*** *swim a mile when I was sixteen*). However, *could* can also refer to possibility (*Something good* ***could*** *happen*).

EXERCISE 20.1

Revise the following sentences. Explain any changes you make.

1. Any expedition into the wilderness suffer its share of mishaps.
2. The Lewis and Clark Expedition began in May 1804 and end in September 1806.
3. Fate must of smiled on Meriwether Lewis and William Clark, for there were no fatalities under their leadership.

4. Lewis and Clark lead the expedition from St. Louis to the Pacific Ocean and back.
5. By 1805, the Corps of Discovery, as the expedition was call, included thirty-three members.
6. The Corps might of lost all maps and specimens had Sacajawea, a Native American woman, not fish them from the Missouri River.

20b Verb tenses

Verb tenses provide information about time. For example, the tense of a verb may indicate that an action took place in the past or that an action is ongoing. Verb tenses are labeled as present, past, or future; they are also labeled as simple, progressive, perfect, or perfect progressive. The following chart shows how these labels apply to the tenses of *walk*.

Some of the tenses have more than one form because they depend on the person and number of the subject. **Person** refers to the role of the subject. First person (*I*, *we*) indicates that the subject of the verb is the writer or writers. Second person (*you*) indicates that the subject is the audience. Third person (*he*, *she*, *it*, *they*) indicates that the subject is someone or something other than the writer or audience. **Number** indicates whether the subject is one (*I*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *you*-singular) or more than one (*we*, *they*, *you*-plural).

VERB TENSES

	Present	Past	Future
Simple	I/you/we/they **walk** He/she/it **walks**	**walked**	**will walk**
Progressive	**I am walking** You/we/they **are walking** He/she/it **is walking**	I/he/she/it **was walking** You/we/they **are walking**	**will be walking**

(continues on page 284)

(*continued*) VERB TENSES

	Present	Past	Future
Perfect	I/you/we/they **have walked** He/she/it **has walked**	**had walked**	**will have walked**
Perfect progressive	I/you/we/they **have been walking** He/she/it **has been walking**	**had been walking**	**will have been walking**

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

VERBS NOT USED IN THE PROGRESSIVE FORM

Some verbs that do not express actions but rather mental states, emotions, conditions, or relationships are not used in the progressive form. These verbs include *believe*, *belong*, *contain*, *cost*, *know*, *own*, *prefer*, and *want*.

➤ The book ~~**is containing**~~ *contains* many Central American folktales.

20c Verb tense consistency

By using verb tenses consistently, you help your readers understand when the actions or events you are describing took place. Every verb tense has two parts: time frame and aspect. *Time frame* refers to whether the tense is present, past, or future. *Aspect* refers to whether it is simple, progressive, perfect, or perfect progressive. (See the chart in **20b**.) Consistency in the time frame of verbs, though not necessarily in their aspect, ensures that sentences reporting a sequence of events link together logically. In the following paragraph, notice that the time frame remains in the past, but the aspect may be either simple, perfect, or progressive.

past perfect
At that point, Kubrick **had finished** *Dr. Strangelove.*

simple past
Working independently, he **started** his science-fiction masterpiece,
2001: A Space Odyssey with much of Hollywood unaware that he
past progressive
was working in a new genre.

If you do need to shift to another time frame, you can use a time marker.

now, then, today, yesterday

in two years, during the 1920s

after you finish, before we left

simple present
➤ The Minnesota State Fair **attracts** thousands of visitors each
time marker simple past
day. **Last year**, the average daily attendance **exceeded**
100,000.

You may be able to change time frames without including time markers when you wish (1) to explain or support a general statement with information about the past, (2) to compare and contrast two different time periods, or (3) to comment on a topic.

➤ Thomas Jefferson, author of the Declaration of Independence, **is** considered one of our country's most brilliant citizens. His achievements **were** many, as **were** his interests. [The second sentence provides evidence from the past to support the claim in the first sentence.]

Before you turn in your final draft, check your verb tenses to ensure that they are logical and consistent. Revise any that are not.

➤ The white wedding dress ~~comes~~ *came* into fashion when Queen Victoria wore a white gown at her wedding to Prince Albert of Saxe. Soon after, brides who could afford them bought stylish white dresses for their weddings. Brides of modest means, however, ~~continue~~ *continued* to choose dresses they could wear more than once.

EXERCISE 20.2

Revise the following paragraph so that it contains no unnecessary shifts in verb tense.

I **had** already **been walking** for a half hour in the semidarkness of Amsterdam's early-morning streets when I **came** to a red light. I **am** in a hurry to get to the train station and no cars **were** out yet, so I **cross** over the cobblestones, passing a man waiting for the light to change. I never **look** back when he **scolds** me for breaking the law. I **had** a train to catch. I **was** going to Widnau, in Switzerland, to see Aunt Marie. I **have** not **seen** her since I **was** in second grade.

20d Voice

Voice indicates the relationship between a verb and its subject. When a verb is in the **active voice**, the subject is generally a person or thing performing an action. When a verb is in the **passive voice**, the subject is usually the *receiver* of the action.

ACTIVE Jen Wilson **wrote** the essay.

PASSIVE The essay **was written** by Jen Wilson.

Some passive sentences do not include a *by* phrase because the actor is unknown or unimportant.

➤ Jen Wilson's essay **was published** in the student newspaper.

The terms *active* and *passive* can sometimes cause confusion. As grammatical terms, they do not refer to the difference between action and inaction—running vs. napping. The best way to decide whether a sentence is in the passive voice is to examine its verb phrase.

(1) Verbs in the passive voice

The verb phrase in a sentence written in the passive voice consists of a form of the auxiliary verb *be* (*am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *been*) and a past participle. Depending on the verb tense, other auxiliaries such as *have*, *will*, and *should* may appear as well. The following sentences include common forms of *call* in the passive voice.

- The meeting *is called* to order. [simple present]
- The recruits *were called* to duty. [simple past]
- The council *is being called* to act on the proposal. [present progressive]
- Ms. Jones *has been called* to jury twice already. [present perfect]

Generally, sentences that do not include both a form of the auxiliary verb *be* and a past participle are in the active voice.

(2) Choosing between the active and passive voice

To use the active voice for emphasizing an actor and an action, first make the actor the subject of the sentence; then choose verbs that will help your readers see what the actor is doing.

- A group of students **planned** the graduation ceremony.

Use the passive voice when you want to stress the recipient of the action, rather than the actor, or when the actor's identity is unimportant or unknown.

- Tuition increases **were discussed** at the board meeting.

Writers of scientific prose often use the passive voice to highlight the experiment rather than the experimenter, as in this excerpt from a student lab report:

> First, the slides **were placed** on a compound microscope under low power, a 40× magnification level. The end of the root tip **was located**; then the cells immediately behind the root cap **were examined**.

EXERCISE 20.3

Identify the voice in each sentence as active or passive.

1. In a *National Geographic* report, Tom O'Neill describes the discovery of ancient art in Guatemala.
2. Archaeologist William Saturno recently discovered the oldest known Maya mural.
3. The mural was found in a tunnel used by looters.
4. The tunnel was actually a small room attached to a pyramid.
5. The mural was dated to about 150 years before the beginning of the Maya Classic period.
6. The mural's colors were documented and photographed.

20e Mood

The **mood** of a verb expresses the writer's attitude toward the factuality of what is being expressed. The **indicative mood** is used for statements and questions regarding fact or opinion. The **imperative mood** is used to give commands or directions. The **subjunctive mood** is used to state requirements, make requests, and express wishes.

INDICATIVE	We will be on time.
IMPERATIVE	Be on time!
SUBJUNCTIVE	The director insists that we be on time.

The subjunctive mood is also used to signal hypothetical situations (situations that are not real or not currently true: *If I* **were** *president, I'd protect national parks.*).

Verb forms in the subjunctive mood serve a variety of functions. The **present subjunctive** is the base form of the verb. It is used to express necessity.

- The doctor recommended that he **go** on a diet. [active voice]
- We demanded that you **be reimbursed**. [passive voice]

The **past subjunctive** has the same form as the simple past (for example, *had*, *offered*, *found*, or *wrote*). However, the past subjunctive form of *be* is *were* for all subjects, regardless of person or number. This form is used to present hypothetical situations.

- If they **offered** me the job, I would take it. [active voice]
- Even if he **were promoted,** he would not change his mind. [passive voice]

The **perfect subjunctive** verb has the same form as the past perfect tense: *had* + past participle. The perfect subjunctive signals that a statement is not factual.

- I wish I **had known** about the scholarship competition. [active voice]
- If she **had been awarded** the scholarship, she would have quit her part-time job. [passive voice]

TIPS FOR USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE

- In clauses beginning with *as if* and *as though*, use the past subjunctive or the perfect subjunctive:

  - He acts as if he ~~was~~ *were* the owner.

  - She looked at me as though she **heard** *had* this story before.

(Continued on page 290)

TIPS FOR USING THE SUBJUNCTIVE *(Continued)*

- In nonfactual dependent clauses beginning with *if*, use the past subjunctive or the perfect subjunctive. Avoid using *would have* in the *if* clause.

  ➤ If I ~~was~~ *were* rich, I would buy a yacht.

  ➤ If the driver ~~would have checked~~ *had* his rearview mirror, the accident would not have happened.

- In dependent clauses following verbs that express wishes, use the past subjunctive or the perfect subjunctive.

  ➤ I wish I ~~was~~ *were* taller.

  ➤ My brother wishes he ~~studied~~ *had* harder years ago.

- In *that* clauses expressing suggestions or demands, following verbs such as *ask, insist,* or *recommend,* use the base form of the verb in the *that* clause.

  ➤ The director asks that fans ~~are~~ *be* patient for the next film in the popular series.

EXERCISE 20.4

Use subjunctive verb forms to revise the following sentences.

1. The planners of Apollo 13 acted as if the number 13 was a lucky number.
2. Superstitious people think that if NASA changed the number of the mission, the astronauts would have had a safer journey.
3. They also believe that if the lunar landing would have been scheduled for a day other than Friday the Thirteenth, the crew would not have encountered any problems.

4. The crew used the lunar module as though it was a lifeboat.
5. After the successful splashdown, NASA administrators required that an investigative board was established.
6. If NASA ever plans a space mission on Friday the Thirteenth again, the public would object.

20f Subject-verb agreement

To say that a verb *agrees* with a subject means that the form of the verb (*-s* form or base form) is appropriate for the subject. For example, if the subject refers to one person or thing (*an athlete*, *a computer*), the *-s* form of the verb (*runs*) is appropriate. If the subject refers to more than one person or thing (*athletes*, *computers*), the base form of the verb (*run*) is appropriate. Notice in the following examples that the singular third-person subjects in the first line take a singular verb (*-s* form) and all the other subjects take the base form.

He, she, it, Joe, a student	has, looks, writes
I, you, we, they, the Browns, the students	have, look, write

The verb *be* does not follow this pattern. It has three different present-tense forms and two different past-tense forms.

I	am/was
He, she, it, Joe, a student	is/was
You, we, they, the Browns, the students	are/were

(1) Words between the subject and the verb

When phrases such as the following occur between the subject and the verb, they do not affect the number of the subject or the form of the verb.

along with	in addition to	not to mention
as well as	including	together with

- Her **salary**, together with tips, **is** just enough to live on.
- **Tips**, together with her salary, **are** just enough to live on.

(2) Subjects joined by *and*

A compound subject (two nouns joined by *and*) that refers to a single person or thing takes a singular verb.

- The **founder and president** of the art association **was** elected to the board of the museum.

(3) Subjects joined by *or* or *nor*

When singular subjects are linked by *or*, *either . . . or*, or *neither . . . nor*, the verb is singular as well.

- The **provost or** the **dean** usually **presides** at the meeting.
- **Either** his **accountant or** his **lawyer has** the will.

If the linked subjects differ in number, the verb agrees with the subject closer to the verb.

- Neither the basket nor the **apples were** expensive. [plural]
- Neither the apples nor the **basket was** expensive. [singular]

(4) Inverted order

In most sentences, the subject precedes the verb.

- The large S[**cities**] of the Northeast V[**were**] the hardest hit by the winter storms.

The subject and verb can sometimes be inverted for emphasis; however, they must still agree.

- The hardest hit by the winter storms V[**were**] the large S[**cities**] of the Northeast.

When *there* begins a sentence, the subject and verb are always inverted; the verb still agrees with the subject, which follows it.

v s

➤ There **are** several **cities** in need of federal aid.

(5) Clauses with relative pronouns

In an adjectival (relative) clause, the subject is generally a relative pronoun (*that*, *who*, or *which*). To determine whether the relative pronoun is singular or plural, you must find its antecedent (the word or words it refers to). When the antecedent is singular, the relative pronoun is singular; when the antecedent is plural, the relative pronoun is plural. In essence, the verb in the adjectival clause agrees with the antecedent.

sing ant sing v

➤ **The person** **who** **reviews** proposals is out of town this week.

pl ant pl v

➤ The director met with the **students** **who** **are** studying abroad next quarter.

pl ant pl v

➤ The Starion is one of the new **models** **that** **include** a DVD player as standard equipment.

(6) Indefinite pronouns

The indefinite pronouns *each*, *either*, *everybody*, *everyone*, and *anyone* are considered singular and so require singular verb forms.

➤ **Either** of them **is willing** to lead the discussion.

➤ **Everybody** in our apartment building **has** a parking place.

All, *any*, *some*, *none*, *half*, and *most* can be either singular or plural, depending on whether they refer to a unit or quantity (singular) or to individuals (plural).

sing v

➤ My sister collects antique **jewelry**; **some** of it **is** quite valuable.

pl v
➤ My sister collects comic **books**; **some** **are** quite valuable.

When an indefinite pronoun is followed by a prepositional phrase beginning with the preposition *of*, the verb agrees in number with the object of the preposition.

pl obj pl v
➤ **None** of **those** **are** spoiled.

sing obj sing v
➤ **None** of the **food** **is** spoiled.

(7) Collective nouns and measurement words

Collective nouns and measurement words require singular verbs when they refer to groups or units. They require plural verbs when they refer to individuals or parts.

SINGULAR (REGARDED AS A GROUP OR UNIT)	PLURAL (REGARDED AS INDIVIDUALS OR PARTS)
The **majority rules**.	The **majority** of us **are** in favor.
Ten million gallons of oil **is** more than enough.	**Ten million gallons** of oil **were spilled**.

(8) Words ending in -s

Titles of works that are plural in form (for example, *Star Wars* and *Dombey and Son*) are treated as singular because they refer to a single book, movie, recording, or other work.

➤ ***The Hunger Games*** **is** one of the films she discussed in her paper.

Some nouns ending in *-s* are singular: *linguistics*, *news*, and *Niagara Falls*.

➤ The **news** **is** encouraging.

Nouns such as *athletics*, *politics*, and *electronics* can be either singular or plural, depending on their meanings.

SINGULAR **Statistics is** an interesting subject.

PLURAL **Statistics are** often misleading.

(9) Subjects and subject complements

Some sentences may have a singular subject and a plural subject complement, or vice versa. In either case, the verb agrees with the subject.

- Her primary **concern is** rising health-care costs.
- **Croissants are** the bakery's specialty.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

AGREEMENT OF RELATED SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS

When a sentence has two or more nouns that are related, use either the singular form or the plural form consistently.

- The **student** raised her **hand**. The **students** raised their **hands**.

Occasionally, you may have to use a singular noun to retain an idiomatic expression or to avoid ambiguity.

- **They** kept their **word**.

(10) Subjects beginning with *what*

When *what* may be understood as "the thing that," the verb in the main clause is singular.

- What we need **is** a new policy. [*The thing that* we need is a new policy.]

If *what* is understood as "the things that," the verb in the main clause is plural.

➤ What we need **are** new guidelines. [*The things that* we need are new guidelines.]

EXERCISE 20.5

Choose the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. There (is/are) at least two good reasons for changing motor oil: risk of contamination and danger of additive depletion.
2. Reasons for not changing the oil (include/includes) the cost to the driver and the inconvenience of the chore.
3. What I want to know (is/are) the number of miles I can drive before I have to change my oil.
4. My older brother says three thousand miles (is/are) not long enough.
5. Each of the car manuals I consulted (recommends/recommend) five-thousand-mile intervals.
6. Neither the automakers nor the oil station attendants (know/knows) how I drive.

21 Pronouns

When you use pronouns effectively, you add clarity and coherence to your writing.

21a Recognizing pronouns

A **pronoun** is commonly defined as a word that refers to a noun or noun phrase already mentioned—its **antecedent**.

➤ John said **he** would guide the trip.

➤ The participant with the most experience said **he** would guide the trip.

Most pronouns refer to nouns, but some such as *this*, *that*, *my*, and *their* come before nouns.

➤ **This** man is our guide. **My** map is over there.

Pronouns are categorized as personal, reflexive/intensive, relative, interrogative, demonstrative, or indefinite.

(1) Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns are like nouns: they refer to people, places, things, ideas, and so on.

SINGULAR	I, me, you, he, him, she, her, it
PLURAL	we, us, you, they, them

(2) Possessive pronouns

Possessive pronouns are personal pronouns that indicate ownership and similar relationships.

SINGULAR	my, mine, your, yours, his, her, hers, its
PLURAL	our, ours, your, yours, their, theirs

Avoid confusing possessive forms with common contractions: *it's* (*it is*), *they're* (*they are*), and *who's* (*who is*).

(3) Reflexive/intensive pronouns

Reflexive pronouns direct the action back to the subject (*I saw myself*); intensive pronouns are used for emphasis (*I myself questioned the judge*).

SINGULAR	myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself
PLURAL	ourselves, yourselves, themselves

Avoid using a reflexive pronoun as a subject.

➤ Ms. Palmquist and ~~myself~~ I discussed our concern with the senator.

Hisself, *themself*, and *theirselves* are inappropriate in academic or professional writing. Instead, use *himself* and *themselves*.

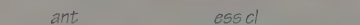
(4) Relative pronouns

An adjectival clause (or relative clause) ordinarily begins with a relative pronoun: *who*, *whom*, *which*, *that,* or *whose*. To provide a link between this type of dependent clause and the main clause, the relative pronoun corresponds to a word or words in the main clause called the **antecedent**.

➤ The students talked to **a reporter who** had just returned from overseas.

Who, *whose*, and *whom* ordinarily refer to people; *which* refers to things; *that* refers to things and, in some contexts, people. The possessive *whose* (used in place of the awkward *of which*) usually refers to people but sometimes refers to things.

Knowing the difference between an essential clause and a nonessential clause will help you decide whether to use *which* or *that*. A clause that a reader needs in order to identify the antecedent correctly is an **essential clause**.



➤ **The person who presented the award** was last year's winner.

If the essential clause were omitted from this sentence, the reader would not know which person was last year's winner.

A **nonessential clause** is *not* needed for correct identification of the antecedent and is thus set off by commas. A nonessential clause often follows a proper noun (a specific name).

➤ **Andrea Bowen, who presented the award,** was last year's winner.

If the nonessential clause were removed from this sentence, the reader would still know the identity of last year's winner.

According to a traditional grammar rule, *that* is used in essential adjectival clauses, and *which* is used in nonessential adjectival clauses.

- I need a job **that** pays well.
- For years, I have had the same job, **which** pays well enough.

However, some professional writers use *which* in essential clauses. Nonetheless, if you are following APA guidelines, use *which* only in nonessential clauses.

(5) Interrogative pronouns

The interrogative pronouns *what*, *which*, *who*, *whom*, and *whose* are question words.

- **Who** won the award? **Whom** did you see?

(6) Demonstrative pronouns

The demonstrative pronouns *this* and *these* indicate that someone or something is close by in time, space, or thought. *That* and *those* signal remoteness.

- **These** issues will be addressed in the next section.
- He envied **those** people who could live simply.

(7) Indefinite pronouns

Indefinite pronouns usually do not refer to specific persons, objects, ideas, or events.

anyone	anybody	anything
everyone	everybody	everything
someone	somebody	something
no one	nobody	nothing
each	either	neither

Indefinite pronouns do not refer to an antecedent. In fact, some indefinite pronouns *serve* as antecedents.

➤ **Someone** forgot **her** purse.

21b Pronoun case

To understand the uses of pronouns, you must first be able to recognize person and number. **Person** indicates whether a pronoun refers to the writer (**first person**), to the reader (**second person**), or to another person, place, thing, or idea (**third person**). **Number** reveals whether a pronoun is singular or plural.

Case refers to the form a pronoun takes to indicate its relationship to other words in a sentence. There are three cases relevant to understanding pronouns: subjective, objective, and possessive (also called genitive).

➤ **He** [subjective] wants **his** [possessive] legislators to help **him** [objective].

CASE:	Subjective		Objective		Possessive	
NUMBER:	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
First person	I	we	me	us	my, mine	our, ours
Second person	you	you	you	you	your, yours	your, yours
Third person	he, she, it	they	him, her, it	them	his, her, hers, its	their, theirs

(1) Pronouns in the subjective case

A pronoun that is the subject of a sentence is in the **subjective case**. To determine which pronoun form is correct in a compound subject (a noun and a pronoun joined by *and*), say the sentence using the pronoun alone, omitting the noun. For the following sentence, notice that "*Me* solved the problem" seems strange, but "*I* solved the problem" is fine.

➤ ~~Me and~~ Marisa and I solved the problem.

Place the pronoun *I* last in the sequence. If the compound subject contains two pronouns, test each one by itself.

➤ ~~Him~~ He and I joined the club in July.

Pronouns following a *be* verb (*am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *been*) should also be in the subjective case.

➤ The first to arrive were Kevin and ~~me~~ I.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

NOUN OR PRONOUN AS SUBJECT

In some languages, a noun in the subject position may be followed by a pronoun. In Standardized English, though, such a pronoun should be omitted.

➤ My roommate ~~he~~ works in the library for three hours a week.

(2) Pronouns in the objective case

Whenever a pronoun follows an action verb or a preposition, it takes the **objective case**.

The whole staff admired **him**. [direct object]

The staff sent **him** a card. [indirect object]

The staff depended on **him**. [object of a preposition]

Pronouns joined by *and* or *or* are also in the objective case when they follow a verb or preposition.

➤ They will appoint you or ~~I~~ me. [direct objects]

➤ They lent Tom and ~~I~~ me money for tuition. [indirect objects]

➤ Jan sat between my brother and ~~I~~ me. [objects of the preposition]

To determine whether to use the subjective or objective case, remember to say the sentence with just the pronoun. Notice that "They will appoint *I*" does not sound right.

(3) Possessive forms

Pronouns in the **possessive case** can be divided into two groups based on whether they are followed by nouns. *My*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *our*, and *their* are all followed by nouns; *mine*, *yours*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, and *theirs* are not. (Note that *his* is in both groups.)

- **Their** budget is higher than **ours**. [*Their* is followed by a noun; *ours* is not.]

(4) Appositive pronouns

Appositive pronouns are in the same case as the nouns they rename.

- Our group—Becky, Lee, and I—argued for the new policy. [subjective]
- My grandmother gave her old art books to her grandchildren—Josh, Evan, Kayla, and me. [objective]

(5) *Who/whoever and whom/whomever*

To choose between *who* and *whom* or between *whoever* and *whomever*, you must first determine whether the word is functioning as a subject or an object. A pronoun functioning as the subject takes the subjective case.

- **Who** won the award? [COMPARE: **She** won the award.]
- The teachers knew **who** won the award.
- The student **who** won the award was quite surprised.
- **Whoever** won the award deserved it.

When the pronoun is an object, use *whom* or *whomever*.

- **Whom** did they hire? [COMPARE: They hired **him**.]
- I do not know **whom** they hired.
- The student **whom** they hired graduated in May.
- **Whomever** they hired will have to work hard this year.

Whom may be omitted in sentences when no misunderstanding would result.

- The friend he relied on moved away. [*Whom* has been omitted after *friend*.]

(6) Pronouns with infinitives and gerunds

A pronoun grouped with an infinitive (*to* + the base form of a verb) takes the objective case.

- The director wanted **me** to help **him**.

A gerund (*-ing* verb form functioning as a noun) is preceded by a possessive pronoun.

- I appreciated **his** helping Denise. [COMPARE: I appreciated **Mike's** helping Denise.]

Notice that a possessive pronoun is used before a gerund but not before a present participle (*-ing* verb form functioning as an adjective).

- I saw **him** helping Luke.

(7) Pronouns in elliptical constructions

The words *as* and *than* frequently introduce **elliptical constructions**—clauses in which the writer has intentionally omitted words. To check whether you have used the correct case in an elliptical construction, read the written sentence aloud, inserting any words that have been omitted from it.

- She admires Clarice as much as **I**. [subjective case]
  Read aloud: She admires Clarice as much as *I do*.

➤ She admires Clarice more than **me**. [objective case]
Read aloud: She admires Clarice more than *she admires me.*

EXERCISE 21.1

Revise the following paragraph, using appropriate pronouns. Some sentences may not require editing.

[1]When me and my brother were in middle school, we formed a band with our friends Jason and Andrew. [2]My grandmother had given Jake a guitar and I a drum kit for Christmas. [3]We practiced either alone or together for the rest of the winter. [4]Then, in the spring, we met up with Jason, who we had known for years. [5]Him and his cousin Andrew, whom we later called Android, were excited to join me and Jake. [6]Jason already had a guitar, and Andrew could sing. [7]After we played together one afternoon, we decided to call ourself *The Crash*. [8]Jason and Andrew came over to our house to jam whenever they're parents let them—which was most of the time. [9]Our parents did not mind our noise at all. [10]My dad said us playing reminded him of his own teenage garage band.

EXERCISE 21.2

Correct the pronoun errors in the following sentences. Not all sentences have errors.

1. The board of directors has asked you and I to conduct a customer survey.
2. They also recommended us hiring someone with extensive experience in statistical analysis.
3. Whomever understands statistics should take the lead on this project.
4. Although the board asked me to be in charge, I would like you to recruit and interview candidates.
5. The directors recognize your expertise and will surely approve of you taking the lead.

21c Pronoun-antecedent agreement

A pronoun and its antecedent (the word or word group to which it refers) agree in number (both are singular or both are plural).

- The **supervisor** said **he** would help.
  [Both antecedent and pronoun are singular.]
- My **colleagues** said **they** would help.
  [Both antecedent and pronoun are plural.]

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

A possessive pronoun (*his*, *her*, *its*, *their*, *my*, *our*, or *your*), also called a **possessive determiner**, agrees with its antecedent, not with the noun it precedes.

- Ken Carlson brought his ~~her~~ young daughter to the office today.
  [The possessive pronoun *his* agrees with the antecedent, *Ken Carlson*, not with the following noun, *daughter*.]

(1) Indefinite pronouns

An indefinite pronoun such as *everyone*, *someone*, or *anybody* takes a singular verb form.

- Everyone **has** [not *have*] the right to an opinion.

Difficulties arise, however, because words like *everyone* and *everybody* seem to refer to more than one person even though they take a singular verb. Thus, the definition of grammatical number and our everyday notion of number conflict. In conversation and informal writing, a plural pronoun (*they*, *them*, or *their*) is often used with the singular *everyone*. Nonetheless, when you write for an audience that expects you to follow traditional grammar rules, make sure to use a third-person singular pronoun.

- Everyone has the combination to his or her ~~their~~ private locker.

You can avoid the awkwardness of using *his* or *her* by using an article instead, making both the antecedent and the possessive pronoun plural, or rewriting the sentence using the passive voice (the *be* auxiliary + the past participle).

- Everyone has the combination to **a** private locker. [article]
- **Students** have combinations to **their** private lockers. [plural antecedent and plural possessive pronoun]
- The combination to a private locker **is issued** to everyone. [passive voice]

(2) Two antecedents joined by *or* or *nor*

If a singular and a plural antecedent are joined by *or* or *nor*, place the plural antecedent second and use a plural pronoun.

- Either the senator **or** her assistants will explain how they devised the plan for tax reform.
- Neither the president **nor** the senators stated that they would support the proposal.

(3) Collective nouns

When an antecedent is a collective noun such as *team*, *faculty*, or *committee*, determine whether you intend the noun to be understood as singular or plural. Then, make sure that the pronoun agrees in number with the noun.

- The choir decided that ~~they~~ *it* would tour during the winter.
  [Because the choir decided as a group, *choir* should be considered singular.]
- The committee may disagree on methods, but ~~it~~ *they* must agree on basic aims.
  [Because the committee members are behaving as individuals, *committee* is regarded as plural.]

EXERCISE 21.3

Revise the following sentences so that pronouns and antecedents agree. Some verb forms will have to change as well.

1. A researcher relies on a number of principles to help them make ethical decisions.
2. Everyone should have the right to participate in a study only if they feel comfortable doing so.
3. A team of researchers should provide its volunteers with consent forms, in which they describe to the volunteers the procedures and risks involved in participation.
4. Every participant should be guaranteed that the information they provide will remain confidential.
5. Institutions of higher education require that a researcher address ethical issues in their proposals.

21d Clear pronoun reference

The meaning of each pronoun in a sentence should be immediately obvious. In the following sentence, the pronoun *he* clearly refers to the antecedent, *Jack*.

➤ **Jack** has collected shells since **he** was eight years old.

(1) Ambiguous pronoun reference

Revise sentences in which a pronoun can refer to either of two antecedents.

➤ Anna told her sister ~~that she had~~ to call home.

(2) Remote pronoun reference

To help readers understand your meaning, place relative pronouns as close to their antecedents as possible.

➤ The **poem** that was originally written in 1945 has been published in a new book. **~~that~~** ~~was originally written in 1945.~~

[A poem, not a book, was first published in 1945.]

Notice, however, that a relative pronoun does not always have to follow its antecedent directly. In the following example, there is no risk of misunderstanding.

➤ We slowly began to notice changes in our lives **that** we had never expected.

(3) Broad pronoun reference

Pronouns such as *it*, *this*, *that*, and *which* sometimes refer to the sense of a whole clause, sentence, or paragraph.

➤ Large corporations may seem stronger than individuals, but **that** is not true. [*That* refers to the sense of the whole first clause.]

In academic situations, revise sentences that do not have specific antecedents.

➤ When class attendance is compulsory, some students feel that education is being forced on them. This perception is unwarranted. [In the original sentence, *this* had no clear antecedent.]

(4) Implied reference

Express an idea explicitly rather than merely implying it.

➤ My father is a music teacher. Teaching music ~~It~~ is a profession that requires much patience. [In the original sentence, *it* had no expressed antecedent.]

Be especially careful to provide clear antecedents when referring to the work or possessions of others. The following sentence requires revision because *she* can refer to someone other than Jen Norton, who could be an editor instead of an author.

➤ In her ~~Jen Norton's~~ new book, Jen Norton ~~she~~ argues for election reform.

(5) The use of *it* without an antecedent

The expletive *it* does not have a specific antecedent. Instead, it is used to postpone, and thus give emphasis to, the subject of a sentence. If a sentence that begins with this expletive is wordy or awkward, replace *it* with the postponed subject.

Trying to repair the car *useless*
➤ ^It was ~~no use trying to repair the~~ ^~~car.~~

EXERCISE 21.4

Edit the following sentences to make all references clear.

1. A singer, songwriter, and human rights activist, it is no wonder that Joan Baez is one of today's most inspirational public figures.
2. Baez's father worked for the United Nations Education, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO), which meant that as a young girl, she lived in many different countries.
3. Though you might find it hard to believe, Baez recorded her first album when she was only nineteen years old.
4. Baez had a younger sister, Mimi Fariña, who was also a singer-songwriter; sometimes she joined her on tour.
5. In 2011, at a general meeting of the human-rights organization Amnesty International, they gave Baez a special award for her inspirational activism.

21e Pronoun consistency

Whenever you write, you must establish your point of view (perspective). Your point of view will be evident in the pronouns you choose. *I* or *we* indicates a first-person point of view, which is appropriate for writing that includes personal views or experiences. If you decide to address the reader as *you*, you are adopting a second-person point of view. However, because a second-person point of view is rare in academic

writing, avoid using *you* unless you need to address the reader. If you select the pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, *one*, and *they,* you are writing with a third-person point of view. The third-person point of view is the most common point of view in academic writing.

Although you may find it necessary to use different points of view, especially if you are comparing or contrasting other people's views with your own, be careful not to confuse readers by shifting perspective unnecessarily.

To an observer, a sleeping person appears passive, unresponsive, and essentially isolated from the rest of the world and its barrage of stimuli. While it is true that someone asleep is ~~you are~~ unaware of most surrounding noises, that person's ~~when you are asleep, our~~ brain is far from inactive. In fact, the brain can be as active during sleep as it is ~~when you are awake~~. When in a waking state ~~our brains are~~ it is asleep, the rate and type of electrical activity change.

EXERCISE 21.5

Revise the following paragraph so that there are no unnecessary shifts in point of view.

[1]Many car owners used to complain about deceptive fuel-economy ratings. [2]The issue was ignored until our gas prices started to rise dramatically. [3]Because of increased pressure from consumer organizations, the United States Environmental Protection Agency now takes into account factors such as quick acceleration, changing road grades, and the use of air conditioning, so the new ratings should reflect your real-world driving conditions. [4]Nonetheless, the ratings can never be exact because we all have different driving habits.

21f Use of first-person and second-person pronouns

Using *I* is appropriate when you are writing about personal experience. In academic and professional writing, the use of the first-person singular pronoun is also a clear way to distinguish your own views from those of others. However, if you frequently repeat *I feel* or *I think*, your readers may suspect that you do not understand much beyond your own experience.

We, the first-person plural pronoun, is trickier to use correctly. When you use it, make sure that your audience can tell which individuals are included in this plural reference. For example, if you are completing a course assignment, does *we* mean you and the instructor, you and your fellow students, or some other group (such as all Americans)? Because you may inadvertently use *we* in an early draft to refer to more than one group of people, as you edit, check to see that you have used this pronoun consistently.

If you address readers directly, you will undoubtedly use the second-person pronoun *you* (as we, the authors of this handbook, have done). There is some disagreement, though, over whether to permit the use of the indefinite *you* to mean "a person" or "people in general." If your instructor tells you to avoid using the indefinite *you*, recast your sentences. For example, use *one* instead of *you*.

➤ Even in huge, anonymous cities, ~~you find~~ *one finds* community spirit.

If the use of *one* is too formal, try changing the word order or using different words.

➤ Community spirit is found even in huge, anonymous cities.

EXERCISE 21.6

Revise the following paragraph to eliminate the use of the first- and second-person pronouns.

[1]In my opinion, some animals should be as free as we are. [2]For example, I think orangutans, African elephants, and Atlantic bottlenose dolphins should roam freely rather than be held in captivity. [3]We should neither exhibit them in zoos nor use them for medical research. [4]If you study animals such as these, you will see that, like us, they show emotions, self-awareness, and intention. [5]You might even find that some use language to communicate. [6]It is clear to me that they have the right to freedom.

22 Modifiers

Modifiers are words, phrases, or clauses that modify; that is, they qualify or limit the meaning of other words. When used effectively, modifiers enliven writing with details and enhance its coherence.

22a Recognizing modifiers

You can distinguish an adjective from an adverb by determining what type of word is modified. **Adjectives** modify nouns and pronouns; **adverbs** modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
She looked **curious**.	She looked at me **curiously**.
[modifies pronoun]	[modifies verb]
productive meeting	**highly** productive meeting
[modifies noun]	[modifies adjective]
a **quick** lunch	**very** quickly
[modifies noun]	[modifies adverb]

In addition, consider the form of the modifier. Many adjectives end with one of these suffixes: *-able*, *-al*, *-ful*, *-ic*, *-ish*, *-less*, or *-y*.

acceptable rental eventful angelic sheepish effortless sleepy

Present participles (verb + *-ing*) and past participles (verb + *-ed*) can also be used as adjectives.

a **determining** factor a **determined** effort

Be sure to include the *-ed* ending of a past participle.

➤ Please see the ~~enclose~~ *enclosed* documents for more details.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES IN OTHER LANGUAGES

In some languages, adjectives and nouns agree in number. In Spanish, for example, when a noun is plural, the adjective is plural as well: *vistas claras*. In English, however, adjectives do not have a plural form: *clear views*.

The easiest type of adverb to identify is the adverb of manner. It is formed by adding *-ly* to an adjective.

carefully unpleasantly silently

Although you may not hear the *-ly* ending when you speak, be sure to include it when you write.

➤ They bought only ~~local~~ locally grown vegetables.

However, not all words ending in *-ly* are adverbs. Certain adjectives related to nouns also end in *-ly* (*friend*, *friendly*; *hour*, *hourly*). In addition, not all adverbs end in *-ly*. Adverbs that indicate time or place (*today*, *tomorrow*, *here*, and *there*) do not have the *-ly* ending. A few words—for example, *fast*, *right*, and *well*—can function as either adjectives or adverbs.

➤ They like **fast** cars. [adjective]

➤ They ran **fast** enough to catch the bus. [adverb]

(1) Modifiers of linking verbs and action verbs

An adjective used after a sensory linking verb (*look*, *smell*, *taste*, *sound*, or *feel*) modifies the subject of the sentence. A common error is to use an adverb after this type of verb.

➤ I felt ~~badly~~ bad about missing the rally. [The adjective *bad* modifies *I*.]

However, when *look*, *smell*, *taste*, *sound*, or *feel* is used as an action verb, it can be modified by an adverb.

➤ She looked **angrily** at the referee. [The adverb *angrily* modifies *looked*.]
BUT She looked **angry**. [The adjective *angry* modifies *she*.]

Good is an adjective and so is not used with action verbs.

➤ The whole team played ~~good~~ well.

EXERCISE 22.1

Revise the following sentences to include adjectives and adverbs considered conventional in academic writing.

1. Relaxation techniques have been developed for people who feel uncomfortably in some way.
2. Meditation is one technique that is real helpful in relieving stress.
3. People searching for relief from tension have found that a breathing meditation works good.
4. They sit quiet and concentrate on both inhaling and exhaling.
5. They concentrate on breathing deep.

(2) Nouns as modifiers

Adjectives and adverbs are the most common modifiers, but nouns can also be modifiers (***movie*** *critic*, ***reference*** *manual*). A string of noun modifiers can be cumbersome. The following example shows how a sentence with too many noun modifiers can be revised.

scheduled for Friday afternoon

➤ The ~~Friday afternoon~~ Student Affairs Committee meeting has been postponed.

(3) Phrases and clauses as modifiers

Participial phrases, prepositional phrases, and some infinitive phrases are modifiers.

➤ **Growing in popularity every year**, mountain bikes now dominate the market. [participial phrase]

➤ Mountain bikes first became popular **in the 1980s**. [prepositional phrase]

➤ Some people use mountain bikes **to commute to work**. [infinitive phrase]

Adjectival and adverbial clauses are both modifiers.

- BMX bicycles have frames **that are relatively small**. [adjectival clause]
- **Although mountain bikes are designed for off-road use**, many people use them on city streets. [adverbial clause]

22b Comparatives and superlatives

Many adjectives and adverbs have three forms. The **positive form** is the word you would look for in a dictionary. The **comparative form**, which either ends in *-er* or is preceded by *more* or *less*, compares two elements. The **superlative form**, which either ends in *-est* or is preceded by *most* or *least*, compares three or more elements:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
hard	harder	hardest
deserving	more/less deserving	most/least deserving

(1) Complete and logical comparisons

When using the comparative form of an adjective or an adverb, be sure to indicate what two elements you are comparing.

- A diesel engine is **heavier** than a gas engine.

Occasionally, the second element in a comparison is implied.

- She wrote **two** papers; the instructor gave her a **better** grade on the second [paper].

A comparison should also be logical. The following example illogically compares *population* and *Wabasha*.

- The **population** of Winona is larger than that of **Wabasha**.

(2) Double comparatives or superlatives

Use either an ending or a preceding qualifier, not both, to form a comparative or superlative.

- The first bridge is ~~more~~ **narrower** than the second.
- The **most narrowest** bridge is in the northern part of the state.

Comparative and superlative forms of modifiers that have absolute meanings, such as *a more perfect society* and *the most unique campus*, are rarely used in academic writing.

EXERCISE 22.2

Provide the comparative or superlative form of each modifier.

1. Amphibians can be divided into three groups. Frogs and toads are in the (common) group.
2. Because they do not have to maintain a specific body temperature, amphibians eat (frequently) than mammals do.
3. Reptiles may look like amphibians, but their skin is (dry).
4. During the Devonian period, the (close) ancestors of amphibians were fish with fins that looked like legs.

22c Double negatives

The term **double negative** refers to the use of two negative words to express a single negation. Consider revising any sentences that include *not* and another negative word such as *no*, *nothing*, *nobody*, *hardly*, *barely*, or *scarcely*.

- He did**n't** keep ~~no~~ *any* records.
- I could**n't hardly** quit in the middle of the job.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

NEGATION IN OTHER LANGUAGES

The use of two negative words in one sentence is common in languages such as Spanish:

➤ *Yo* ***no*** *compre nada*. ["I didn't buy anything."]

If your native language allows this type of negation, be sure to revise any double negatives you find in your academic and professional writing.

22d Placement of modifiers

Effective placement of modifiers will improve the clarity and coherence of your sentences. A **misplaced modifier** obscures the meaning of a sentence.

(1) Placing modifiers near the words they modify

Readers expect phrases and clauses to modify the nearest grammatical element.

➤ ~~Crouched and ugly, the~~ young boy gasped at the phantom moving across the stage. [The repositioned modifiers *crouched* and *ugly* describe the phantom, not the boy.]

The *crouched and ugly*

(2) Using limiting modifiers

Place the limiting modifiers *almost*, *even*, *hardly*, *just*, and *only* before the words or word groups they modify. Altering placement can alter meaning.

➤ The committee can **only** nominate two members for the position. [The committee cannot *appoint* the two members to the position.]

- The committee can nominate **only** two members for the position. [The committee cannot nominate more than two members.]
- **Only** the committee can nominate two members for the position. [No person or group other than the committee can nominate members.]

(3) Revising squinting modifiers

A **squinting modifier** can be interpreted as modifying either what precedes it or what follows it. To avoid such lack of clarity, you can reposition the modifier, add punctuation, or revise the entire sentence.

SQUINTING

Even though Erikson lists some advantages **overall** his vision of a successful business is faulty.

REVISED

Even though Erikson lists some **overall** advantages**,** his vision of a successful business is faulty. [modifier repositioned; punctuation added]

REVISED

Erikson lists some advantages**; however, overall,** his vision of a successful business is faulty. [sentence revised]

EXERCISE 22.3

Improve the clarity of the following sentences by moving the modifiers.

1. Alfred Joseph Hitchcock was born the son of a poultry dealer in London.
2. Hitchcock was only identified with thrillers after making his third movie, *The Lodger.*
3. Hitchcock's most famous movies revolved around psychological improbabilities that are still discussed by movie critics today.

(Continued on page 320)

(Continued)

4. Although his movies are known for suspense sometimes moviegoers also remember Hitchcock's droll sense of humor.
5. Hitchcock just did not direct movie thrillers; he also produced two television series.
6. Originally a British citizen, Queen Elizabeth II knighted Alfred Hitchcock in 1980.

22e Dangling modifiers

Dangling modifiers do not clearly modify anything in the rest of the sentence. If a sentence begins with an introductory modifier, be sure that what follows—namely, the subject of the sentence—is actually being modified.

- Lying on the beach, we found that time became irrelevant. [Time cannot lie on a beach.]

- When you are exercising strenuously, it is important to drink plenty of water. [subject added to the modifier; "it" is not exercising]

Although you will most frequently find a dangling modifier at the beginning of a sentence, you may sometimes find one at the end of a sentence.

- Adequate lighting is important for anyone when studying. [Lighting cannot study.]

EXERCISE 22.4

Revise any misplaced or dangling modifiers.

1. Climbing a mountain, fitness becomes all-important.
2. In determining an appropriate challenge, considering safety precautions is necessary.
3. Even when expecting sunny weather, rain gear should be packed.
4. Although adding extra weight, climbers should not leave home without a first-aid kit.
5. By taking pains at the beginning of a trip, agony can be averted at the end of a trip.

S

EFFECTIVE SENTENCES

23 Sentence Unity 324

- **a** Choosing and arranging details 324
- **b** Revising mixed metaphors 325
- **c** Revising mixed constructions 325
- **d** Relating sentence parts 326
- **e** Avoiding *is when*, *is where*, and *reason . . . is because* constructions 328
- **f** Including necessary words 328
- **g** Completing comparisons 329
- **h** Completing intensifiers 330

24 Subordination and Coordination 331

- **a** Using subordination effectively 331
- **b** Using coordination effectively 332
- **c** Avoiding faulty or excessive subordination and coordination 334

25 Parallelism 336

- **a** Using coordinating conjunctions 336
- **b** Repeating words and grammatical forms for paired ideas 337
- **c** Creating parallelism in lists, headings, and outlines 338
- **d** Using correlative conjunctions 338

26 Emphasis 340

- **a** Placing words and using punctuation 340
- **b** Ordering ideas from least to most important 340
- **c** Repeating important words 341
- **d** Inverting word order 341
- **e** Using an occasional short sentence 342

27 Variety 344

- **a** Varying sentence length and form 344
- **b** Varying sentence openings 345
- **c** Using cumulative and periodic sentences 346
- **d** Using questions, exclamations, and commands 346

23 Sentence Unity

Effective academic and professional writing is composed of sentences that are consistent, clear, and complete.

23a Choosing and arranging details

Well-chosen details (of time, location, or cause) add interest and credibility to your writing.

MISSING IMPORTANT DETAIL An astrophysicist from the Harvard-Smithsonian Center has predicted a galactic storm.

WITH DETAIL ADDED An astrophysicist from the Harvard-Smithsonian Center has predicted **that** a galactic storm **will occur within the next ten million years**.

The added detail about time clarifies the sentence and helps readers accept the information. Every word and every detail you use should contribute to your central thought, as in the following excerpt:

> I was accustomed to hear remarks about my beauty; but now, for the first time, I became conscious of it and recognized it. I noticed the ivory whiteness of my skin, the beauty of my mouth, the size and liquid darkness of my eyes, and how the long, black lashes that fringed and shaded them produced an effect that was strangely fascinating even to me.
>
> —JAMES WELDON JOHNSON, *The Autobiography of an Ex-Colored Man*

23b Revising mixed metaphors

When you use language that evokes images, make sure that the images are meaningfully related. Revise sentences that create **mixed metaphors**—combinations of images that do not make sense together—by replacing words that evoke conflicting images.

incurred a large

➤ As he climbed the corporate ladder, he ~~sank into a sea of~~ debt.

The odd image of a man hanging onto a ladder as it disappears into the water can easily be revised with the removal of one conflicting image.

23c Revising mixed constructions

A sentence that begins with one kind of grammatical structure and shifts to another is a **mixed construction**.

Practicing

➤ ~~By practicing~~ a new language daily will help you become proficient. [*Practicing* (a gerund phrase) replaces a prepositional phrase, *By practicing*, which cannot serve as the subject of the verb *will help*.]

Her scholarship award

➤ ~~Although she won a scholarship~~ does not give her the right to skip classes. [*Although she won a scholarship* (an adverbial clause) cannot serve as the subject. The editing makes the noun phrase *Her scholarship award* the subject.]

You can revise a mixed construction by changing the subject or using the beginning of the current sentence as a modifier and adding a new subject after it.

➤ Although she won a scholarship, **she** does not have the right to skip classes.

23d Relating sentence parts

When the subject of a sentence is described as being or doing the logically impossible, the sentence has **faulty predication**. Similarly, mismatches between a verb and its complement can obscure meaning.

(1) Mismatch between subject and verb

A sentence's subject and verb must create a meaningful idea.

MISMATCH The absence of detail screams out at the reader. [An *absence* cannot scream.]

REVISION The reader immediately notices the absence of detail.

When a form of the verb *be* joins two parts of a sentence, these two parts should be logically related.

Free speech

➤ ~~The importance of free speech~~ is essential to a democracy. [*Importance* cannot be essential.]

(2) Mismatch of verbs and complements

A verb and its complement should fit together meaningfully. To make sure that a relative pronoun in the object position is connected logically to a verb, replace the pronoun with its antecedent. Then check that the verb and object have a logical connection.

MISMATCH The inspiration that the author created touched young writers. [*The inspiration* is the antecedent for *that*. "The author created the inspiration" does not make sense.]

TEST The author created the inspiration. [Not logical]

REVISION The author inspired young writers.

Verbs used to report the words of others appear in signal phrases and are followed by specific types of complements. A few common verbs and their complements are listed below.

VERBS FOR SIGNAL PHRASES AND THEIR COMPLEMENTS

Verb + *that* noun clause

agree	claim	report	suggest
argue	demonstrate	state	think

➤ The researcher **reported that the weather patterns had changed.**

Verb + noun phrase + *that* noun clause

convince	remind	tell

➤ He **told the reporters that he was planning to resign.**

Verb + *wh-* noun clause

demonstrate	discuss	report	suggest
describe	explain	state	wonder

➤ She **described what had happened.**

EXERCISE 23.1

Revise the following sentences so that each verb is followed by a conventional complement. When you use reporting verbs before clauses, be sure the clauses follow one of these patterns.

1. The scholarship committee wondered that applications should follow criteria.
2. President Obama argued the spending cuts.
3. The two groups agreed how the problem could be solved.
4. Brown and Edwards described that improvements had been made to the old building.
5. They told that such a catastrophe could happen.

23e Avoiding *is when*, *is where*, and *reason . . . is because* constructions

Some common structures in our spoken language are considered faulty in academic writing because of their mismatched sentence parts.

(1) Mismatches in definitions

In a definition, the term being defined should be followed by a noun or a noun phrase, not an adverbial clause. Avoid using *is when* or *is where*.

- *Ecology* is ~~when you~~ study the relationships among living organisms and between living organisms and their environment.
- *Exploitative competition* is ~~where~~ two or more organisms ~~vie~~ vying for a limited resource such as food.

(2) Mismatch of *reason* with *is because*

In academic writing, avoid the construction the *reason . . . is because*. The word *because* means "for the reason that." Saying "the reason is for the reason that" is redundant.

- The ~~reason the~~ old train station was closed ~~is~~ because it had fallen into disrepair.

23f Including necessary words

Take care to include all necessary small words such as articles, prepositions, verbs, and conjunctions.

- Graduation will take place in the Bryce Jordan Center.

When a sentence has a compound verb (two verbs linked by a conjunction), you may need to supply a preposition for each verb.

in
➤ He neither **believes** ^ nor **approves of** exercise. [The verb *believes* does not work with *of*.]

All verbs, both auxiliary and main, should be included to make sentences complete.

been
➤ Voter turnout has never ^ and will never be 100 percent.

When a sentence consists of two short clauses and the verb in both clauses is the same, the verb in the second clause can be omitted.

➤ The wind **was** fierce and the thunder [was] deafening.

Include the word *that* before a clause when it makes the sentence easier to read.

that
➤ The paleontologists discovered ^ the fossil provided a link between the dinosaur and the modern bird.

That should always be retained when a sentence has two parallel clauses.

➤ The graph indicated **that the population had increased** but **that the number of homeowners had not**.

23g Completing comparisons

A comparison has two parts: someone or something is compared to someone or something else. Comparisons should include all necessary words to make the comparison complete.

than the one just published
➤ His first novel was better ^.

than your internship experience
➤ Your GRE scores are more important ^.

Complete comparisons must also be logical so that the meaning is clear.

UNCLEAR Her test scores are higher than the other students.

Are the *scores* being compared to *students*?

CLEAR Her test scores are higher than **those of** the other students.

CLEAR Her test scores are higher than the other **students' scores**.

23h Completing intensifiers

In speech, the intensifiers *so*, *such*, and *too* are used to mean "very," "unusually," or "extremely."

➤ That movie was **so** funny.

In academic and professional writing, however, the intensifiers *so*, *such*, and *too* require a completing phrase or clause.

➤ Child custody is **too** complex an issue **to cover in one class discussion**.

EXERCISE 23.2

Revise each of the following sentences to make them clear and complete.

1. Ralph McQuarrie sketched designs for R2D2 and Darth Vader, including his mask. Iain McCaig wanted to create something scarier for *The Phantom Menace.*
2. He drew generic male face with metal teeth and long red ribbons of hair falling in front of it.
3. He designed a face that looked as though it been flayed.
4. The evil visage of Darth Maul was so horrible. To balance the effect, McCaig added elegant black feathers.

24 Subordination and Coordination

Subordination and coordination indicate relationships between ideas and add variety to sentences.

24a Using subordination effectively

Using subordination allows you to clarify the relationships among the ideas in a sentence. Subordinate grammatical structures (dependent clauses, phrases, even single words) cannot stand alone; they are attached to or embedded in an independent (or main) clause.

(1) Subordinating conjunctions

A **subordinating conjunction** specifies the relationship between a dependent clause and an independent clause. For example, it might signal a causal relationship.

➤ Our team won the swim meet **because the members inspire one another**.

Some Frequently Used Subordinating Conjunctions

Cause	*because*
Concession	*although, even though*
Condition	*if, unless*
Effect	*so that*
Sequence	*before, after*
Time	*when*

By using subordinating conjunctions, you can combine short sentences and indicate how they are related.

After we
➤ We spent all day Saturday studying. We went to hear Kofi
Annan at Schwab Auditorium.

(2) Relative pronouns

Dependent clauses can begin with a **relative pronoun** (*who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, or *whose*).

➤ The Roman temple has a portico **that opens to the morning sun**.

➤ Steven Spielberg produced and directed a film about Abraham
which quickly won many awards, including the Oscar for best actor
Lincoln. [Adding a dependent clause (beginning with the relative pronoun *which*) embeds details into the sentence without sacrificing conciseness.]

CAUTION

A relative clause beginning with *which* can modify a specific word or phrase—or refer to an entire independent clause. Take care to make your reference explicit.

➤ He is a top graduate of our prestigious business school, which should guarantee him many interviews.

24b Using coordination effectively

Coordinate means "being of equal rank." Use coordination to link elements that have the same grammatical form. For example, they may be two words that are both adjectives, two phrases that are both prepositional, or two clauses that are both independent.

a **stunning** and **satisfying** conclusion [adjectives]

in the attic or **in the basement** [prepositional phrases]

The company was losing money, yet **the employees suspected nothing**. [independent or main clauses]

To indicate the relationship between coordinate words, phrases, or clauses, choose an appropriate coordinating conjunction.

Coordinating Conjunctions

Addition	*and*
Alternative	*or, not*
Cause	*for*
Contrast	*but, yet*
Result	*so*

➤ The hike to the top of Angels Landing has countless switchbacks. ~~It also has~~ *and* dangerous drop-offs. [Using coordination helps avoid unnecessary repetition.]

You can also link two independent clauses with a semicolon, a semicolon and an adverbial conjunction (such as *however* or *nevertheless*), or a colon. Each connection indicates a specific relationship between the two clauses.

➤ Hikers follow the path; climbers scale the cliff wall.

The careful punctuation of two independent clauses will help you avoid comma splices and fused sentences (chapter **19**).

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

CHOOSING CONJUNCTIONS

In English, use either a coordinating conjunction or a subordinating conjunction (but not both) to signal a connection between clauses.

➤ **Because** he had a headache, ~~**so**~~ he went to the health center.

➤ *He* **Because** had a headache, **so** he went to the health center.

EXERCISE 24.1

Using subordination and coordination, revise the sentences in the following paragraph so that they emphasize the ideas you think are important.

[1]The Lummi tribe lives in the Northwest. [2]The Lummis have a belief about sorrow and loss. [3]They believe that grief is a burden. [4]According to their culture, this burden should not be carried alone. [5]After the terrorist attack on the World Trade Center, the Lummis wanted to help shoulder the burden of grief felt by others. [6]Some of the Lummis carve totem poles. [7]These carvers crafted a healing totem pole. [8]They gave this pole to the citizens of New York. [9]Many of the citizens of New York had family members who were killed in the terrorist attacks. [10]The Lummis do not believe that the pole itself heals. [11]Rather, they believe that healing comes from the prayers and songs said over it. [12]For them, healing is not the responsibility of a single person. [13]They believe that it is the responsibility of the community.

24c Avoiding faulty or excessive subordination and coordination

(1) Choosing precise conjunctions

Because subordinating conjunctions specify a relationship between ideas, choose them carefully.

Because
➤ As time was running out, I randomly filled in the remaining circles on the exam sheet. [The use of *as* is distracting because it can mean either "because" or "while."]

Your choice of coordinating conjunction should also convey your meaning precisely.

➤ The rain continued to fall, ~~and~~ so the concert was canceled. [To indicate a cause-and-consequence relationship, *so* is more precise than *and*, which indicates that the rain and concert are equally significant.]

(2) Excessive subordination and coordination

Subordination and coordination are less effective when overused. In the following sentence, two dependent clauses compete for the reader's focus.

INEFFECTIVE SUBORDINATION

Although researchers used to believe that ancient Egyptians were the first to domesticate cats, they now think that cats may have provided company for humans five thousand years earlier **because** the intact skeleton of a cat has been discovered in a Neolithic village on Cyprus.

The revision is clearer than the original sentence because it eliminates one of the dependent clauses.

REVISED

Although researchers used to believe that ancient Egyptians were the first to domesticate cats, they now think that cats may have provided company for humans five thousand years earlier. They base their revised estimate on the discovery of an intact cat skeleton in a Neolithic village on Cyprus.

Overuse of coordination results in a rambling sentence that is difficult to follow.

INEFFECTIVE COORDINATION	The lake was surrounded by forest, and it was large and clean, so it looked refreshing.
REVISED	Surrounded by forest, the large, clean lake looked refreshing.

EXERCISE 24.2

Revise the following sentences to eliminate faulty or excessive coordination and subordination.

1. Duct tape was invented for the U.S. military during World War II to keep the moisture out of ammunition cases because it was strong and waterproof.
2. Duct tape was originally called "duck tape" as it was waterproof and ducks are like that too and because it was made of cotton duck, which is a durable, tightly woven material.
3. When the war was over, house builders used duck tape to connect ductwork together, and the builders started to refer to duck tape as "duct tape" and eventually the color of the tape changed from the green that was used during the war to silver, which matched the ducts.
4. Many new colorful forms of duct tape are available, although they are more expensive and less practical than standard silver.

Parallelism is the use of grammatically equivalent structures to clarify meaning and to emphasize ideas. Two or more elements are considered parallel when they have similar grammatical forms—when, for example, all are nouns or all are prepositional phrases.

25a Using coordinating conjunctions

Parallel elements are frequently joined by a **coordinating conjunction** (*and*, *but*, *or*, *yet*, *so*, *nor*, or *for*).

- The new teacher is both determined **and** dedicated.
- Her goals include publicizing student and faculty research, increasing research funding, **and** improving research facilities.
- He said that we would conduct a similar project **but** that we would likely get different results.

25b Repeating words and grammatical forms for paired ideas

Parallel structures allow you to pair ideas and create connections in sentences. By repeating a preposition, the infinitive marker *to*, or the introductory word of a clause, you can create parallel structures that are clear, succinct, and emphatic.

- She wanted her audience **to remember** the protest song and ^~~**be understanding of**~~ *to understand* its origin.
- The team vowed **that** they would support each other, **that** they would play their best, and ^ *that* they would win the tournament.

Repeating a pattern emphasizes the relationship of ideas. The following example includes the *-ing* form (present participle) of two different verbs.

- Many Detroit homeowners are selling their houses or ^~~should remodel~~ *remodeling* to enhance value.

Two or three structures joined by *and*, *but*, or *or* should be parallel, as in the following sentence.

- Mortgage rates ^~~are rising,~~ *rise,* and building codes change, but the real estate market remains strong.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

PARALLELISM

Parallel elements make your writing easy and pleasurable to read. But consider breaking from the parallel pattern to emphasize a point. For example, to describe a friend, you could start with two adjectives and then switch to a noun phrase.

➤ My friend Alison is **kind**, **modest**, and **the smartest mathematician in the state**.

25c Creating parallelism in lists, headings, and outlines

Each item in a list or formal outline should be parallel (**2c**). Headings in any document should be in parallel form whenever possible (**7a**).

➤ People all around me are **buying**, **remodeling**, or **selling** their houses.

➤ In his speech, the president charged his generation with lofty goals: (1) reigniting economic growth, (2) restoring the American dream, and (3) ~~to make sure~~ *putting* government *to* works for average citizens.

25d Using correlative conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions (or **correlatives**) are pairs of words that link other words, phrases, or clauses, including *both . . . and*, *either . . . or*, *neither . . . nor*, *not only . . . but also*, and *whether . . . or*. Always use the same grammatical structures following each conjunction in the pair.

➤ **Whether** at home **or** at school, he is always busy.

His team practices not only

➤ ~~Not only practicing~~ at 6 a.m. during the week, but ~~his team~~ also ~~scrimmages~~ on Sunday afternoons. [The editing makes the elements after the correlative conjunctions *not only . . . but also* parallel.]

EXERCISE 25.1

Rewrite the following sentences to create parallel structures.

1. Helen was praised by the vice president, and her administrative assistant admired her.
2. When she hired new employees for her department, she looked for applicants who were accomplished, able to work hard, and able to speak clearly.
3. At meetings, Helen was always prepared, participating actively yet politely, and generated innovative responses to department concerns.
4. In her annual report, she wrote that her most important achievements were attracting new majors and scholarship donations were higher.
5. When asked about her leadership style, Helen said that she preferred collaborating with others rather than to work alone in her office.
6. Whether in the department's meetings or conventions, Helen prepared her remarks in advance.

26 Emphasis

In any piece of writing, some of your ideas are more important than others. You can use emphasis to make those ideas stand out.

26a Placing words and using punctuation

In every sentence some words receive more emphasis than others. In general, the major stress of any sentence comes at the end or toward the end of a sentence. When you read aloud the brief sentence *We discussed the film,* you will likely stress *film.* Take advantage of this tendency by finishing a sentence with the most important information—usually an idea that is new to the reader.

Some viewers *the film's stop-motion animation*

➤ ~~The film's stop-motion animation was~~ raved about ~~by many viewers.~~

To ensure that readers focus on the end of the sentence, use an occasional colon or dash to set off the information (**32b, 35d**).

➤ The everyday episodes of online cruelty added together became what he was warned about: bullying.

26b Ordering ideas from least to most important

By arranging your ideas in **climactic order**—from least important to most important—you build up suspense. In the following example, the writer places the reasons to

avoid the online model of Facebook in order of increasing importance:

➤ A growing wave of Internet start-ups seeks to avoid the Facebook model that draws users online, consumes all their free time, and addicts them to an alternative to real life.

26c Repeating important words

Repetition used deliberately emphasizes key words or ideas (**25b**).

> We **forget** all too soon the things we thought we could never **forget**. We **forget** the loves and betrayals alike, **forget** what we whispered and what we screamed, **forget** who we are.
>
> —JOAN DIDION, "On Keeping a Notebook"

26d Inverting word order

Most sentences begin with a subject and end with a predicate (**27c**). When you move words out of their normal order, you draw attention to them. Notice the inverted word order in the second sentence of the following passage.

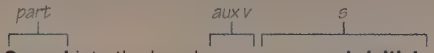
> [1]The Library Committee met with the City Council on several occasions to persuade them to fund the building of a library annex. [2]So successful were their efforts that a new wing will be added by next year. [3]This wing will contain archival materials that were previously stored in the basement.

The modifier *so successful* appears at the beginning of the sentence, rather than in its normal position, after the verb: Their efforts were *so successful* that . . . . The inverted word order emphasizes the committee's accomplishment.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

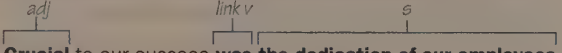
INVERTING WORD ORDER

Although most English sentences take the form of subject-verb-object, more interesting ones involve inversions of various types. Sometimes the main verb in the form of a participle is placed at the beginning of the sentence. The subject and the auxiliary verb(s) are then inverted.



➤ **Carved** into the bench **were someone's initials**.
[COMPARE: Someone's initials were carved into the bench.]

An adjective may also begin a sentence. In this type of sentence, the subject and the linking verb are inverted.



➤ **Crucial** to our success **was the dedication of our employees**.
[COMPARE: The dedication of our employees was crucial to our success.]

26e Using an occasional short sentence

In a paragraph of long or complicated sentences, a short sentence works well for emphasis, especially when it appears immediately after an especially long sentence.

➤ After organizing the kitchen, buying the groceries, slicing the vegetables, mowing the lawn, weeding the garden, hanging the decorations, and setting up the grill, I was ready to have a good time when my guests arrived. **Then the phone rang**.

Take care not to use too many short sentences; the overall effect is choppy (**27a**).

EXERCISE 26.1

Use the strategy in parentheses to add emphasis in the following sentences. You may add or delete words as necessary.

1. (climactic order) In the 1960 Olympics, Wilma Rudolph tied the world record in the 100-meter race, she tied the record in the 400-meter relay, she won the hearts of fans from around the world, and she broke the record in the 200-meter race.
2. (inversion) Rudolph's Olympic achievement is impressive, but her victory over a crippling disease is even more spectacular.
3. (occasional short sentence) Rudolph was born prematurely, weighing only four and one-half pounds. As a child, she suffered from double pneumonia, scarlet fever, and then polio.
4. (inversion) Her siblings' willingness to help was essential to her recovery, as were her mother's vigilant care and her own determination.
5. (climactic order) Rudolph set a scoring record in basketball, she set the standard for future track and field stars, and she set an Olympic record in track.

27 Variety

A variety of sentence types and lengths makes your writing lively and distinctive.

27a Varying sentence length and form

Avoid the choppy effect of a series of short sentences by combining some of them into longer sentences. You can combine sentences by using coordinating conjunctions (such as *and*, *but*, and *or*) to show a connection.

and St. Paul are called , but they

➤ Minneapolis ^~~is one of~~ the Twin Cities. ^~~St. Paul is the other.~~ ^~~They~~ differ in many ways.

You can also combine sentences using subordinating conjunctions (such as *because*, *although*, and *when*) or relative pronouns (such as *who*, *that*, and *which*).

Although legislation , plans

➤ ^~~Legislation~~ on space tourism has not been passed. ^~~Plans~~ for a commercial rocket service are going forward anyway. [Adding *although* creates a dependent clause and clarifies the logical relationship between ideas.]

that

➤ Today, lawmakers discussed some new legislation. ^~~This legislation~~ would promote the safety of rocket passengers. [The editing puts emphasis on the first clause. The relative pronoun *that* introduces a description of the legislation.]

27b Varying sentence openings

Many writers begin their sentences with a subject. Although this pattern is common, relying on it too heavily—especially in too many sentences in a row—can make writing sound dull. Experiment with the following alternatives for beginning your sentences.

BEGINNING WITH AN ADVERB

➤ The dentist stopped drilling immediately and asked me how I was doing.

BEGINNING WITH A PHRASE

➤ The reporter, reflecting on the election, understood clearly how the incumbent defeated the challenger. [participial phrase]

➤ **A town of historic interest**, Santa Fe also has many art galleries. [appositive phrase]

BEGINNING WITH A TRANSITIONAL EXPRESSION

In each of the following examples, the transitional expression shows the relationship between the ideas in the pair of sentences.

➤ Many restaurants close within a few years of opening. **But** others, which offer good food at reasonable prices, become well established.

➤ Independently owned restaurants struggle to get started for a number of reasons. **First of all**, they have to compete against successful restaurant chains.

BEGINNING WITH A DEPENDENT CLAUSE

➤ When I was twelve years old, I started making movies. [COMPARE: I started making movies when I was twelve years old.]

27c Using cumulative and periodic sentences

In a cumulative sentence, the idea expressed in the independent clause comes first, followed by supporting ideas and details.

➤ **The day was hot for June**, a pale sun burning in a cloudless sky, wilting the last of the irises, the rhododendron blossoms drooping.

—ADAM HASLETT, "Devotion"

In a **periodic sentence**, however, the independent clause comes last, emphasized just before the period.

➤ Because the scar resulting from the burn is typically much larger than the original lesion, allowing for less intricacy, **the designs tend to be much simpler than those used in tattoos**.

—NINA JABLONSKI, *Skin: A Natural History*

Both of these types of sentences can be effective. Because cumulative sentences are more common, however, the less common periodic sentence tends to provide emphasis.

27d Using questions, exclamations, and commands

You can vary the sentences in a paragraph by introducing an occasional question, exclamation, or command.

QUESTION

It can be uncomfortable for a boy to watch the frenzied, uninhibited enthusiasm of girl fans screaming for their idols, whether it's Sinatra, the Beatles, or Michael Jackson. That is partly jealousy too—*who wouldn't want to be the one who inspires girls to make that kind of noise?* But it's also partly because we envy that enthusiasm.

—ROB SHEFFIELD, *Talking to Girls about Duran Duran*

You can either answer the question or let readers answer it for themselves, in which case it is called a **rhetorical question**.

EXCLAMATION

> But at other moments, the classroom is so lifeless or painful or confused—and I so powerless to do anything about it—that my claim to be a teacher seems a transparent sham. Then the enemy is everywhere: in those students from some alien planet, in the subject I thought I knew, and in the personal pathology that keeps me earning my living this way. *What a fool I was to imagine that I had mastered this occult art—harder to divine than tea leaves and impossible for mortals to do even passably well!*
>
> —PARKER PALMER, *The Courage to Teach*

COMMAND

> Now I stare and stare at people shamelessly. *Stare.* It's the way to educate your eye.
>
> —WALKER EVANS, *Unclassified*

In this case, a one-word command, "Stare," provides variety.

EXERCISE 27.1

Use the strategy in parentheses to revise the following sentences for variety. You may want to combine, invert, shorten, or lengthen some of the sentences. Add or delete words as needed to provide clarification, relationships, and emphasis.

1. (combine) The civil rights activist and the conservative pundit appear to have little in common. They both take pleasure in addressing audiences.
2. (combine) Their ideologies could not be more different. Both see the Bible as a moral foundation. The well-being of the United States should be reconstructed from that biblical foundation.
3. (begin with an adverb and combine) Both liberal and conservative activists argue that their agenda is best for America's future. Neither group mentions the power and potential of working together.

EXERCISE 27.2

Rewrite each sentence so that it does not begin with a subject.

1. (begin with a phrase) John Spilsbury was an engraver and mapmaker from London who made the first jigsaw puzzle in about 1760.
2. (begin with a transitional expression) He pasted a map onto a piece of wood and used a fine-bladed saw to cut around the borders of the countries.
3. (begin with an adverb) The jigsaw puzzle was first an educational toy and has been a mainstay in households all over the world ever since its invention.
4. (begin with a phrase) The original puzzles were quite expensive because the wooden pieces were cut by hand.
5. (begin with an adverb) Most puzzles are made of cardboard today.
6. (periodic sentence) Lee's passion became mountain biking after he recovered, built up his strength, and gained self-confidence.
7. (cumulative sentence) He received donations and help from the community. His neighbors walked his two dogs. His coworkers brought precooked meals for the week.
8. (change one sentence to a question) There are multiple activities that can help survivors of traumatic brain injury toward recovery. Advocates believe that reviewing and practicing conversation and people skills are both essential to success.

28 **Good Usage** 350

a Appropriate word choice 350
b Inclusive language 351

29 **Precise Word Choice** 355

a Accurate and precise word choice 355
b Clichés and euphemisms 357
c Idioms and collocations 358
d Clear definitions 359

30 **Conciseness** 360

a Eliminating wordiness and other redundancies 360
b Using elliptical constructions 363

28 Good Usage

Using the right words at the right time can make the difference between having your ideas taken seriously and seeing them brushed aside. The right words make your writing easy and pleasurable to read; they achieve a clear style that your audience understands and is appropriate for the occasion. Sentences that are ornate—including flowery or fancy language—may not be understood by a broad audience.

ORNATE The majority believes that achievement derives primarily from the diligent pursuit of allocated tasks.

CLEAR Most people believe that success results from hard work.

28a Appropriate word choice

You may find yourself writing for an audience that you know will welcome slang and colloquial expressions or for a specialized audience who will immediately understand technical jargon. Otherwise, the following advice can help you determine which words to use and which to avoid. A good dictionary will also help you. Words labeled *dialect*, *slang*, *colloquial*, *nonstandard*, or *unconventional* are generally inappropriate for academic and professional writing. If a word has no label, you can safely assume that it can be used in writing for school or work.

(1) Slang

Slang covers a wide range of words or expressions that are considered casual or fashionable by people in a particular age group, locality, or profession. Although such phrases are used in conversation or in writing intended to mimic conversation, they are usually out of place in academic or professional writing.

(2) Conversational (or colloquial) words

Words labeled *colloquial* in a dictionary are fine for casual conversation and for written dialogues or personal essays on a light topic. Such words are sometimes used for special effect in academic writing, but you should usually replace them with more appropriate words. For example, conversational words such as *dumb* and *kid around* could be replaced by *illogical* and *tease.*

(3) Regionalisms

Regionalisms—such as *poke* for "bag" and *sweeper* for "vacuum cleaner"—can make essay writing lively and distinctive, but they are often considered too informal for most academic and professional writing.

(4) Technical words or jargon

When writing for a diverse audience, an effective writer will not refer to the need for bifocals as *presbyopia.* However, technical language is appropriate when the audience can understand it (as when one physician writes to another about tachycardia) or when the audience (a heart patient, for example) would benefit by learning the terms in question.

28b Inclusive language

By choosing words that are inclusive rather than exclusive, you invite readers into your writing. Prejudiced or derogatory language about skin color, cultural-ethnic background, body size or shape, physical or mental ability, or sexual orientation has no place in academic or professional writing; using it undermines your authority and credibility.

(1) Nonsexist language

Effective writers show equal respect for males and females. For example, they avoid using *man* to refer to people in general because they understand that the word excludes women.

[K Human achievements]

➤ **Man's** achievements in science are impressive.

➤ The **wives** of the university's administrators always meet on the Friday afternoon before a football game.

REVISING SEXIST LANGUAGE

When reviewing drafts, revise the following types of sexist language.

- **Generic *he/his*.** Revise by changing *he* to *he or she*, using a plural form, or rewriting the sentence.

  [Don't use]

  ➤ A doctor should listen to [their] his patients.

  ➤ By listening to patients, **doctors** obtain important diagnostic information. [elimination of *his* by revising the sentence]

- **Terms such as *mankind*.** Replace terms such as *mankind* or those with *-ess*, *-ix*, or *-man* endings (*stewardess*, *chairman*) with gender-neutral terms.

  [all working people]

  ➤ Labor laws benefit [the] ~~the common man~~.

- **Stereotypical gender roles.** Use gender-neutral terms.

  [University pilots] [their flight plans]

  ➤ ~~Each university pilot~~ must supply [his] ~~his flight plan~~ before takeoff.

- **Inconsistent use of titles.** Use titles or full names, but do so consistently.

  [Peter and Mary Holmes]

  ➤ ~~Mr. Holmes and his wife, Mary,~~ took a long trip to China. [title removed]

- **Unstated gender assumption.** Avoid stereotypical language and assumptions.

  [Have] [parents]

  ➤ Ask your [mother to] make your costume for the school pageant.

EXERCISE 28.1

Revise the following sentences to eliminate sexist language.

1. The men's and ladies' teams volunteered to raise money for new athletic uniforms.
2. Mothers should read to their small children.
3. Some fans admired the actress because of her movies; others praised her daring as an aviatrix.
4. For six years, he worked as a mailman in a small town.

(2) Nonracist language

Rarely is it necessary to identify anyone's race or ethnicity in academic or professional writing except, for example, if you are writing a demographic report, an argument against existing racial inequities, or a historical account of a particular event involving ethnic groups. Determining which terms a particular group prefers can be difficult because preferences sometimes vary within a group and change over time. One conventional way to refer to Americans of a specific descent is to include an adjective before the word *American*: *African American*, *Asian American*, *European American*, *Latin American*, *Mexican American*, *Native American*. In addition to *African American* and *European American*, *Black* (or *black*) and *White* (or *white*) have long been used. People of Spanish-speaking descent may prefer *Chicano/Chicana*, *Hispanic*, *Latino/Latina*, *Puerto Rican*, or other terms. Members of cultures that are indigenous to North America may prefer a specific name such as *Cherokee* or *Haida*, though some also accept *American Indian*, *indigenous peoples*, or *Native Peoples*.

(3) Writing about any difference respectfully

If a writing assignment requires you to distinguish people based on age, physical or mental ability, geographical area,

religion, or sexual orientation, show respect to the human beings you discuss by using the terms they prefer.

(a) Referring to age Although some people object to the term *senior citizen*, a better alternative has not emerged. When used respectfully, the term refers to a person who has reached the age of retirement (but may not have decided to retire) and is eligible for certain privileges granted by society. However, if you know your audience would object to the term *senior citizen*, find out which alternative is preferred.

(b) Referring to disability or illness A current recommendation for referring to disabilities and illnesses is "to put the person first." Place focus on the individual rather than on the limitation: *persons with disabilities* is preferred over *disabled persons*, *the teenager with autism* rather than *that autistic*. You can find out whether such person-first expressions are preferred by noting whether they are used in the articles and books (or by the people) you consult.

(c) Referring to geographical areas Certain geographical terms need to be used with special care. Though most frequently used to refer to people from the United States, the term *American* may also refer to people from Canada, Mexico, and Central or South America. If your audience may be confused by this term, use *people from the United States* or *U.S. citizens* instead.

The term *Arab* refers to people who speak Arabic. If you cannot use specific terms such as *Iraqi* or *Saudi Arabian*, be sure you know that a country's people speak Arabic and not another language. Iranians, for example, are not Arabs because they speak Farsi.

(d) Referring to religion Reference to a person's religion should be made only if it is relevant. Because religions have

both conservative and liberal followers, be careful not to make generalizations about political stances.

(e) Referring to sexual orientation If your purpose for writing makes it necessary to identify sexual orientation, choose terms used by the people you are discussing. For instance, *LGBTQ* includes preferred terms for all the people who are not firmly heterosexual: lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, or questioning.

29 Precise Word Choice

By choosing the right word and putting it in the right place, you can communicate exactly what you mean and make your writing memorable to your intended audience.

29a Accurate and precise word choice

(1) Denotations and connotations

Denotations are definitions of words, such as those that appear in dictionaries. For example, the noun *beach* denotes a sandy or pebbly shore. Select words whose denotations convey your point exactly.

➤ Many of Sofia Coppola's films are ~~obsessed~~ *fascinated* with celebrity. [Because *obsessed* can mean "an unhealthy interest" its use is imprecise.]

Connotations are the associations evoked by a word. The context in which a word appears affects the associations it evokes. In a report on shoreline management, *beach* has scientific and geographic connotations; in a fashion magazine, this word is associated with bathing suits, sunglasses, and sunscreen. The challenge for writers is to choose the words that are most likely to spark the appropriate connotations in their readers' minds.

➤ Mr. Kreuger's ~~relentlessness~~ has earned praise from his supervisors.
[*Relentlessness*, a quality with negative connotations, is unlikely to be praised.]

(2) Providing readers with helpful details

A **general word** is all-inclusive, indefinite, and sweeping in scope. A **specific word** is precise, definite, and limited in scope.

General	Specific	More Specific/Concrete
food	fast food	cheeseburger
place	city	Atlanta

An **abstract word** refers to a concept or idea, a quality or trait, or anything else that cannot be touched, heard, or seen. A **concrete word** signifies a particular object, a specific action, or anything that can be touched, heard, or seen.

ABSTRACT democracy, evil, strength, charity

CONCRETE mosquito, hammer, plastic, fog

As you select words, be as specific and concrete as you can. Ask yourself questions about what you want to say: Exactly who? Exactly what? Exactly when? Exactly where? Exactly how? In the following example, notice what a difference concrete words can make in expressing an idea and how adding details can expand or develop it.

VAGUE She has kept no reminders of performing in her youth.

SPECIFIC She has kept no sequined costume, no photographs, no fliers or posters from that part of her youth.

—LOUISE ERDRICH, "The Leap"

(3) Figurative language

Figurative language is the use of words in an imaginative rather than a literal sense. Similes and metaphors are the chief **figures of speech**. A **simile** is a comparison of dissimilar things that includes *like* or *as*. A **metaphor** is an implied comparison of dissimilar things, without *like* or *as*.

SIMILE

He was **like a piece of rare and delicate china which was always being saved from breaking and finally fell**.

—ALICE WALKER, "To Hell with Dying"

METAPHOR

His **money was a sharp pair of scissors** that snipped rapidly through tangles of red tape.

—HISAYE YAMAMOTO, "The Brown House"

29b Clichés and euphemisms

When forced or overused, certain expressions lose their impact. For example, the expressions *bite the dust, breath of fresh air*, and *smooth as silk* were once striking and thus effective. Excessive use, though, has drained them of their original force and made them **clichés**. Newer expressions such as *put a spin on something* and *think outside the box* have also lost their vitality because of overuse. Nonetheless, clichés are so much a part of the language that nearly every writer uses them from time to time. But effective writers often give a fresh twist to an old saying.

> I seek a narrative, a fiction, to order days like the one I spent several years ago, on a gray June day in Chicago, when I took a roller-coaster ride on the bell curve of my experience.
>
> —GAYLE PEMBERTON, "The Zen of Bigger Thomas"

[Notice how much more effective this expression is than a reference to "being on an emotional roller coaster."]

Sometimes writers coin new expressions called **euphemisms** to substitute for words that have coarse or unpleasant connotations. To avoid the word *dying*, for example, a writer might say that someone is *passing on*. However, euphemisms sometimes obscure facts. Euphemisms such as *revenue enhancement* for *tax hike* and *pre-owned* for *used* are considered insincere or deceitful. And a euphemism such as *ethnic cleansing* is a frightening camouflage for actual *genocide*.

EXERCISE 29.1

Replace the following overused expressions with carefully chosen words. Then use the replacements in sentences.

1. all ears
2. back to the drawing board
3. take a breather
4. mail it in

29c Idioms and collocations

Idioms are fixed expressions whose meanings cannot be entirely determined by knowing the meanings of their parts—*pull weight*, *turn on a dime*, *put a sock in it*. **Collocations** are common combinations of words (*strong coffee*, *fast plane*). Unlike idioms, they have meanings that *can* be determined by knowing the meanings of their parts—*depend on*, *fond of*, *little while*, *right now*. Regardless of whether you are using an

idiom or a collocation, if you make even a small inadvertent change to the expected wording, you may distract or confuse your readers.

➤ She bought two *bars* ~~blocks~~ of soap.

➤ They had *a vested* ~~an invested~~ interest in the project.

As you edit your writing, keep an eye out for idioms or collocations that might not be worded correctly. Then check a dictionary or the **Glossary of Usage** at the end of the book to ensure that your usage is appropriate. Writers sometimes have trouble with the following collocations, all of which contain prepositions.

CHOOSING THE RIGHT PREPOSITION

Instead of	Use
according **with**	according **to** the source
accused **for**	accused **of** the crime
based **off of**	based **on** the novel
in accordance **to**	in accordance **with** policy
independent **to**	independent **of** his family
happened **on**	happened **by** accident
superior **than**	superior **to** others

29d Clear definitions

When words have more than one meaning, establish which meaning you have in mind in a particular piece of writing. A definition can set the terms of the discussion.

➤ In this essay, I use the word *communism* **in the Marxist sense of social organization based on the holding of all property in common.**

A **formal definition** first states the term to be defined, then puts it into a class, and finally differentiates it from other members of that class.

- A *phosphene* [term] is **a luminous visual image** [class] that **results from applying pressure to the eyeball** [differentiation].

A synonym or examples can easily clarify the meaning of a term.

- *Machismo*, **confidence with an attitude**, can be a pose rather than a reality.
- Many homophones **(such as *be* and *bee*, *in* and *inn*, or *see* and *sea*)** are not spelling problems.

30 Conciseness

Effective writers convey their thoughts clearly and efficiently, choosing each word wisely, making sure their readers understand.

30a Eliminating wordiness and other redundancies

After writing a first draft, review your sentences to make sure that they contain only the words necessary to make your point.

(1) Redundancy

Restating a key point in different words can help readers understand it. But if you rephrase readily understood terms, your work will suffer from **redundancy**—repetition for no good reason.

- Ballerinas auditioned ~~in the tryouts~~ for *The Nutcracker.*

- Mr. Hickey ^ ~~is currently employed~~ at Blue Meadow Farms^, ~~where he works as a farrier.~~ works as a farrier

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

USING RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Review your sentences to make sure that no clause includes both a personal pronoun (*I, me, he, him, she, her, it*) and a relative pronoun (*who, that, which*) referring to the same antecedent.

- The drug **that** we were testing it has not been approved by the Food and Drug Administration.
- The professor who directs the emphasis ~~she~~ likes to meet with students.

(2) Unnecessary words and wordy phrases

As you edit a draft, delete words that add no meaning to adjacent words and shorten wordy expressions.

- ^ ~~In the event that~~ taxes are raised, ^ ~~expect complaints on the part of the voters.~~ oters will complain

- ^ ~~In my humble opinion, the fact that students are forbidden from bringing cars to campus is one feature of my belief that they~~ will not drink and drive. Students without access to their cars

In addition, watch for vague words such as *area, aspect, factor, feature, kind, situation, thing,* and *type.* They may signal wordiness.

- ^ ~~In an employment situation, effective~~ communication is essential at work. Effective

REPLACEMENTS FOR WORDY EXPRESSIONS

Instead of	Use
at this moment (point) in time	now, today
due to the fact that	because
for the purpose of	for
it is clear (obvious) that	clearly (obviously)
without a doubt	undoubtedly
in the final analysis	finally
in my opinion	[can be omitted]
in today's society	today

USELESS WORDS IN COMMON PHRASES

yellow [in color]	connect [up together]
at 9:45 a.m. [in the morning]	[really and truly] fearless
[basic] essentials	circular [in shape]
[make an] estimate	large [in size]

(3) *There are* and *it is*

There or *it* may function as an **expletive**—a word that signals that the subject of the sentence will follow the verb, usually a form of *be*. Writers use expletives to emphasize words that would not be emphasized in the typical subject-verb order.

- Three children were playing in the yard. [typical order]
- There were three children playing in the yard. [use of expletive]

However, if you find that you have drafted several sentences that begin with expletives, revise a few of them.

- Hundreds were
  There were ~~hundreds~~ of fans crowding onto the field.
- Joining the crowd .
  It was frightening ~~to join the crowd.~~

(4) Relative pronouns

The relative pronouns *who*, *which*, or *that* can frequently be deleted without affecting the meaning of a sentence. If one

of these pronouns is followed by a form of the verb *be* (*am*, *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*), you can often omit the pronoun and sometimes the verb as well.

- The change ~~that~~ the young senator proposed yesterday angered most legislators.
- Bromo, ~~which is~~ Java's highest mountain, towers above its neighbors.

30b Using elliptical constructions

An **elliptical construction** is one that deliberately omits words that can be understood from the context.

- Speed is the goal for some swimmers, endurance ~~is the goal~~ for others, and relaxation ~~is the goal~~ for still others.

Sometimes, as an aid to clarity, commas mark omissions in elliptical constructions.

- My family functioned like a baseball team: my mom was the coach; my brother, the pitcher; and my sister, the shortstop. [Use semicolons to separate items with internal commas.]

EXERCISE 30.1

Rewrite the sentences below to eliminate wordiness.

1. He submitted in an application letter and résumé for every job advertised.
2. Prior to the time of the ceremony, he had not received an award.
3. The library is located in the vicinity of the post office.
4. The fans who were watching television made a lot of noise.
5. Compulsory attendance in all English classes is required.
6. It is important to register early.

P

PUNCTUATION

31 The Comma 366

- **a** Joining clauses with coordinating conjunctions 366
- **b** Setting off introductory words, phrases, or clauses 367
- **c** Separating elements in a series 368
- **d** Separating coordinate adjectives 369
- **e** Setting off nonessential elements 370
- **f** Setting off transitions, parenthetical expressions, and contrasted elements 371
- **g** Setting off dates, place names, and elements in an address 372
- **h** Setting off quotations 373
- **i** Unnecessary commas 373

32 The Semicolon and the Colon 375

- **a** The semicolon 375
- **b** The colon 377

33 The Apostrophe 379

- **a** Indicating ownership and other relationships 380
- **b** Marking omissions in contractions 384
- **c** Forming certain plurals 384

34 Quotation Marks 385

- **a** Direct quotations 385
- **b** Titles of short works 387
- **c** With other punctuation marks 388
- **d** Misused quotation marks 390

35 The Period and Other Punctuation Marks 391

- **a** The period 391
- **b** The question mark 392
- **c** The exclamation point 392
- **d** The dash 393
- **e** Parentheses 394
- **f** Square brackets 395
- **g** Ellipsis points 396
- **h** The slash 397

31 The Comma

Pauses are often signaled by commas, but pauses are not a reliable guide for comma placement. Commas are often called for where speakers do not pause, and speakers may pause when no comma is necessary. Better guidance for using commas comes from some basic principles for comma usage.

31a Joining clauses with coordinating conjunctions

Use a comma before a coordinating conjunction (*and*, *but*, *for*, *nor*, *or*, *so*, or *yet*) to join independent clauses.

- George H. W. Bush served as president from 1989 to 1993, **and** his son George W. Bush served from 2001 to 2009.
- Presidents Andrew Johnson and Lyndon Johnson shared the same last name, **but** they were not related.

Without the conjunctions, the sentences above would be considered comma splices; without both the conjunctions and the commas, the sentences would be considered fused sentences (see chapter **19**).

When clauses are short, commas may be omitted.

- His grandson ran for president but his son did not.

EXERCISE 31.1

Insert commas where needed.

1. When people get goose bumps, they may be reacting to a sudden drop in the temperature or they may be responding to a strong emotion.
2. In general, people notice goose bumps on their forearms but some people also report having goose bumps on their legs.
3. When a goose is plucked, its flesh protrudes and these protrusions are what goose bumps supposedly resemble but the technical term for goose bumps is *piloerection.*
4. The German and Italian languages also have words that refer to goose flesh but French and Spanish translations refer to hens.
5. Many people report that they get goose bumps when they hear about heroic behavior yet it is not uncommon for people to have a similar response to beauty in nature or art.
6. Not only humans experience piloerection but other mammals do as well.

31b Setting off introductory words, phrases, or clauses

Place a comma after a word, phrase, or clause that comes before the main clause of a sentence.

- **Clearly,** the project deserves additional funding.
- **Despite a downturn in the national economy,** the number of students enrolled in this university has increased.
- **Because many students cannot afford tuition,** they find part-time jobs or apply for loans.

A comma may be omitted after a short introduction as long as the sentence is still clear.

- **In 2013** the enrollment at the university increased.

EXERCISE 31.2

Insert necessary commas in the following paragraph. Explain why each comma is needed. Some sentences may not require commas.

[1]If you had to describe sound would you call it a wave? [2]Although sound cannot be seen people have described it this way for a long time. [3]In fact the Greek philosopher Aristotle believed that sound traveling through air was like waves in the sea. [4]Envisioning waves in the air he hypothesized that sound would not be able to pass through a vacuum because there would be no air to transmit it. [5]Aristotle's hypothesis was not tested until nearly two thousand years later. [6]In 1654 Otto von Guericke found that he could not hear a bell ringing inside the vacuum he had created. [7]Thus Guericke established the necessity of air for sound transmission. [8]However although most sound reaches us through the air it travels faster through liquids and solids.

31c Separating elements in a series

A comma appears after each item in a series except the last one.

- Ethics are based on **moral**, **social**, or **cultural values**. [words]
- The company's code of ethics encourages **seeking criticism of work**, **correcting mistakes**, and **acknowledging the contributions of everyone**. [phrases]

Following a tradition in print and online journalism, some writers omit the comma between the final two items in a series. But omitting the comma can lead to confusion, and including it is never wrong.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

COMMAS AND CONJUNCTIONS IN A SERIES

How do the following sentences differ?

- We discussed them all: life, liberty, **and** the pursuit of happiness.
- We discussed them all: life **and** liberty **and** the pursuit of happiness.
- We discussed them all: life, liberty, the pursuit of happiness.

The first sentence follows conventional guidelines; that is, a comma and a conjunction precede the last element in the series. The less conventional second and third sentences do more than convey information. Having two conjunctions and no commas, the second sentence slows down the pace of the reading, causing stress to be placed on each of the three elements in the series. In contrast, the third sentence, with commas but no conjunctions, speeds up the reading, as if to suggest that the rights listed do not need to be stressed because they are so familiar. To get a sense of how your sentences will be read and understood, try reading them aloud to yourself.

31d Separating coordinate adjectives

Two or more adjectives that precede the same noun are called **coordinate adjectives**. To test whether adjectives are coordinate, either interchange them or put *and* between them. If the altered version of the phrase is acceptable, the adjectives are coordinate and should be separated by a comma.

- Crossing the **rushing, shallow** creek, I slipped off a rock and fell into the water. [COMPARE: a rushing and shallow creek OR a shallow, rushing creek]

The adjectives in the following sentence are not separated by a comma. Notice that they cannot be interchanged or joined by *and*.

➤ Sitting in the water, I saw an **old wooden** bridge. [NOT a wooden old bridge OR an old and wooden bridge]

31e Setting off nonessential elements

Words, phrases, and clauses are considered nonessential when the information they convey is unnecessary for identifying who or what is being described or discussed. All nonessential elements should be set off by commas. No commas are used when the information answers the question *Which?*

ESSENTIAL WORD	The mountaineer **Walter Harper** was the first to summit Denali. [Which mountaineer? Walter Harper—no commas are needed]
NONESSENTIAL WORD	The first mountaineer to summit Denali, **Walter Harper,** was an Alaska Native. [Which first mountaineer? does not make sense—commas are needed]
ESSENTIAL PHRASE	The mountain **towering above us** brought to mind our abandoned plan for climbing it. [Which mountain? the one towering above us—no commas are needed]
NONESSENTIAL PHRASE	Denali, **towering above us,** brought to mind our abandoned plan for climbing it. [Which Denali? does not make sense—commas are needed]

ESSENTIAL CLAUSE	They climbed a mountain **that is over fifteen thousand feet high**. [Which mountain? one that is over fifteen thousand feet high—no comma is needed]
NONESSENTIAL CLAUSE	They climbed Denali**,** **which is over fifteen thousand feet high**. [Which Denali? does not make sense—a comma is needed]

31f Setting off transitions, parenthetical expressions, and contrasted elements

Commas customarily set off transitional expressions such as *for example*, *that is*, *however*, and *namely*.

➤ Travelers**,** **for example,** must be prepared for the unexpected.

Because they generally indicate little or no pause in reading, transitional expressions such as *also*, *too*, *at least*, and *thus* need not be set off by commas.

➤ Traveling to exotic places **thus** requires planning.

Use commas to set off parenthetical elements, such as words or phrases that provide commentary you wish to stress.

➤ Over the past year, my flights have**,** **miraculously,** been on time.

Commas set off sentence elements in which words such as *never* and *unlike* express contrast.

➤ A planet**,** unlike a star**,** reflects rather than generates light.

EXERCISE 31.3

Set off nonessential elements with commas.

1. Maine Coons long-haired cats with bushy tails are known for their size.
2. The largest cat on record for example was forty-eight inches long.
3. These animals which are extremely gentle despite their large size often weigh twenty pounds.
4. Most Maine Coons have exceptionally high intelligence for cats which enables them to recognize language and even to open doors.
5. Unlike most cats Maine Coons will play fetch with their owners.
6. According to a legend later proven to be false Maine Coons are descendants from Turkish Angora cats owned by Marie Antoinette.

31g Setting off dates, place names, and elements in an address

Use commas to make dates, place names, and addresses easy to read.

- Martha left for Peru on **Wednesday, February 12, 2013,** and returned on March 12.
- **Nashville, Tennessee,** is the largest country-and-western music center in the United States.
- I had to write to **Ms. Melanie Hobson, Hobson Computing, 2873 Central Avenue, Orange Park, FL 32065.** [No comma is used between the state abbreviation and the zip code.]

31h Setting off quotations

Many sentences containing direct quotations also contain signal phrases (or attributive tags) such as *The author claims* or *According to the author*. Whether they appear at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end of a sentence, signal phrases should be set off with commas.

- According to Jacques Barzun, "It is a false analogy with science that makes one think latest is best."
- "It is a false analogy with science," claims Jacques Barzun, "that makes one think latest is best."
- "It is a false analogy with science that makes one think latest is best," claims Jacques Barzun.

31i Unnecessary commas

Commas are not used between the following elements.

SUBJECT AND VERB	**Rain** at frequent intervals **produces** mosquitoes.
TWO VERBS THAT AGREE WITH THE SAME SUBJECT	I **read** the comments carefully and then **started** my revision.
REPORTING VERB AND *THAT*	The author **noted** **that** the results of the study were not conclusive.
CONJUNCTION AND SUBJECT	We worked very hard on her campaign for state representative, **but** the **incumbent** was too strong to defeat in the northern districts.
***SUCH AS* OR *LIKE* AND THE EXAMPLE THAT FOLLOWS**	Many university applicants take entrance exams **such as** **the ACT or the SAT.**
ESSENTIAL ELEMENT AND THE REST OF THE SENTENCE	Everyone **who has a mortgage**, is required to have fire insurance.

MONTH OR HOLIDAY AND YEAR	The class reunion is tentatively planned for June 2018. The last time she saw them was on Thanksgiving Day 2010.
EXCLAMATION POINT OR QUESTION MARK AND CLOSING QUOTATION MARKS	"Dave, stop. Stop, will you? Stop, Dave. Will you stop?," implores the supercomputer HAL in *2001: A Space Odyssey*.

EXERCISE 31.4

Revise the following sentences, inserting commas where they are needed and deleting commas when they are unnecessary.

1. Alvar Nuñez Cabeza de Vaca unlike most other Spanish conquistadors came to perceive Native Americans as equals.
2. On February 15, 1527 Cabeza de Vaca was appointed to an expedition, headed for the mainland of North America.
3. The expedition landed near what is now Tampa Bay, Florida sometime in March, 1528.
4. Devastated by misfortune the expedition dwindled rapidly.
5. Cabeza de Vaca and three other members however survived.
6. His endurance now tested Cabeza de Vaca lived as a trader and healer among Native Americans of the Rio Grande Basin learning from them and eventually speaking on their behalf to the Spanish crown.

32 The Semicolon and the Colon

The semicolon and the colon both mark boundaries within a sentence and indicate how ideas are linked. They are not interchangeable, however.

32a The semicolon

The semicolon most frequently connects two independent clauses, but it can be used for other purposes as well.

(1) Connecting independent clauses

A semicolon placed between two independent clauses indicates that they are closely related. The second of the two clauses generally supports or contrasts with the first.

- For many cooks, basil is a key ingredient**;** it appears in recipes worldwide. [support]
- Sweet basil is used in many Mediterranean dishes**;** Thai basil is used in Asian and East Indian recipes. [contrast]

Sometimes, a transitional expression such as *for example* (**3d(2)**) or an adverbial conjunction such as *however* (**17a(7)**) accompanies a semicolon and further establishes the relationship between the ideas.

- Basil is omnipresent in the cuisine of some countries**;** **for example,** Italians use basil in salads, soups, and many vegetable dishes.
- The culinary uses of basil are well known**;** **however,** this herb also has medicinal uses.

A comma is usually inserted after a transitional expression, though it can be omitted if doing so will not lead to a misreading.

(2) Separating elements that contain commas

In a series of phrases or clauses that contain commas, semicolons indicate where each phrase or clause ends and the next begins.

- To survive, mountain lions need a large area in which to range; a steady supply of deer, skunks, raccoons, foxes, and opossums; and the opportunity to find a mate, establish a den, and raise a litter.

Semicolons do not set off phrases or dependent clauses. Use commas for this purpose.

- We consulted Alinka Kibukian;, the local horticulturalist.
- Our trees survived;, even though we live in a harsh climate.

EXERCISE 32.1

Revise the following sentences, using semicolons to separate independent clauses or elements that contain internal commas.

1. Soccer is a game played by two opposing teams on a rectangular field, each team tries to knock a ball, roughly twenty-eight inches in circumference, through the opponent's goal.
2. The game is called *soccer* only in Canada and the United States, elsewhere it is known as *football.*
3. Generally, a team consists of eleven players: defenders (or fullbacks), who defend the goal by trying to win control of the ball, midfielders (or halfbacks), who play both defense and offense, attackers (or forwards), whose primary responsibility is scoring goals; and a goalkeeper (or goalie), who guards the goal.
4. In amateur matches, players can be substituted frequently, however, in professional matches, the number of substitutions is limited.

32b The colon

A colon calls attention to what follows. It also separates titles from subtitles. The colon also has special uses in business correspondence and scriptural or bibliographic references.

(1) Directing attention to an explanation, a summary, or a quotation

When a colon appears between two independent clauses, it signals that the second clause will explain or expand on the first.

➤ No one expected the game to end as it did: after seven extra innings, the favored team collapsed.

A colon is also used after an independent clause to introduce a direct quotation.

➤ Marcel Proust explained the importance of mindfulness: "The true journey of discovery consists not in seeking new landscapes but in having fresh eyes."

CAUTION

Style manuals differ with regard to the use of an uppercase or a lowercase letter to begin an independent clause following a colon.

MLA The first letter should be lowercase unless (1) it begins a word that is normally capitalized, (2) the independent clause is a quotation, or (3) the clause expresses a rule or principle.

APA The first letter should be uppercase.

CMS The first letter should be lowercase unless (1) it begins a word that is normally capitalized, (2) the independent clause is a quotation, or (3) two or more related sentences follow the colon.

(2) Signaling that a list follows

A colon can be used to introduce a list. Note that an independent clause precedes the list.

- The website provides statistics for three states: Washington, Oregon, and Idaho.

Avoid placing a colon between a verb and its complement or after the words *including* and *such as*.

- The website provides statistics for many states including: Washington, Oregon, and Idaho.
- The website provides statistics on topics such as: population and education.

(3) Separating a title and a subtitle

Use a colon between a work's title and its subtitle.

Collapse: *How Societies Choose to Fail or Succeed*

(4) Specialized uses in business correspondence

A colon follows the salutation of a business letter and any notations.

Dear Dr. Horner: Enc:

A colon introduces the headings in a memo.

To: From: Subject: Date:

(5) Separating elements in time, bibliographic, or scriptural references

Colons are used in bibliographies to separate the city and publisher and in numbers to indicate hours and minutes.

Boston: Wadsworth 4:15 p.m.

Colons are often used between numbers in scriptural references.

Psalms 3:5 Gen. 1:1

However, MLA requires the use of periods instead of colons.

Psalms 3•5 Gen. 1•1

EXERCISE 32.2

Insert colons where they are needed in the following sentences.

1. Before we discuss marketing, let's define the behavior of consumers consumer behavior is the process individuals go through as they select, buy, or use products or services to satisfy their needs and desires.
2. The process consists of six stages recognizing a need or desire, finding information, evaluating options, deciding to purchase, purchasing, and assessing purchases.
3. When evaluating alternatives, a house hunter might use some of the following criteria price, location, size, age, style, and landscaping design.
4. The post-purchase assessment has one of two basic results satisfaction or dissatisfaction with the product or service.

33 The Apostrophe

Apostrophes serve a number of purposes. For example, you can use them to show that someone owns something (*my neighbor's television*), that someone has a specific relationship with someone else (*my neighbor's children*), or that someone has produced or created something (*my neighbor's recipe*). Apostrophes are also used in contractions (*can't*, *don't*) and in certain plural forms (*x's* and *y's*).

33a Indicating ownership and other relationships

An apostrophe, often followed by an *s*, signals the **possessive case** of nouns. Possessive nouns are used to express a variety of meanings.

OWNERSHIP	**Fumi's** computer, the **photographer's** camera
ORIGIN	**Einstein's** ideas, the **student's** decision
HUMAN RELATIONSHIPS	**Linda's** sister, the **employee's** supervisor
POSSESSION OF PHYSICAL OR PSYCHOLOGICAL TRAITS	**Mona Lisa's** smile, the **team's** spirit
ASSOCIATION BETWEEN ABSTRACTIONS AND ATTRIBUTES	**democracy's** success, **tyranny's** influence
IDENTIFICATION OF DOCUMENTS	**driver's** license, **bachelor's** degree
IDENTIFICATION OF THINGS OR DAYS NAMED AFTER PEOPLE	**St. John's** Cathedral, **Valentine's** Day
SPECIFICATION OF AMOUNTS	a **day's** wages, an **hour's** delay

(1) Singular nouns, indefinite pronouns, abbreviations, and acronyms

Add an apostrophe and an *s* to indicate the possessive case of singular nouns, indefinite pronouns such as *everyone* and *nobody* (**21a**(7)), abbreviations, and acronyms.

the dean**'s** office [noun]

Yeats**'s** poems [noun]

anyone**'s** computer [indefinite pronoun]

the NFL**'s** reputation [abbreviation]

OPEC**'s** price increase [acronym]

Walter Bryan Jr.**'s** letter [abbreviation]

When a singular proper noun ends in *s*, you will have to consult the style guide for your discipline. The *MLA Handbook for Writers of Research Papers* recommends always using *'s* (*Illinois***'s** *legislature* and *Dickens***'s** *novels*). CMS allows exceptions to this rule. An apostrophe without an *s* may be acceptable when a singular common noun ends in *s* (*physics' contribution*) and when the name of a place or an organization ends in *s* but refers to a single entity (*United States' foreign aid*).

Possessive pronouns (*my*, *mine*, *our*, *ours*, *your*, *yours*, *his*, *her*, *hers*, *its*, *their*, *theirs*, and *whose*) are not written with apostrophes.

➤ The committee concluded **its** discussion.

(2) Plural nouns ending in s

Add only an apostrophe to indicate the possessive case of plural nouns that end in *s*.

➤ the boys' game the babies' toys the Joneses' house

Plural nouns that do not end in *s* need both an apostrophe and an *s*.

➤ men's lives women's health children's projects

CAUTION

An apostrophe is not needed to make a noun plural. To make most nouns plural, add *s* or *es*. Add an apostrophe only to signal ownership, origin, and other similar relationships.

➤ The ~~protesters'~~ *protesters* met in front of the conference center.

➤ The protesters' meeting was on Wednesday.

To form the plural of a family name, use *s* or *es*, not an apostrophe.

➤ The ~~Johnson's~~ *Johnsons* participated in the study.
[COMPARE: The Johnsons' participation in the study was crucial.]

(3) To show collaboration or joint ownership

An apostrophe and an *s* follow the second of two singular nouns. Just an apostrophe follows the second of two plural nouns that already ends in *s*.

- the carpenter and the **plumber's** decision [They made the decision collaboratively.]
- the Becks and the **Lopezes'** cabin [They own one cabin jointly.]

(4) To show separate ownership or individual contributions

Each plural noun is followed by an apostrophe; each singular noun is followed by *'s*.

- the **Becks'** and the **Lopezes'** cars [Each family owns a car.]
- the **carpenter's** and the **plumber's** proposals [They each made a proposal.]

(5) Compound nouns

An apostrophe and an *s* follow the last word of a compound noun.

- my brother-in-**law's** friends, the attorney **general's** statements [singular]
- my brothers-in-**law's** friends, the attorneys **general's** statements [plural]

To avoid awkward constructions such as the last two, consider using a prepositional phrase beginning with *of* instead: *the statements of the attorneys general.*

(6) Nouns preceding gerunds

Depending on its number, a noun that precedes a gerund takes either an apostrophe and an *s* or just an apostrophe.

- Lucy**'s having** to be there seemed unnecessary. [singular noun preceding gerund]
- The family appreciated the lawyers' **handling** of the matter. [plural noun preceding gerund]

Sometimes you may find it difficult to distinguish between a gerund and a participle. A good way to tell the difference is to note whether the emphasis is on an action or on a person. In a sentence containing a gerund, the emphasis is on the action; in a sentence containing a participle, the emphasis is on the person.

- The completion of the project depends on **Tim's providing** the illustrations. [gerund]
- I heard **Tim discussing** his plans. [participle]

(7) Names of products and geographical locations

Follow an organization's preference for its name or the name of a product; follow local conventions for a geographical location.

Consumers Union	Actors' Equity	Taster's Choice
Devil's Island	Devils Tower	Lands' End

EXERCISE 33.1

Following the pattern of the example, change the modifier after each noun to a possessive form that precedes the noun.

EXAMPLE

proposals made by the committee — the committee's proposals

1. the holiday celebrating the birthdays of Washington and Lincoln
2. a drive lasting an hour
3. the position taken by HMOs
4. the report given by the eyewitness
5. the generosity of the Lees
6. a new book coauthored by Pat and Alan
7. the weights of the children
8. the spying done by the neighbor

33b Marking omissions in contractions

Apostrophes mark omissions in contractions.

they're [they are] who's [who is]

it's [it is] you're [you are]

Apostrophes also mark omissions in numbers and in words mimicking speech.

class of '14 [class of 2014]

y'all [you all] singin' [singing]

CAUTION

Be careful not to confuse possessive pronouns (such as *its, their, whose, your*) with contractions (*it's, they're, who's, you're*). Whenever you write a contraction, you should be able to substitute the complete words for it without changing the meaning.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN	CONTRACTION
Its motor is small.	**It's** [It is] a small motor.
Whose turn is it?	**Who's** [Who is] representing us?

33c Forming certain plurals

These plurals are generally formed by adding *s* only:

1990s	fours and fives	YWCAs
two *and*s	the three *R*s	PhDs

Lowercase letters are made plural by adding both an apostrophe and an *s*: *p*'s and *q*'s. MLA differs from this style in recommending the use of apostrophes for the plurals of uppercase letters (four A's) as well as lowercase letters (the *x*'s and *y*'s in

an equation). Note that letters used as letters, rather than as grades or abbreviations, are italicized (**38b**).

EXERCISE 33.2

Insert apostrophes where needed, delete them when unnecessary, and correct any misspellings.

1. Who's responsibility was it?
2. Hansons book was published in the early 1920s.
3. NPRs fund drive begins in five days'.
4. Few students' enrolled during the academic year 13–14.
5. They're were more maybes than nos in the survey results.
6. They hired a rock n roll band for they're engagement party.
7. Only three of the proposals are still being considered: your's, our's, and the Craigs.
8. Youll have to include the ISBNs of the books' your going to purchase.

34 Quotation Marks

Quotation marks indicate that the words between them were first written or spoken by someone else or that they are the title of a short work.

34a Direct quotations

Double quotation marks set off direct quotations. Single quotation marks enclose a quotation within a quotation.

(1) Direct quotations

Double quotation marks enclose only quotations, not expressions such as *she said* or *he replied.* When a sentence ends with quoted material, place the period inside the quotation marks.

➤ "I believe that we learn by practice," writes Martha Graham. "Whether it means to learn to dance by practicing dancing or to learn to live by practicing living, the principles are the same."

When using direct quotations, reproduce all quoted material exactly as it appears in the original.

(2) Quotations within quotations

Use single quotation marks for any quotation embedded in another quotation.

➤ According to Anita Erickson, "when the narrator says, 'I have the right to my own opinion,' he means that he has the right to his own delusion" (22).

However, if the embedded quotation appears in a block quotation, use double quotation marks. (Note that double quotation marks are not used to mark the beginning and end of a block quotation.)

> Anita Erickson claims that the narrator uses the word *opinion* deceptively:
>
> > Later in the chapter, when the narrator says, "I have the right to my own opinion," he means that he has the right to his own delusion. Although it is tempting to believe that the narrator is making decisions based on a rational belief system, his behavior suggests that he is more interested in deception. (22)

(3) Dialogue

When creating a dialogue, enclose in quotation marks what each person says. Begin a new paragraph whenever the speaker changes.

Farmer looked up, smiling, and in a chirpy-sounding voice he said, "But that feeling has the disadvantage of being . . ." He paused a beat. "Wrong."

"Well," I retorted, "it depends on how you look at it."

—TRACY KIDDER, *Mountains Beyond Mountains*

When quoting more than one paragraph by a single speaker, put quotation marks at the beginning of each paragraph but only at the end of the last paragraph.

(4) Short excerpts of poetry included within a sentence

When quoting fewer than four lines of poetry, enclose them in quotation marks.

➤ After watching a whale swim playfully, the speaker in "Visitation" asks, "What did you think, that joy / was some slight thing?"

34b Titles of short works

Quotation marks enclose the title of a short work, such as a story, an essay, or a song. The title of a larger work, such as a book, play, website, film, television program, magazine, or newspaper, should be italicized.

SHORT STORIES	"The Lottery"	"The Fall of the House of Usher"
ESSAYS	"Walden"	"Play-by-Play"
ARTICLES	"Small World"	"Arabia's Empty Quarter"
BOOK CHAPTERS	"Rain"	"Cutting a Dash"
SHORT POEMS	"Orion"	"Mending Wall"
SONGS	"Lazy River"	"The Star-Spangled Banner"
TV EPISODES	"Show Down!"	"The Last Time"

Use single quotation marks for a title within a longer title that is enclosed in double quotation marks.

"Irony in 'The Sick Rose'" [article about a poem]

34c With other punctuation marks

To decide whether to place another punctuation mark inside or outside quotation marks, note whether the punctuation mark is part of the quotation or part of the surrounding text.

(1) With commas and periods

When your sentence starts with an expression such as *she said* or *he replied*, use a comma to separate it from the quotation (**31h**). Place a period inside the closing quotation marks.

- She replied, "There's more than one way to slice a pie."

If your sentence starts with the quotation instead, place a comma inside the closing quotation marks.

- "There's more than one way to slice a pie," she replied.

When quoting material from a source, provide the relevant page number(s).

- According to Diane Ackerman, "Love is a demanding sport involving all the muscle groups, including the brain" (86).

CAUTION

Do not put a comma after *that* when it precedes a quotation.

- Diane Ackerman claims that "[l]ove is a demanding sport involving all the muscle groups, including the brain" (86).

(2) With semicolons and colons

Place semicolons and colons outside quotation marks.

- His favorite song was "Cyprus Avenue"; mine was "Astral Weeks."
- Stereotypical themes can be easily found in "The Last One": love, lust, and revenge.

(3) With question marks, exclamation points, and dashes

If the direct quotation includes a question mark, an exclamation point, or a dash, place that punctuation *inside* the closing quotation marks.

- Jeremy asked, "What is truth?"
- Gordon shouted, "Congratulations!"
- Laura said, "Let me tell—" just as Dan walked into the room.

Use just one question mark inside the quotation marks when a question ends with a quoted question.

- Why does the protagonist ask, "Where are we headed?"

If the punctuation is not part of the quoted material, place it *outside* the closing quotation marks.

- Who wrote "The Figure a Sentence Makes"?

EXERCISE 34.1

Revise sentences in which quotation marks are used incorrectly and insert quotation marks where they are needed. Do not alter sentences that are written correctly. (The numbers in parentheses are page numbers, placed according to MLA guidelines.)

1. Have you read Nicholas Negroponte's essay Creating a Culture of Ideas?
2. Negroponte starts his article with a problem: Innovation is inefficient (2).
3. However, he also believes that "without innovation we are doomed—by boredom and monotony—to decline" (2).
4. The biggest challenge in stimulating a creative culture, asserts Negroponte, is finding ways to encourage multiple points of view (2).
5. Negroponte suggests that new ideas are created by 'providing a good educational system, encouraging different viewpoints, and fostering collaboration' (3).

(Continued on page 390)

EXERCISE 34.1 *(Continued)*

6. According to the author, "More than ever before, in the new "new economy," research and innovation will need to be housed in those places where there are parallel agendas and multiple means of support" (3).

34d Misused quotation marks

Avoid using quotation marks to enclose **indirect quotations**, material that restates or reports someone's words. Paraphrases and summaries generally include indirect quotations.

➤ Concluding his review of the album, Wilson said that "he was confounded by its mixed messages."

Quotation marks are also not used around words to add emphasis or to call attention to slang or other colloquial expressions. Instead, take the time to choose suitable words.

➤ Funny clips from late night talk shows often ~~"go viral"~~ spread through social-networking sites the next day.

35 The Period and Other Punctuation Marks

To indicate the end of a sentence, you can use one of three punctuation marks: the period, the question mark, or the exclamation point. Other punctuation marks are used within sentences—along with commas, semicolons, and colons—for such purposes as setting off elements or marking omissions. This chapter covers the use of dashes, parentheses, square brackets, ellipsis points, and slashes.

Use one space after a period, a question mark, or an exclamation point. MLA and APA guidelines suggest that leaving two spaces after end punctuation is acceptable. However, both style manuals present sample papers that have single spaces after concluding punctuation marks.

35a The period

(1) At the end of a sentence

Use a period at the end of a sentence.

➤ Many adults in the United States are overfed yet undernourished.

In addition, place a period at the end of an instruction or recommendation.

➤ Eat plenty of fruits and vegetables.

(2) After some abbreviations

Dr. Jr. a.m. p.m. vs. etc. et al.

Only one period follows an abbreviation that ends a sentence.

➤ The tour begins at 1:00 p.m.

35b The question mark

Place a question mark after a direct question.

- How does the atomic clock work? Who invented this clock?
- The question asked at the meeting was, how does the clock work?

Use a period after an indirect question (a question embedded in a statement).

- The article answers the question of how the clock was developed?.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

In English, the subject and verb in indirect questions are not inverted as they would be in the related direct question.

- We do not know when ~~will~~ the meeting will end.
  [COMPARE: When will the meeting end?]

Place a question mark after each question in a series of related questions, even when they are not full sentences.

- Can the atomic clock be used in cell phones? Word processors? Car navigation systems?

35c The exclamation point

An exclamation point often marks the end of a sentence, but its primary purpose is rhetorical—to create emphasis.

- Whoa! What a game!

Use the exclamation point sparingly so that you do not diminish its value. If you do not intend to signal strong emotion, place a comma after an interjection and a period at the end of the sentence.

➤ Well, no one seriously expected this victory.

35d The dash

A dash marks a break in thought or tone, sets off a nonessential element for emphasis or clarity, or follows an introductory list or series. To create a dash (also called an em dash), type two hyphens with no spaces between, before, or after them.

(1) Marking a break in the normal flow of a sentence

➤ I was awed by the almost superhuman effort Stonehenge represents—but who wouldn't be?

(2) Setting off a nonessential element

Use a dash or a pair of dashes to set off extra comments or details.

➤ Dr. Kruger's specialty is mycology—the study of fungi.

➤ The Grandview Trail—steep and unmaintained—is tough even for experienced hikers.

(3) Following an introductory list or series

After the dash, the main part of the sentence sums up the meaning of the list.

➤ Eager, determined to succeed, and scared to death—all of these describe how I felt on the first day at work.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

DASHES AND PARENTHESES

Dashes and parentheses are both used to set off part of a sentence, but they differ in the amount of emphasis they signal. Whereas dashes call attention to the material that is set off, parentheses usually deemphasize such material.

- Her grandfather—born during the Great Depression—was appointed to the Securities and Exchange Commission.
- Her grandfather (born in 1930) was appointed to the Securities and Exchange Commission.

35e Parentheses

Use parentheses to set off information that is not closely related to the main point of a sentence or paragraph but that provides an interesting detail, an explanation, or an illustration.

> The 5-foot-2-inch dynamo ("I act tall," she says) has piloted her career with dazzling audacity.
>
> —ANNE STOCKWELL, "Salma Hayek"

In addition, place parentheses around an acronym or an abbreviation when introducing it after its full form.

- The Search for Extraterrestrial Intelligence (SETI) uses the Very Large Array (VLA) outside Socorro, New Mexico, to scan the sky.

If you use numbers or letters in a list within a sentence, set them off by placing them within parentheses.

- Your application should include (1) a current résumé, (2) a statement of purpose, and (3) two letters of recommendation.

THINKING RHETORICALLY

COMMAS, DASHES, AND COLONS

Although a comma, a dash, or a colon may be followed by an explanation, an example, or an illustration, the impact varies.

- He never failed to mention what was most important to him, the bottom line.
- He never failed to mention what was most important to him—the bottom line.
- He never failed to mention what was most important to him: the bottom line.

The comma, one of the most common punctuation marks, barely draws attention to what follows it. The dash, in contrast, signals a longer pause and so places more emphasis on the information that follows. The colon is more direct and formal than either of the other two punctuation marks.

35f Square brackets

Square brackets set off additions or alterations used to clarify direct quotations.

- "They [hyperlinks] are what turn the Web from a library of pages into a web" (Weinberger 170).
  [Adding *hyperlinks* in brackets specifies what is meant by *They* in the quotation.]
- David Weinberger claims that "[t]he Web has blown documents apart" (xi).

To avoid the awkwardness of using brackets in this way, you may be able to quote only part of a sentence so that no change in capitalization is needed.

➤ David Weinberger claims that the Web "breaks the traditional publishing model" (x).

Use brackets to set off material that is itself set within parentheses.

➤ People frequently provide personal information online. (See, for example, David Weinberger's *Small Pieces Loosely Joined* [Cambridge: Perseus, 2002].)

35g Ellipsis points

Ellipsis points, three equally spaced periods, indicate an omission from a quoted passage or a reflective pause or hesitation.

(1) Marking an omission from a quoted passage

ORIGINAL

More than 2,000 languages, or about 30 percent of all the world's languages, are spoken in Africa by just less than 12 percent of the world's total population.

—PETER K. AUSTIN, *One Thousand Languages*

OMISSION FROM THE MIDDLE OF THE SENTENCE

Austin (2008) states that over "2,000 languages . . . are spoken in Africa by just less than 12 percent of the world's total population."

Note that ellipsis points are not used to indicate an omission from the beginning of the quotation.

To indicate omitted words from the end of a quotation, put a space between the last word and the ellipsis points. Then add the end punctuation mark (a period, a question mark, or an exclamation point). If the quoted material is followed by a parenthetical source or page reference, the end punctuation comes after the second parenthesis.

OMISSION FROM THE END OF THE SENTENCE

Austin states that "over 2,000 languages, or about 30 percent of all the world's languages, are spoken in Africa . . . " (220).

To signal the omission of a sentence or more (even a paragraph or more), place an end punctuation mark before the ellipsis points, with one space before and after the ellipsis points.

OMISSION OF A SENTENCE OR MORE

According to Peter K. Austin, "Languages are endangered across North Africa. . . . Morocco has nine indigenous languages, with five endangered, and two nearly extinct."

(2) Indicating an unfinished sentence or marking a pause

Use ellipsis points to indicate that you are intentionally leaving a sentence incomplete or to signal a reflective pause.

➤ Keith saw four menacing youths coming toward him . . . and ran.

35h The slash

A slash between words, as in *and/or* and *he/she*, indicates that either word is applicable in the given context. There are no spaces before and after a slash used in this way. Because extensive use of the slash can make writing choppy, use it judiciously. (If you are following APA or MLA guidelines, avoid using *he/she*, *him/her*, and so on.)

When quoting poetry, use the slash to mark line divisions and include a space before and after the slash.

➤ Wallace Stevens refers to the listener who, "nothing himself, beholds / Nothing that is not there and the nothing that is."

EXERCISE 35.1

Add punctuation as indicated in square brackets.

1. The United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization UNESCO was established in 1945. [parentheses]
2. Encouraging cultural diversity, fostering intercultural discussions, and promoting peace these are just a few of UNESCO's goals. [dash]
3. The organization routinely responds to global concerns such as the HIV AIDS epidemic. [slash]
4. According to a recent policy statement, the "Millennium Summit of Heads of States New York, September 2010 recognized the value of cultural diversity for the enrichment of humankind . . ." (UNESCO 4). [square brackets]

M

MECHANICS

36 Spelling and the Hyphen 400

- **a** Spelling and pronunciation 400
- **b** Words that sound alike 401
- **c** Prefixes and suffixes 402
- **d** Confusion of *ei* and *ie* 404
- **e** Hyphens 405

37 Capitals 406

- **a** Proper nouns 406
- **b** Titles and subtitles 408
- **c** Beginning a sentence 408
- **d** Computer keys, menu items, and icon names 410

38 Italics 411

- **a** Titles of works published or produced separately 411
- **b** Other uses of italics 412
- **c** Words not italicized 413

39 Abbreviations and Numbers 414

- **a** Abbreviations of names or titles 414
- **b** Addresses in correspondence 415
- **c** Acceptable abbreviations in academic and professional writing 415
- **d** Acronyms 416
- **e** Spelling out numbers 417
- **f** Common uses of numerals 418

36 Spelling and the Hyphen

Proofreading for spelling mistakes is essential as you near the end of the writing process. Your teachers, employers, or supervisors will expect you to submit polished work.

TIPS FOR USING A SPELL CHECKER

The spell checker is a wonderful invention, though you must use it with care.

- Proofread your work carefully, even if you are using a spell checker. Spell checkers will not catch all typos, such as *form* instead of *from*.
- Double-check words you frequently misspell. If you often misspell homophones such as *there/their* (**36b**), check for these words after using the spell checker.
- If a spell checker regularly flags a word that is not in its dictionary but that is spelled correctly (such as a proper noun, specialized term, or foreign word), add that word to the dictionary.
- Use a dictionary to look up unfamiliar words that are highlighted by the spell checker. Evaluate the alternative words or spellings the spell checker provides, because some of them may change the meaning of your sentence.
- Do not automatically accept changes the spell checker suggests. Reject any offers the spell checker makes to correct all instances of a particular error.

36a Spelling and pronunciation

Many words in English are not spelled the way they are pronounced, so pronunciation is not a reliable guide to

correct spelling. Here are a few words typically misspelled because they include unpronounced letters:

condem*n* foreig*n* labo*r*atory mus*c*le solem*n*

Here are a few that include letters that are often not heard in rapid speech:

can*d*idate diffe*r*ent gover*n*ment sepa*r*ate lib*r*ary Feb*r*uary

You can teach yourself the correct spellings of words by pronouncing them to yourself the way they are spelled, that is, by pronouncing each letter mentally so that you "hear" even silent letters.

CAUTION

The words *and*, *have*, and *than* are often not stressed in speech and are thus frequently misspelled.

➤ They would rather ~~of~~ have written two papers ~~then~~ than taken midterm ~~an~~ and final exams.

36b Words that sound alike

Words that sound alike but are spelled differently (*aid/aide*, *principle/principal*) are frequently confused. Consult the **Glossary of Usage** for help with many of these commonly confused words. Also troublesome are two-word sequences that carry different meanings depending on whether they are written as one word or as two separate words.

Everyday life was grueling.	She attended class **every day**.
They do not fight **anymore**.	They could not find **any more** evidence.

Other examples include *awhile/a while*, *everyone/every one*, *maybe/may be*, and *sometime/some time.*

Singular nouns ending in *-nce* and plural nouns ending in *-nts* are also easily confused.

Assistance is available.	I have two **assistants**.
His **patience** wore thin.	Some **patients** waited for hours.

Be sure to include an apostrophe in contractions but not in possessive pronouns. (Before including contractions, find out whether your assignment permits their use.)

CONTRACTIONS	it's, you're, there's, who's
POSSESSIVES	its, your, theirs, whose

36c Prefixes and suffixes

When a prefix is added to a base word (often called the **root**), the spelling of the base word is unaffected.

necessary, **un**necessary moral, **im**moral

However, adding a suffix to the end of a base word often changes the spelling.

(1) Dropping or retaining a final *e*

- If a suffix begins with a vowel, the final *e* of the base word is dropped: bride, brid**al**; come, com**ing**. However, to keep the /s/ sound of *ce* or the /j/ sound of *ge*, retain the final *e* before *-able* or *-ous*: notice**able**, courage**ous**.
- If a suffix begins with a consonant, the final *e* of the base word is retained: entire, entire**ly**; rude, rude**ness**. Some exceptions are *argument*, *ninth*, *truly*, and *wholly.*

(2) Doubling a final consonant

- If a consonant ends a one-syllable word with a single vowel or ends a stressed syllable with a single vowel,

double the final consonant: stop, sto**pped**; omit, omi**tted**.

- If there are two vowels before the consonant, the consonant is not doubled: remain, remain**ed**, remain**ing**.
- If the final syllable is not stressed, the consonant is not doubled: edit, edit**ed**, edit**ing**; comment, comment**ed**, comment**ing**.

(3) Changing or retaining a final *y*

- Change a final *y* following a consonant to *i* when adding a suffix (except *-ing*): lazy, laz**ily**; defy, defi**ed**, BUT defy**ing**.
- Retain the final *y* when it follows a vowel: gray, gray**ish**; stay, stay**s**, stay**ed**; obey, obey**s**, obey**ed**.
- Some verb forms are irregular and thus can cause difficulties. For a list of irregular verbs, see pages 279-280.

(4) Retaining a final *l*

The letter *l* at the end of a word is retained when *ly* is added.

cool, coo**lly** formal, formal**ly** real, real**ly** usual, usual**ly**

EXERCISE 36.1

Add the specified suffix to the words that follow it.

Example

-ly: late, casual, psychological
lately casually psychologically

1. *-ing*: put, admit, write, use, try, play
2. *-able*: desire, read, trace, knowledge
3. *-ly*: true, sincere, normal, general

(5) Forming plurals

- Add *es* to most nouns ending in *s*, *z*, *ch*, *sh*, or *x*: box, box**es**.

- If a noun ends in a consonant and *y*, change the *y* to *i* and add *es*: company, compan**ies**; ninety, ninet**ies**.
- If a noun ends in a consonant and *o*, add *es*: hero, hero**es**. Note that sometimes just *s* is added (photo, photo**s**) and other times either *s* or *es* can be added (motto**s**, motto**es**).
- Certain nouns have irregular plural forms: woman, wom**en**; child, child**ren**; foot, f**ee**t.
- Add *s* to most proper nouns: the Kennedy**s**. Add *es* to most proper nouns ending in *s*, *z*, *ch*, *sh*, or *x*: the Jones**es**.

Words borrowed from Latin or Greek generally form their plurals as they did in the original language.

SINGULAR				
criterion	alumnus, alumna	analysis	datum	species
PLURAL				
criteri**a**	alumn**i**, alumn**ae**	analyse**s**	data	species

Sometimes two different forms are acceptable: the plural form of *syllabus* is either *syllabuses* or *syllabi*.

36d Confusion of *ei* and *ie*

An old rhyme will help you remember the order of letters in most words containing *e* and *i*:

Put *i* before *e*
Except after *c*
Or when sounded like *a*
As in *neighbor* and *weigh*.

Words with *i* before *e*: bel**ie**ve, ch**ie**f, pr**ie**st, y**ie**ld

Words with *e* before *i*, after *c*: conc**ei**t, perc**ei**ve, rec**ei**ve

Words with *ei* sounding like *a* in *cake*: **ei**ght, r**ei**n, th**ei**r, h**ei**r

Words that are exceptions to the rules in the rhyme include *either*, *neither*, *species*, *foreign*, and *weird*.

36e Hyphens

Hyphens link two or more words functioning as a single word and separate word parts to clarify meaning. They also have many conventional uses in numbers, fractions, and measurements.

(1) Linking two or more words

If two or more words serve as a single adjective before a noun, they should be hyphenated. If the words follow the noun, they are not hyphenated.

You submitted an **up-to-date** report.

The report was **up to date**.

When the second word in a hyphenated expression is omitted, the first word is still followed by a hyphen.

They discussed both **private-** and **public-sector** partnerships.

A hyphen is not used after adverbs ending in *ly* (*poorly planned event*).

(2) Other uses of hyphens

A hyphen is also used after certain prefixes and in certain numbers.

BETWEEN REPEATED LETTERS	anti-intellectual
FOR CLARITY	re-sign (NOT resign) the petition
AFTER *SELF-* OR *EX-*	self-esteem, ex-wife
BEFORE CAPITALIZED WORDS	un-American, non-Mexican
IN NUMBERS TWENTY-ONE THROUGH NINETY-NINE	one hundred thirty-two
IN FRACTIONS	three-fourths, one-half

When you form a compound modifier that includes a number and a unit of measurement, place a hyphen between them: *two-year-old boy*.

EXERCISE 36.2

Convert the following word groups into hyphenated compounds.

Example

a movie lasting two hours — a two-hour movie

1. a supervisor who is well liked
2. a television screen that is forty-eight inches across
3. a highway with eight lanes
4. a painting from the seventeenth century
5. a chemist who won the Nobel Prize
6. a virus that is food borne

37 Capitals

Capital letters draw attention to significant details—for example, the beginnings of sentences or the names of particular people, places, and products.

37a Proper nouns

Proper nouns are capitalized, even when they are used as modifiers (*Mexico*, *Mexican government*). Words such as *college*, *company*, *park*, and *street* are capitalized only if they are part of a name (*a university* but *Oregon State University*).

The following names and titles should be capitalized: personal names, including titles; names of deities, religions, religious followers, and sacred works; names of awards, products, and

companies; names of countries, ethnic or cultural groups, and languages; names of bridges, buildings, monuments, and geographical features or regions; names of universities and specific courses; names of days of the week, months, and holidays (but not seasons); names of historical documents, periods, and events; names of political parties and government agencies; and military terms.

CAPITALIZED	NOT CAPITALIZED
Noam Chomsky, Chomskyan	a linguist, a theoretical perspective
Uncle Rory	my uncle
President Lincoln	the president of the United States
God (a name)	a god
Bible, Koran, Talmud	sacred works
Academy Award	an award
Nike, Nike Free	a company, a running shoe
Japan, Japanese	a country, a language
Empire State Building	a building
Grand Canyon	a canyon
the West	a western state
Howard University	a university
Biology 101	a biology course
Fourth of July	a holiday
May	a month
Bill of Rights	a historical document
Renaissance	the sixteenth century
Great Depression	a recession
Democratic Party	democratic process
Internal Revenue Service	a government agency
Gulf War	a war
U.S. Army	an army

37b Titles and subtitles

The first and last words in titles and subtitles are capitalized, as are major words—that is, all words other than articles (*a*, *an*, and *the*), coordinating conjunctions (*and*, *but*, *for*, *nor*, *or*, *so*, and *yet*), prepositions (such as *in*, *on*, and *of*), and the infinitive marker *to*.

Dictation: A Quartet

"To Be a Student or Not to Be a Student"

"Stop-and-Go Signals"

The American Psychological Association (APA) has two sets of guidelines: one for titles in the body of a paper and one for titles on a reference list. In the body of the paper, all words that have more than four letters are capitalized. On the reference list, only the first word of the title and proper nouns are capitalized.

Southwestern Pottery from Anasazi to Zuni [MLA]

Southwestern Pottery From Anasazi to Zuni [APA, body of paper]

Southwestern pottery from Anasazi to Zuni [APA, reference list]

37c Beginning a sentence

The first letter of a sentence begins with a capital letter, but there are certain types of sentences that deserve special note.

(1) A quoted sentence

Capitalize only the first word in a quoted sentence, even if you interrupt the sentence with commentary.

➤ When asked to name the books she found most influential, Nadine Gordimer responded, "In general, the works that mean most to one—change one's thinking and therefore maybe one's life—are those read in youth."

➤ "**O**ddly," states Ved Mehta, "**l**ike my earliest memories, the books that made the greatest impression on me were the ones I encountered as a small child."

(2) A freestanding parenthetical sentence

Capitalize the first word of a freestanding sentence inside parentheses.

➤ The recordings used in the study were made in the 1980s. (**T**itles of the recordings can be found in the appendix.)

If the sentence inside the parentheses occurs within a sentence of your own, the first word should not be capitalized.

➤ The recordings used in the study were made in the 1980s (**t**itles of the recordings can be found in the appendix).

(3) An independent clause following a colon

Lowercase the first letter of an independent clause (a clause with a subject and a predicate) following a colon.

➤ The ear thermometer is used quite frequently now: **t**his type of thermometer records a temperature more accurately than a glass thermometer.

However, if two or more independent clauses (or sentences) follow the colon, capitalize the first word of each clause.

➤ Two new thermometers have replaced the old thermometers filled with mercury: **T**he digital thermometer uses a heat sensor to determine body temperature. **T**he ear thermometer is actually an infrared thermometer that detects the temperature of the eardrum.

The APA manual recommends capitalizing the first word of *any* independent clause following a colon. The MLA manual advises capitalizing the first word only when the independent clause that follows is a rule or principle.

- Think of fever as a symptom, not as an illness: **I**t is the body's response to infection. [APA]
- He has two basic rules for healthy living: **E**at sensibly and exercise strenuously at least three times a week. [APA and MLA]

(4) An abbreviated question

Capitalize the first words of all abbreviated questions.

- How do researchers distinguish the legal codes for families? For individuals? For genetic research?

37d Computer keys, menu items, and icon names

Capitalize each word in the names of specific computer keys, menu items, and icons.

- For more information, select Clinical Trials from the Research menu.

EXERCISE 37.1

Edit the capitalization errors in the following paragraph. Be prepared to explain any changes that you make.

[1]Swimmer michael phelps holds the record as the most decorated olympian. [2]By the end of the 2012 olympics in london, england, he had earned twenty-two medals (The previous record holder had eighteen). [3]In the 2008 summer olympic games in beijing, china, phelps finished first eight times. [4]Afterwards, with a bonus he was given by the sports company speedo, phelps established a Foundation to promote healthy lifestyles and the sport of swimming, especially among children. [5]According to phelps, the swimming pool provided a place for him "To have fun, stay healthy, set goals, work hard and gain confidence."

38 Italics

Italics indicate that a word or a group of words is being used in a special way, for example, to indicate titles or foreign words.

38a Titles of works published or produced separately

Italics indicate the title of a work published or produced as a whole rather than as part of a larger work. A newspaper, for example, is a separate work, but an editorial in a newspaper is not; thus, the title of the newspaper is italicized, and the title of the editorial is enclosed in quotation marks.

The titles of the following kinds of separate works are italicized:

BOOKS	*The Round House*	*Far from the Tree*
MAGAZINES	*Wired*	*National Geographic*
NEWSPAPERS	*USA Today*	*Wall Street Journal*
PLAYS, FILMS	*Photograph 51*	*Argo*
TELEVISION SHOWS	*American Idol*	*Mad Men*
RADIO SHOWS	*Morning Edition*	*Fresh Air*
RECORDINGS	*Kind of Blue*	*Stronger*
WORKS OF ART	*American Gothic*	*David*
LONG POEMS	*Paradise Lost*	*The Divine Comedy*
PAMPHLETS	*Saving Energy*	*Tips for Gardeners*

According to MLA and CMS guidelines, an initial *the* in a newspaper or periodical title is not italicized when mentioned in a sentence.

➤ The story was published in the *New York Times*.

When an italicized title includes the title of a separate work within it, the embedded title is not italicized.

Modern Interpretations of Paradise Lost

The following titles are *not* italicized.

HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS	Bill of Rights, U.S. Constitution, Declaration of Independence
RELIGIOUS TEXTS	Bible, Koran, Torah, Book of Genesis
WEBSITES	Google, Reuters

However, if you are following MLA guidelines, italicize the names of websites.

38b Other uses of italics

Use italics for foreign words; genus and species names; legal cases; names of ships, submarines, aircraft, and spacecraft; words, letters, or figures referred to as such; and emphasized words.

FOREIGN WORD	*fútbol*
GENUS AND SPECIES	*Homo sapiens*
LEGAL CASE	*Miranda v. Arizona*
NAME OF SHIP, AIRCRAFT, OR SPACECRAFT	USS *Enterprise*, *Enola Gay*, *Atlantis*
REFERENCE TO WORD	The word *love* is hard to define.
REFERENCE TO LETTER OR FIGURE	The number *2* and the letter *Z* often look similar.
EMPHASIZED WORD	These *are* the right files.

38c Words not italicized

Italics are not used for a reference to a legal case by an unofficial name.

➤ All the major networks covered the O. J. Simpson trial.

But do italicize the shortened name of a well-known legal case.

➤ The Supreme Court decision in *Brown* forced racial integration of schools.

Italics are also not used for the names of trains, the models of vehicles, and the trade names of aircraft.

Orient Express Ford Mustang Boeing 787

EXERCISE 38.1

Identify words that require italics in the following sentences.

1. To celebrate an early book of poetry by James Joyce, Chamber Music, the Frye Art Museum exhibited paintings from its permanent collection to accompany Joyce's poems.
2. The website Frye Art Museum features three of the paintings that were on display: The Birch Grove, Lady Curzon, and The Duel.
3. In an article published in Seattle Weekly, Brian Miller interviewed curator Scott Lawrimore.
4. Another exhibit at the Frye featured paintings, such as Sorrow and No. 21, commissioned to accompany music inspired by Joyce's poetry.
5. The songs can be found on an anthology album, also called Chamber Music, released in 2008.
6. Interactive is a key word for describing this exhibit, as there were also shelves of artifacts for people to examine.

39 Abbreviations and Numbers

An **abbreviation** is a shortened version of a word or phrase: *assn.* (association), *dept.* (department), *et al.* (*et alii*, or "and others"). An **acronym** is a special form of abbreviation formed by combining the initial letters and/or syllables of a series of words: *AIDS* (**a**cquired **i**mmune **d**eficiency **s**yndrome), *sonar* (**so**und **na**vigation **r**anging).

39a Abbreviations of names or titles

If a person's name commonly appears with initials before the last name, follow each initial with a period and a space.

J. R. R. Tolkien J. K. Rowling

When initials are used for an entire name, no spaces or periods are used.

MLK LBJ

Certain abbreviations are used before and/or after a person's name.

Ms. Gretel Lopez	**Mrs.** Marcus
Kim Beck, **MD**	Samuel Levy **Jr.**
Dr. Redshaw	**Sen.** McCain
Prof. Elizabeth Chang	Lee Evans, **PhD**
Gen. David Petraeus	**Rev.** Talitha Arnold

Academic, government, military, and other titles are generally spelled out, especially when only a last name is used.

Professor Hood President Obama General Dunwoody

39b Addresses in correspondence

The names of states and words such as *Street*, *Road*, and *Company* are written out when they appear in formal writing and in letters, including in the address at the top of the page. However, they are abbreviated when used in the address on an envelope.

Derson Manufacturing Co.
200 Madison St.
Watertown, MN 55388

When addressing correspondence within the United States, use the two-letter state abbreviations established by the U.S. Postal Service.

39c Acceptable abbreviations in academic and professional writing

Some abbreviations have become so familiar that they are considered acceptable substitutes for full words (*math*, *exam*, *lab*). If you are unsure of whether an abbreviation is appropriate, spell out the word.

professor
➤ The film ~~prof.~~ worked on a documentary about Walt Disney.

(1) Abbreviations for special purposes

Words such as *volume*, *chapter*, and *page* are abbreviated (*vol.*, *ch.*, and *p.*) in bibliographies and in citations of research sources, but they are written out within sentences.

(2) Abbreviations for time periods and zones

82 BC ("before Christ") OR 82 BCE ("before the common era")

AD 95 (*anno Domini*) OR 95 CE ("common era")

7:40 a.m. (*ante meridiem*) 10:00 p.m. (*post meridiem*)

4:52 EST (Eastern Standard Time)

(3) The abbreviation for the United States (U.S. or US) as an adjective

the U.S. Navy, the US economy

[COMPARE: They moved to the United States in 1990.]

The abbreviation *U.S.* or *US* should be used only as an adjective. When using *United States* as a noun, spell it out. MLA lists *US* as the preferred abbreviated form, and APA uses *U.S.*

(4) Some abbreviations for Latin expressions

Certain abbreviations for Latin expressions are common in academic writing.

cf. [compare]	et al. [and others]	i.e. [that is]
e.g. [for example]	etc. [and so forth]	vs. OR v. [versus]

39d Acronyms

Introduce an acronym by placing it in parentheses after the group of words it stands for.

➤ The Federal Emergency Management Administration (FEMA) was criticized by many after Hurricane Katrina.

MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

USING ARTICLES WITH ABBREVIATIONS, ACRONYMS, OR NUMBERS

When you use an abbreviation, an acronym, or a number, you sometimes need an indefinite article. Choose *a* or *an* based on the pronunciation of the initial sound of the abbreviation, acronym, or number: use *a* before a consonant sound and *an* before a vowel sound.

- **an IBM** computer [*IBM* begins with a vowel sound.]
- **a NASA** engineer [*NASA* begins with a consonant sound.]
- **a 1964** Mustang [*1964* begins with a consonant sound.]

39e Spelling out numbers

Depending on their uses, numbers are treated in different ways. MLA recommends spelling out numbers that are expressed in one or two words (*nine*, *ninety-one*, *nine hundred*, *nine million*). A numeral is used for any other number (*9½*, *9.9*, *999*), unless it begins a sentence.

- The register recorded 164 names.

APA advises spelling out only numbers below ten. Both MLA and APA recommend using words rather than numerals at the beginning of a sentence.

- One hundred sixty-four names were recorded in the register.

When numbers or amounts refer to the same entities throughout a passage, use numerals when any of the numbers would be more than two words long if spelled out.

- Only 5 of the 134 delegates attended the final meeting. The remaining 129 delegates will be informed by e-mail.

39f Common uses of numerals

Numerals are typically used for the following:

TIMES OF DAY	9:30 p.m.
DATES	September 11, 2001, OR 11 September 2001, OR 9/11
DECADES	1999 to 2003 OR 1999–2003
ADDRESSES	25 Arrow Drive, Apartment 1
IDENTIFICATION OF PROPER NOUNS	Edward III Highway 61
PARTS OF BOOKS AND PLAYS	chapter 1, page 15 act 2, scene 1 OR Act II, Scene I
DECIMALS	a 2.5 average
PERCENTS	12 percent

When monetary amounts are mentioned frequently, they can be expressed with numerals and symbols: $20.00, 99¢, or $0.99.

EXERCISE 39.1

Edit the following sentences to correct the usage of abbreviations and numbers.

1. In 1817, construction on the Erie Canal was started in Rome, NY.
2. The original canal was 363 mi. long, running between Albany and Buffalo.
3. Pres. Thomas Jefferson refused to use fed. funds for the canal.
4. DeWitt Clinton, United States senator from NY, found support for the construction of the canal in the state legislature.
5. In 2000, the United States Congress established the Erie Canalway National Heritage Corridor.
6. The Corridor is over 500 miles long and runs through 23 counties of upstate New York.

Answers to Even-Numbered Exercises

Exercise 17.1, page 254

2. If (conjunction-subordinating) you (pronoun) are (verb), you (pronoun) should (verb-auxiliary) join (verb) the (article-definite) University Anime and Manga Club (noun-proper).
4. Memberships (noun-common) are (verb) free (adjective); however (conjunction-adverbial [also called conjunctive adverb]), donations (noun-common) are (verb) always (adverb) welcome (adjective).

Exercise 17.2, page 257

A slash separates the subject and predicate in each sentence. The complement is underlined and identified in square brackets.

2. He / showed slides of mountain lakes and heather meadows. [direct object]
4. Mountaineers and artists / consider the North Cascades the most dramatic mountains in the range. [direct object, object complement]
6. Many volcanoes / are in the Cascades. [no complement, "in the Cascades" is an adverbial prepositional phrase]
8. Many visitors to this area / hike the Pacific Crest Trail. [direct object]
10. The trail / begins in southern California, passes through Oregon and Washington, and ends in British Columbia. [no complement, "in southern California," "through Oregon and Washington," and "in British Columbia" are adverbial prepositional phrases]

Exercise 17.3, page 264

2. The Charter of the United Nations [noun phrase] was written [verb phrase] in 1945 [prepositional phrase].
4. The United Nations [noun phrase] devotes most of its energies to protecting human rights [verbal phrase: gerund], maintaining peace [verbal phrase: gerund], and encouraging social development [verbal phrase: gerund].

6. Its blue flag easily recognized everywhere [absolute phrase], the United Nations now includes 193 member states [noun phrase].

Exercise 17.4, page 267

Sentence 2.
1. if you make your living by swallowing swords [adverbial]
2. However: adverbial conjunction / if: subordinating conjunction

Sentence 4.
1. No dependent clauses
2. and: coordinating conjunction

Sentence 6.
1. No dependent clauses
2. No conjunctions

Exercise 18.1, page 272

Sentences 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12, and 13 are fragments.

Answers will vary. The following is one possible revision of the paragraph.

One of the most popular rides at any county fair or amusement park is the Ferris wheel. The original Ferris wheel, designed by George Washington Gale Ferris, Jr., for a national exposition in 1893, rose to a height of 264 feet and accommodated 2,140 passengers. Ferris's goal was to build something that would surpass in effect the Eiffel Tower, which was constructed just a few years earlier. Though Ferris's plans were not immediately accepted, once they were, and the wheel opened to the public, it became an immediate success, at times carrying thirty-eight thousand passengers a day. Since the nineteenth century, engineers have designed taller and taller Ferris wheels. The 541-foot Singapore Flyer holds the record, but the Beijing Great Wheel, currently under construction, will be over a hundred feet taller.

Exercise 19.1, page 277

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. He mentions, for example, research showing that measurements of happiness in the United States have not risen much in the last fifty years: people are responding to survey questions about their levels of happiness in much the same way as they did in 1960.

4. Bok believes that people become accustomed to higher standards of living, not realizing how quickly they adapt, and so they do not become happier.
6. CORRECT

Exercise 20.1, page 282

2. ended 4. led 6. might have lost, had not fished

Exercise 20.2, page 286

Answers will vary depending on the tense chosen. All the sentences in the following paragraph are in the past tense.

I **had** already **been walking** for a half hour in the semi-darkness of Amsterdam's early-morning streets when I **came** to a red light. I **was** in a hurry to get to the train station and no cars **were** out yet, so I **crossed** over the cobblestones, passing a man waiting for the light to change. I never **looked** back when he **scolded** me for breaking the law. I **had** a train to catch. I **was** going to Widnau, in Switzerland, to see Aunt Marie. I **had** not **seen** her since I **was** in second grade.

Exercise 20.3, page 288

2. active 4. active 6. passive

Exercise 20.4, page 290

2. Superstitious people think that if NASA had changed the number of the mission, the astronauts would have had a safer journey.
4. The crew used the lunar module as though it were a lifeboat.
6. If NASA ever planned a space mission on Friday the Thirteenth again, the public would object.

Exercise 20.5, page 296

2. include 4. is 6. know

Exercise 21.1, page 304

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

[1]When my brother and I were in middle school, we formed a band with our friends Jason and Andrew. [2]My grandmother had given Jake a guitar and me a drum kit for Christmas. [3]We practiced either alone or together for the rest of the winter. [4]Then, in the spring, we met

up with Jason, whom we had known for years. [5]He and his cousin Andrew, who we later called Android, were excited to join Jake and me. [6]Jason already had a guitar, and Andrew could sing. [7]After we played together one afternoon, we decided to call ourselves *The Crash.* [8]Jason and Andrew came over to our house to jam whenever their parents let them—which was most of the time. [9]Our parents did not mind our noise at all. [10]My dad said our playing reminded him of his own teenage garage band.

Exercise 21.2, page 304

2. They also recommended our hiring someone with extensive experience in statistical analysis.
4. CORRECT

Exercise 21.3, page 307

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. People should have the right to participate in a study only if they feel comfortable doing so.
4. Participants should be guaranteed that the information they provide will remain confidential.

Exercise 21.4, page 309

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. Because her father worked for the United Nations Education, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO), Baez lived in many different countries as a young girl.
4. Baez and her younger sister, Mimi Fariña, also a singer-songwriter, sometimes toured together.

Exercise 21.5, page 310

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. The issue was ignored until gas prices started to rise dramatically.
4. Nonetheless, the ratings can never be exact, given that driving habits differ from individual to individual.

Exercise 21.6, page 312

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. For example, orangutans, African elephants, and Atlantic bottlenose dolphins should roam freely rather than be held in captivity.
4. Like humans, animals such as these show emotions, self-awareness, and intention.
6. Clearly, they have the right to freedom.

Exercise 22.1, page 315

2. really 4. quietly

Exercise 22.2, page 317

2. less frequently 4. closest

Exercise 22.3, page 319

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. Hitchcock was identified with thrillers only after making his third movie, *The Lodger*.
4. Although his movies are known for suspense, sometimes moviegoers also remember Hitchcock's droll sense of humor.
6. Originally a British citizen, Alfred Hitchcock was knighted by Queen Elizabeth II in 1980.

Exercise 22.4, page 321

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. In determining an appropriate challenge, climbers must consider safety precautions.
4. Although adding extra weight, a first-aid kit should be in every climber's pack.

Exercise 23.1, page 327

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. President Obama argued for the spending cuts.
4. Brown and Edwards described the improvements that had been made to the old building.

Exercise 23.2, page 330

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. He drew a generic male face with metal teeth and long red ribbons of hair falling in front of it.
4. The evil visage of Darth Maul was so horrible that McCaig added elegant black feathers to balance the effect.

Exercise 24.1, page 334

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

The Lummis, a tribe in the Northwest, believe that grief is a burden that should not be carried alone. After the terrorist attack on the World Trade Center, Lummi carvers, wanting to help shoulder the burden of grief felt by others, crafted a healing totem pole for the citizens of New York, many of whom had family members who were killed in the terrorist attacks. The Lummis do not believe that it is the pole itself that heals but rather the prayers and songs said over it. For them, healing is not the responsibility of a single person; it is the responsibility of the community.

Exercise 24.2, page 336

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. Duct tape was originally called "duck tape" because, like ducks, it was waterproof and because it was made of cotton duck, a durable, tightly woven material.
4. Although many new colorful forms of duct tape are available, they are more expensive and less practical than standard silver.

Exercise 25.1, page 339

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. When she hired new employees for her department, she looked for applicants who were accomplished, hardworking, and articulate.
4. In her annual report, she wrote that her most important achievements were attracting new majors and increasing scholarship donations.
6. Whether planning for department meetings or conventions, Helen prepared her remarks in advance.

Exercise 26.1, page 343

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. Rudolph's Olympic achievement is impressive, but even more spectacular is her victory over a crippling disease.
4. Her determination was essential to her recovery, as were her siblings' willingness to help and her mother's vigilant care.

Exercise 27.1, page 347

Answers will vary. The following is a possibility.

2. With ideologies that could not be more different, both men see the Bible as the foundation from which the moral well-being of the United States should be reconstructed.

Exercise 27.2, page 348

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. After he pasted a map onto a piece of wood, he used a fine-bladed saw to cut around the borders of the countries.
4. Because the wooden pieces were cut by hand, the original puzzles were quite expensive.
6. After he recovered, built up his strength, and gained self-confidence, Lee's passion became mountain biking.
8. What kinds of activities can help survivors of traumatic brain injury toward recovery? Advocates believe that reviewing and practicing conversation and people skills are both essential to success.

Exercise 28.1, page 353

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. Parents should read to their small children.
4. For six years, he worked as a mail carrier in a small town.

Exercise 29.1, page 358

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. start over: She reconsidered the experiment and started over to ensure accurate results.
4. fulfill an obligation with minimal effort: Because their contract for the project expires soon, the agency works with minimal effort.

Exercise 30.1, page 363

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. Before the ceremony, he had not received an award.
4. The fans watching the television made a lot of noise.
6. Registering early is important.

Exercise 31.1, page 367

Answers will vary. The following are possibilities.

2. In general, people notice goose bumps on their forearms, but some people also report having goose bumps on their legs.
4. The German and Italian languages also have words that refer to goose flesh, but French and Spanish translations refer to hens.
6. Not only humans experience piloerection, but other mammals do as well.

Exercise 31.2, page 368

2. Although sound cannot be seen, people have described it this way for a long time.
4. Envisioning waves in the air, he hypothesized that sound would not be able to pass through a vacuum because there would be no air to transmit it.
6. In 1654, Otto von Guericke found that he could not hear a bell ringing inside the vacuum he had created. [The comma after "1654" is optional.]
8. However, although most sound reaches us through the air, it travels faster through liquids and solids.

Exercise 31.3, page 372

2. The largest cat on record, for example, was forty-eight inches long.
4. Most Maine Coons have exceptionally high intelligence for cats, which enables them to recognize language and even to open doors.
6. According to a legend, later proven to be false, Maine Coons are descendants from Turkish Angora cats owned by Marie Antoinette.

Exercise 31.4, page 374

2. On February 15, 1527, Cabeza de Vaca was appointed to an expedition headed for the mainland of North America.
4. Devastated by misfortune, the expedition dwindled rapidly.
6. His endurance now tested, Cabeza de Vaca lived as a trader and healer among Native Americans of the Rio Grande Basin, learning from them and eventually speaking on their behalf to the Spanish crown.

Exercise 32.1, page 376

2. The game is called soccer only in Canada and the United States; elsewhere it is known as football.
4. In amateur matches, players can be substituted frequently; however, in professional matches, the number of substitutions is limited.

Exercise 32.2, page 379

2. The process consists of six stages: recognizing a need or desire, finding information, evaluating options, deciding to purchase, purchasing, and assessing purchases.
4. The post-purchase assessment has one of two basic results: satisfaction or dissatisfaction with the product or service.

Exercise 33.1, page 383

2. an hour's drive
4. the eyewitness's report
6. Pat and Alan's new book
8. the neighbor's spying

Exercise 33.2, page 385

2. Hanson's book was published in the early 1920s.
4. Few students enrolled during the academic year '13–'14.
6. They hired a rock 'n' roll band for their engagement party.
8. You'll have to include the ISBNs of the books you're going to purchase.

Exercise 34.1, page 389

2. Negroponte starts his article with a problem: "Innovation is inefficient" (2).

4. "The biggest challenge in stimulating a creative culture," asserts Negroponte, "is finding ways to encourage multiple points of view" (2).
6. According to the author, "More than ever before, in the new 'new economy,' research and innovation will need to be housed in those places where there are parallel agendas and multiple means of support" (3).

Exercise 35.1, page 398

2. Encouraging cultural diversity, fostering intercultural discussions, and promoting peace—these are just a few of UNESCO's goals.
4. According to a recent policy statement, the "Millennium Summit of Heads of States [New York, September 2010] recognized the value of cultural diversity for the enrichment of humankind..." (UNESCO 4).

Exercise 36.1, page 403

2. desirable, readable, traceable, knowledgeable

Exercise 36.2, page 406

2. a forty-eight-inch television screen
4. a seventeenth-century painting
6. a food-borne virus

Exercise 37.1, page 410

[1]Swimmer **M**ichael **P**helps holds the record as the most decorated **O**lympian. [2]By the end of the 2012 **O**lympics in **L**ondon, **E**ngland, he had earned twenty-two medals (**t**he previous record holder had eighteen). [3]In the 2008 **S**ummer **O**lympic **G**ames in **B**eijing, **C**hina, **P**helps finished first eight times. [4]Afterwards, with a bonus he was given by the sports company **S**peedo, **P**helps established a **f**oundation to promote healthy lifestyles and the sport of swimming, especially among children. [5]According to **P**helps, the swimming pool provided a place for him "**t**o have fun, stay healthy, set goals, work hard and gain confidence."

Exercise 38.1, page 413

2. The Frye Art Museum features three of the paintings that were on display: *The Birch Grove*, *Lady Curzon*, and *The Duel*.
4. Another exhibit at the Frye featured paintings, such as *Sorrow* and *No. 21*, commissioned to accompany music inspired by Joyce's poetry.
6. *Interactive* is a key word for describing this exhibit, as there were also shelves of artifacts for people to examine.

Exercise 39.1, page 418

2. The original canal was 363 miles long, running between Albany and Buffalo.
4. DeWitt Clinton, U.S. senator from New York, found support for the construction of the canal in the state legislature.
6. The Corridor is over five hundred miles long and runs through twenty-three counties of upstate New York.

Glossary of Usage

By learning about usage in this glossary, you will increase your ability to use words effectively.

Agreement on usage occurs slowly—often after a period of debate. An asterisk (*) before an entry indicates that a new usage has been reported by dictionary editors. This usage, however, might not yet be accepted by everyone.

a lot of *A lot of* is conversational for *many*, *much*, or *a great deal of*: They do not have ~~**a lot of**~~ **much** time. *A lot* is sometimes misspelled as *alot*.

a while, awhile *A while* means "a period of time." It is often used with the prepositions *after*, *for*, and *in*: We rested for **a while**. *Awhile* means "a short time." It is not preceded by a preposition: We rested **awhile**.

accept, except The verb *accept* means "to receive": I **accept** your apology. The verb *except* means "to exclude": The policy was to have everyone wait in line, but mothers and small children were **excepted**. The preposition *except* means "other than": All **except** Joe will attend the conference.

advice, advise *Advice* is a noun: They asked their attorney for **advice**. *Advise* is a verb: The attorney **advised** us to save all relevant documents.

affect, effect *Affect* is a verb that means "to influence": The lobbyist's pleas did not **affect** the politician's decision. The noun *effect* means "a result": The **effect** of his decision on the staff's morale was positive and long lasting. When used as a verb, *effect* means "to produce" or "to cause": The activists believed that they could **effect** real political change.

all ready, already *All ready* means "completely prepared": The rooms are **all ready** for the conference. *Already* means "by or before the time specified": She has **already** taken her final exams.

* **all right** *All right* means "acceptable": The students asked whether it was **all right** to use dictionaries during the exam. *Alright* is not yet a generally accepted spelling of *all right*, although it is becoming more common in journalistic writing.

all together, altogether *All together* means "as a group": The cast reviewed the script **all together**. *Altogether* means "wholly, thoroughly": That game is **altogether** too difficult.

allude, elude *Allude* means "to refer to indirectly": The professor **alluded** to a medieval text. *Elude* means "to evade" or "to escape from": For the moment, his name **eludes** me.

allusion, illusion An *allusion* is a casual or indirect reference: The **allusion** was to Shakespeare's *Twelfth Night*. An *illusion* is a false idea or an unreal image: His idea of college is an **illusion**.

alot See **a lot of**.

already See **all ready, already**.

alright See **all right**.

altogether See **all together, altogether**.

* **among, between** To follow traditional usage, use *among* with three or more entities (a group): The snorkelers swam **among** the fish. Use *between* when referring to only two entities: The rivalry **between** the two teams is intense. Current dictionaries also note the possibility of using *between* to refer to more than two entities, especially when these entities are considered distinct: We have strengthened the lines of communication **between** the various departments.

amount of, number of Use *amount of* before nouns that cannot be counted: The **amount of** rain that fell last year was insufficient. Use *number of* with nouns that can be counted: The **number of** students attending college has increased.

and/or This combination denotes three options: one, the other, or both: a parent **and/or** a teacher. These options can also be presented separately with *or*: The student's application should be signed by a parent, a teacher, **or** both.

* **angry at, angry with** Both *at* and *with* are commonly used after *angry*, although according to traditional guidelines, *with* should be used when a person is the cause of the anger: She was **angry with** me because I was late.

another, other, the other *Another* is followed by a singular noun: **another** book. *Other* is followed by a plural noun: **other** books. *The other* is followed by either a singular or a plural noun: **the other book, the other books.**

anymore, any more *Anymore* meaning "any longer" or "now" most frequently occurs in negative sentences: Sarah doesn't work here **anymore**. Its use in positive sentences is considered conversational; *now* is generally used instead: All he ever does ~~**anymore**~~ **now** is watch television. As two words, *any more* appears with *not* to mean "no more": We do not have **any more** time.

anyone, any one *Anyone* means "any person at all": We did not know **anyone**. *Any one* refers to one of a group: **Any one** of the options is better than the current situation.

* **anyplace, everyplace, someplace** These words are becoming increasingly common in academic writing. However, according to traditional usage rules, they should be replaced by *anywhere*, *everywhere*, and *somewhere.*

as Conversational when used after such verbs as *know*, *say*, and *see.* Use *that*, *if*, or *whether* instead: I do not know ~~**as**~~ **whether** my application is complete. Also considered conversational is the use of *as* instead of *who*, *which*, or *that*: Many of the performers ~~**as**~~ **who** have appeared on our program will be giving a concert this evening.

* **as, like** According to traditional usage, *as* begins either a phrase or a clause; *like* begins only a phrase: My brother drives too fast, just ~~**like**~~ **as** my father did. Current dictionaries note the informal use of *like* to begin clauses after verbs such as *look* and *sound.*

assure, ensure, insure *Assure* means "to state with confidence, alleviating any doubt": The flight attendant **assured** us that our flight would arrive on time. *Ensure* and *insure* are usually interchangeable to mean "make certain," but only *insure* means "to protect against loss": The editor **ensured** [OR **insured**] that the reporter's facts were accurate. Physicians must **insure** themselves against malpractice suits.

awhile See **a while, awhile.**

bad Unconventional as an adverb; use *badly* instead. The team played **badly.** However, the adjective *bad* is used after sensory

verbs such as *feel*, *look*, and *smell*: I feel **bad** that I forgot to return your book yesterday.

being as, being that Unconventional; use *because* instead. ~~**Being as**~~ **Because** the road was closed, traffic was diverted to another route.

* **beside, besides** According to traditional usage, these two words have different meanings. *Beside* means "next to": The president sat **beside** the prime minister. *Besides* means "in addition to" or "other than": She has written many articles **besides** those on political reform. Professional writers regularly use *beside* to convey this meaning, as long as there is no risk of ambiguity.

better, had better *Better* is conversational. Use *had better* instead: We ~~**better**~~ **had better** finish the report by five o'clock.

between See **among, between**.

* **can, may** *Can* refers to ability, and *may* refers to permission: You **can** [are able to] drive seventy miles an hour, but you **may** not [are not permitted to] exceed the speed limit. In contemporary usage, *can* and *may* are used interchangeably to denote possibility or permission, although *may* is used more frequently in formal contexts.

capital, capitol *Capital* means either "a governing city" or "funds": The **capital** of Minnesota is St. Paul. An anonymous donor provided the **capital** for the project. As a modifier, *capital* means "chief" or "principal": This year's election is of **capital** importance. It may also refer to the death penalty: **Capital** punishment is legal in some states. A *capitol* is a statehouse; the *Capitol* is the U.S. congressional building in Washington, DC.

cite, site, sight *Cite* means "to mention": Be sure to **cite** your sources. *Site* is a location: The president visited the **site** for the new library. As a verb, *site* also means "to situate": The builder **sited** the factory near the freeway. *Sight* means "to see": The crew **sighted** land. *Sight* also refers to a view: What an incredible **sight**!

climactic, climatic *Climactic* refers to a climax, or high point: The actors rehearsed the **climactic** scene. *Climatic* refers to the *climate*: Many environmentalists are worried about the recent **climatic** changes.

coarse, course *Coarse* refers to roughness: The jacket was made of **coarse** linen. *Course* refers to a route: Our **course** to the island

was indirect. *Course* may also refer to a plan of study: I want to take a **course** in nutrition.

compare to, compare with *Compare to* means "to regard as similar," and *compare with* means "to examine for similarities and/or differences": She **compared** her mind **to** a dusty attic. The student **compared** the first draft **with** the second.

complement, complementary, compliment, complimentary *Complement* means "to complete" or "to balance": Their personalities **complement** each other. They have **complementary** personalities. *Compliment* means "to express praise": The professor **complimented** the students on their first drafts. Her remarks were **complimentary**. *Complimentary* may also mean "provided free of charge": We received **complimentary** tickets.

* **compose, comprise** *Compose* means "to make up": That collection is **composed** of medieval manuscripts. *Comprise* means "to consist of": The anthology **comprises** many famous essays. Dictionary editors have noted the increasing use of *comprise* in the passive voice to mean "to be composed of."

conscience, conscious, consciousness *Conscience* means "the sense of right and wrong": He examined his **conscience** before deciding whether to join the protest. *Conscious* means "awake": After an hour, the patient was fully **conscious**. After an hour, the patient regained **consciousness**. *Conscious* may also mean "aware": We were **conscious** of the possible consequences.

continual, continually, continuous, continuously *Continual* means "constantly recurring": **Continual** interruptions kept us from completing the project. Telephone calls **continually** interrupted us. *Continuous* means "uninterrupted": The job applicant had a record of ten years' **continuous** employment. The job applicant worked **continuously** from 2000 to 2009.

could of *Of* is often mistaken for the sound of the unstressed *have*: They **could ~~of~~ have** [OR might **have**, should **have**, would **have**] gone home.

couldn't care less *Couldn't care less* expresses complete lack of concern: She **couldn't care less** about her reputation. *Could care less* is considered unconventional in academic writing.

council, counsel A *council* is an advisory or decision-making group: The student **council** supported the new regulations. A *counsel* is a legal adviser: The defense **counsel** conferred with the judge. As a verb, *counsel* means "to give advice": She **counsels** people with eating disorders.

criteria, criterion *Criteria* is a plural noun meaning "a set of standards for judgment": The teachers explained the **criteria** for the assignment. The singular form is *criterion*: Their judgment was based on only one **criterion**.

* **data** *Data* is the plural form of *datum*, which means "piece of information" or "fact": When the **data are** complete, we will know the true cost. However, current dictionaries also note that *data* is frequently used as a mass entity (like the word *furniture*), appearing with a singular verb.

desert, dessert *Desert* can mean "a barren land": Gila monsters live in the **deserts** of the Southwest. As a verb, *desert* means "to leave": I thought my friends had **deserted** me. *Dessert* refers to something sweet eaten at the end of a meal: They ordered apple pie for **dessert**.

device, devise *Device* is a noun: She invented a **device** that measures extremely small quantities of liquid. *Devise* is a verb: We **devised** a plan for work distribution.

differ from, differ with *Differ from* means "to be different": A bull snake **differs from** a rattlesnake in a number of ways. *Differ with* means "to disagree": Senator Brown has **differed with** Senator Owen on several issues.

* **different from, different than** *Different from* is generally preferred for use with nouns, pronouns, and noun phrases: This school was **different from** most others. It may also be used with a noun clause: The school was **different from** what we had expected. *Different* is also commonly used with adverbial clauses in which *than* is the conjunction: We are no **different than** they are.

discreet, discrete *Discreet* means "showing good judgment or self-restraint": His friends complained openly, but his comments were quite **discreet**. *Discrete* means "distinct": The participants in the study came from three **discrete** groups.

disinterested, uninterested *Disinterested* means "impartial": A **disinterested** observer will give a fair opinion. *Uninterested* means "lacking interest": She was **uninterested** in the outcome of the game.

distinct, distinctive *Distinct* means "easily distinguishable or perceived": Each proposal has **distinct** advantages. *Distinctive* means "characteristic" or "serving to distinguish": We studied the **distinctive** features of hawks.

* **due to** Traditionally, *due to* was not synonymous with *because of*: ~~**Due to**~~ **Because of** holiday traffic, we arrived an hour late. However, dictionary editors now consider this usage of *due to* acceptable.

effect See **affect, effect**.

elicit, illicit *Elicit* means "to draw forth": He is **eliciting** contributions for a new playground. *Illicit* means "unlawful": The newspaper reported their **illicit** mishandling of public funds.

elude See **allude, elude**.

emigrate from, immigrate to *Emigrate* means "to leave one's own country": My ancestors **emigrated from** Ireland. *Immigrate* means "to arrive in a different country to settle": The Ulster Scots **immigrated to** the southern United States.

ensure See **assure, ensure, insure**.

especially, specially *Especially* emphasizes a characteristic or quality: Some people are **especially** sensitive to the sun. *Especially* also means "particularly": Wildflowers are abundant in this area, **especially** during May. *Specially* means "for a particular purpose": The classroom was **specially** designed for music students.

etc. Abbreviation of *et cetera*, meaning "and others of the same kind." Use only within parentheses: Be sure to bring appropriate camping gear (tent, sleeping bag, mess kit, **etc.**). Because *and* is part of the meaning of *etc.*, avoid using the combination *and etc.*

everyday, every day *Everyday* means "routine" or "ordinary": These are **everyday** problems. *Every day* means "each day": I read the newspaper **every day**.

everyone, every one *Everyone* means "all": **Everyone** should attend. *Every one* refers to each person or item in a group: **Every one** of you should attend.

everyplace See **anyplace, everyplace, someplace**.

except See **accept, except**.

explicit, implicit *Explicit* means "expressed clearly and directly": Given his **explicit** directions, we knew how to proceed. *Implicit* means "implied or expressed indirectly": I mistakenly understood his silence to be his **implicit** approval of the project.

farther, further Generally, *farther* refers to geographic distance: We will have to drive **farther** tomorrow. *Further* means "more": If you need **further** assistance, please let me know.

* **feel** Traditionally, *feel* was not synonymous with "think" or "believe": I ~~**feel**~~ **think** that more should be done to protect local habitat. Dictionary editors now consider this use of *feel* to be a standard alternative.

fewer, less *Fewer* occurs before nouns that can be counted: **fewer** technicians, **fewer** pencils. *Less* occurs before nouns that cannot be counted: **less** milk, **less** support. *Less than* may be used with measurements of time or distance: **less than** three months, **less than** twenty miles.

* **first, firstly; second, secondly** Many instructors prefer the use of *first* and *second*. However, according to current dictionaries, *firstly* and *secondly* are also well-established forms.

former, latter Used together, *former* refers to the first of two; *latter* to the second of two. John and Ian are both English. The **former** is from Manchester; the **latter** is from Birmingham.

further See **farther, further**.

get Considered conversational in many common expressions: The weather ~~**got better**~~ **improved** overnight. I did not know what he ~~**was getting at**~~ **meant**.

good, well *Good* is an adjective, not an adverb: He pitched ~~**good**~~ **well** last night. *Good* in the sense of "in good health" may be used interchangeably with *well*: I feel **good** [OR **well**] this morning.

had better See **better, had better**.

half *A half a* or *a half an* is unconventional; use *half a/an* or *a half*: You should be able to complete the questionnaire in **a half** ~~**an**~~ hour.

hanged, hung *Hanged* means "put to death by hanging": The prisoner was **hanged** at dawn. For all other meanings, use *hung*: He **hung** the picture above his desk.

has got, have got Conversational; omit *got*: I **have ~~got~~** a meeting tomorrow.

he/she, his/her Although used as a solution to the problem of sexist language, these combinations are not universally accepted. Consider using *he or she* and *his or her* or transforming the sentence with the plural *they* or *their.* See **28b**.

herself, himself, myself, yourself Unconventional as subjects in a sentence. Joe and **~~myself~~ I** will lead the discussion.

* **hopefully** According to traditional usage, *hopefully* means "with hope," not "it is hoped": **Hopefully**, the negotiators discussed the proposed treaty. However, dictionary editors have started to accept the use of *hopefully* as a sentence modifier: **Hopefully**, the treaty will be ratified. If your instructor prefers you to follow traditional usage, use *I hope* in such a sentence: **I hope** the treaty will be ratified.

hung See **hanged, hung**.

i.e. Abbreviation of *id est*, meaning "that is." Use only within parentheses: All participants in the study ran the same distance (**i.e.**, six kilometers). Otherwise, replace *i.e.* with the English equivalent, *that is*: Assistance was offered to those who would have difficulty boarding, **~~i.e.,~~ that is**, the elderly, the disabled, and parents with small children. Do not confuse *i.e.* with *e.g.*, meaning "for example."

illicit See **elicit, illicit**.

illusion See **allusion, illusion**.

immigrate See **emigrate from, immigrate to**.

* **impact** Though *impact* is commonly used as a verb in business writing, many instructors still use it as a noun only: The new tax **~~impacts~~ affects** everyone.

implicit See **explicit, implicit**.

imply, infer *Imply* means "suggest without actually stating": Though he never mentioned the statistics, he **implied** that they were questionable. *Infer* means "draw a conclusion based on evidence": Given the tone of his voice, I **inferred** that he found the work substandard.

in regards to See **regard, regarding, regards**.

inside of, outside of Drop *of* when unnecessary: Security guards stood **outside ~~of~~** the front door.

insure See **assure, ensure, insure**.

irregardless Unconventional; use *regardless* instead.

its, it's *Its* is a possessive form: The committee forwarded **its** recommendation. *It's* is a contraction of *it is*: **It's** a beautiful day.

kind of a, sort of a The word *a* is unnecessary: This **kind of a** book sells well. *Kind of* and *sort of* are not conventionally used to mean "somewhat": The report was **~~kind of~~ somewhat** difficult to read.

later, latter *Later* means "after a specific time" or "a time after now": The concert ended **later** than we had expected. *Latter* refers to the second of two items: Of the two versions described, I prefer the **latter**.

lay, lie *Lay* (*laid*, *laying*) means "put" or "place": He **laid** the book aside. *Lie* (*lay*, *lain*, *lying*) means "rest" or "recline": I had just **lain** down when the alarm went off. *Lay* takes an object (to **lay** something), while *lie* does not. These verbs may be confused because the present tense of *lay* and the past tense of *lie* are spelled the same way.

lead, led As a noun, *lead* means "a kind of metal": The paint had **lead** in it. As a verb, *lead* means "to conduct": A guide will **lead** a tour of the ruins. *Led* is the past tense of the verb *lead*: He **led** the country from 1949 to 1960.

less, less than See **fewer, less**.

lie See **lay, lie**.

like See **as, like**.

literally Conversational when used to emphasize the meaning of another word: I was **~~literally~~ nearly** frozen after I finished shoveling the sidewalk. *Literally* is conventionally used to indicate that an expression is not being used figuratively: My friend **literally** climbs the walls after work; his fellow rock climbers join him at the local gym.

lose, loose *Lose* is a verb: She does not **lose** her patience often. *Loose* is chiefly used as an adjective: A few of the tiles are **loose**.

lots, lots of Conversational for *many* or *much*: He has **~~lots of~~ many** friends. We have **~~lots~~ much** to do before the end of the quarter.

mankind Considered sexist because it excludes women: All ~~mankind~~ **humanity** will benefit from this new discovery.

may See **can, may**.

may of, might of See **could of**.

maybe, may be *Maybe* is an adverb: **Maybe** the negotiators will succeed this time. *May* and *be* are verbs: The rumor **may be** true.

* **media, medium** According to traditional definitions, *media* is a plural word: The **media** have sometimes created the news in addition to reporting it. The singular form is *medium*: The newspaper is one **medium** that people seem to trust. The use of *media* as a collective noun taking a singular verb, although frequent, is still considered conversational.

most Unconventional to mean "almost": We watch the news ~~most~~ **almost** every day.

myself See **herself, himself, myself, yourself**.

nothing like, nowhere near Unconventional; use *not nearly* instead: Her new book is ~~nowhere near~~ **not nearly** as mysterious as her previous novel.

number of When the expression *a number of* is used, the reference is plural: **A number of** positions **are** open. When *the number of* is used, the reference is singular: **The number of** possibilities **is** limited. See also **amount of, number of**.

off of Conversational; omit *of*: He walked **off** ~~of~~ the field.

on account of Conversational; use *because of*: The singer canceled her engagement ~~on account of~~ **because of** a sore throat.

* **on the other hand** If you use *on the one hand* to introduce the first of two contrasting points, make sure that *on the other hand* introduces the second. However, *on the other hand* may be used to introduce a contrasting point even if it is not preceded by *on the one hand.*

other See **another, other, the other**.

passed, past *Passed* is the past tense of the verb *pass*: Deb **passed** the other runners right before the finish line. *Past* means "beyond a time or location": We walked **past** the high school.

per In ordinary contexts, use *a* or *an*: You should drink at least six glasses of water ~~per~~ **a** day.

percent, percentage *Percent* (also spelled *per cent*) is used with a specific number: **Sixty percent** of the students attended the ceremony. *Percentage* refers to an unspecified portion: The **percentage** of students attending college has increased in recent years.

perspective, prospective *Perspective* means "point of view": We discussed the issue from various **perspectives**. *Prospective* means "likely to become": **Prospective** journalists interviewed the editor.

phenomena, phenomenon *Phenomena* is the plural form of *phenomenon*: Natural **phenomena** were given scientific explanations.

* **plus** *Plus* joins nouns or noun phrases to make a sentence seem like an equation: Her endless curiosity **plus** her boundless energy makes her the perfect camp counselor. Note that a singular form of the verb is required (e.g., *makes*). In the past, *plus* was not used to join clauses: The candidate had three advanced degrees. ~~**Plus**~~ **In addition,** she had experience working abroad. The use of *plus* at the beginning of a clause is now considered acceptable by some dictionaries.

precede, proceed To *precede* is to "go ahead of": A moment of silence **preceded** the applause. To *proceed* is to "go forward": After stopping for a short rest, we **proceeded** to our destination.

prejudice, prejudiced *Prejudice* is a noun: They were unaware of their **prejudice**. *Prejudiced* is an adjective: She accused me of being **prejudiced**.

pretty *Pretty* means "attractive," not "rather" or "fairly": We were ~~**pretty**~~ **fairly** tired after cooking all day.

principal, principle As a noun, *principal* means "chief official": The **principal** greeted the students every day. It also means "capital": The loan's **principal** was still quite high. As an adjective, *principal* means "main": Tourism is the country's **principal** source of income. The noun *principle* refers to a rule, standard, or belief: She explained the three **principles** supporting the theory.

proceed See **precede, proceed**.

prospective See **perspective, prospective**.

quotation, quote In academic writing, *quotation* refers to a repeated or copied sentence or passage: She began her speech with

a ~~quote~~ quotation from *Othello. Quote* expresses an action: My coach **quotes** lines from television commercials.

raise, rise *Raise* (*raised*, *raising*) means "to lift or cause to move upward, to bring up or increase": Retailers **raised** prices. *Rise* (*rose*, *risen*, *rising*) means "to get up" or "to ascend": The cost of living **rose** sharply. *Raise* takes an object (to **raise** something); *rise* does not.

real, really *Really* rather than *real* is used to mean "very": He is from a ~~real~~ really small town. To ensure this word's effectiveness, use it sparingly.

* **reason why** Traditionally, this combination was considered redundant: No one explained **the reason** ~~why~~ the negotiations failed. [OR No one explained ~~the reason~~ **why** the negotiations failed.] However, dictionary editors report its use by well-known writers.

regard, regarding, regards Be sure to use the correct forms of these words: *in regard to*, *with regard to*, *as regards*, and *regarding* [NOT *in regards to*, *with regards to*, or *as regarding*].

* **relation, relationship** According to traditional definitions, *relation* is used to link abstractions: We studied the **relation** between language and social change. *Relationship* is used to link people: The **relationship** between the two friends grew strong. However, dictionary editors now label as standard the use of *relationship* to connect abstractions.

respectfully, respectively *Respectfully* means "showing respect": The children learned to treat one another **respectfully**. *Respectively* means "in the order designated": We discussed the issue with the chair, the dean, and the provost, **respectively**.

rise See **raise, rise**.

should of See **could of**.

sight See **cite, site, sight**.

sit, set *Sit* means "to be seated": Jonathan **sat** in the front row. *Set* means "to place something": The research assistant **set** the chemicals on the counter. *Set* takes an object (to **set** something); *sit* does not.

site See **cite, site, sight**.

so Instead of using *so* to mean "very," find a precise modifier: She was ~~so~~ intensely focused on her career.

someplace See **anyplace, everyplace, someplace**.

sometime, sometimes, some time *Sometime* means "at an unspecified time": They will meet **sometime** next month. *Sometimes* means "at times": **Sometimes** laws are unfair. *Some time* means "a span of time": They agreed to allow **some time** to pass before voting on the measure.

sort of a See **kind of a, sort of a**.

specially See **especially, specially**.

stationary, stationery *Stationary* means "in a fixed position": Traffic was **stationary** for an hour. *Stationery* means "writing paper and envelopes": The director ordered new department **stationery**.

supposed to, used to Be sure to include the frequently unsounded *d* at the end of the verb form: We are **supposed to** leave at 9:30 a.m. We **used to** leave earlier.

than, then *Than* is used in comparisons: The tape recorder is smaller **than** the radio. *Then* refers to a time sequence: Go straight ahead for three blocks; **then** turn left.

their, there, they're *Their* is the possessive form of *they*: They will give **their** presentation tomorrow. *There* refers to location: I lived **there** for six years. *There* is also used as an expletive (see **30a(3)**): **There** is no explanation for the phenomenon. *They're* is a contraction of *they are*: **They're** leaving in the morning.

theirself, theirselves Unconventional; use *themselves.* The students finished the project by ~~**theirselves**~~ **themselves**.

then See **than, then**.

to, too, two *To* is an infinitive marker: She wanted **to** become an actress. *To* is also used as a preposition, usually indicating direction: They walked **to** the memorial. *Too* means either "also" or "excessively": I voted for her **too**. They are **too** busy this year. *Two* is a number: She studied abroad for **two** years.

toward, towards Although both are acceptable, *toward* is preferred in American English.

try and Conversational for *try to*: The staff will **try** ~~**and**~~ **to** finish the project by Friday.

uninterested See **disinterested, uninterested**.

* **unique** Traditionally, *unique* meant "one of a kind" and thus was not preceded by a qualifier such as *more*, *most*, *quite*, or *very*: Her prose style is ~~**quite**~~ **unique**. However, *unique* is also widely used to mean "extraordinary."

use, utilize In most contexts, *use* is preferred to *utilize*: We ~~**utilized**~~ **used** a special dye in the experiment. However, *utilize* may suggest an effort to employ something for a purpose: We discussed how to **utilize** the resources we had been given.

used to See **supposed to, used to**.

very To ensure this word's effectiveness, use it sparingly. Whenever possible, choose a stronger word: She was ~~**very satisfied**~~ **delighted** with her new digital camera.

ways Conversational when referring to distance; use *way* instead: It's a long ~~**ways**~~ **way** from home.

well See **good, well**.

where . . . at, where . . . to Conversational; omit *at* and *to*: **Where** is the library ~~**at**~~? **Where** are you moving ~~**to**~~?

with regards to See **regard, regarding, regards**.

would of See **could of**.

your, you're *Your* is a possessive form: Let's meet in **your** office. *You're* is a contraction of *you are*: **You're** gaining strength.

yourself See **herself, himself, myself, yourself**.

Glossary of Terms

This glossary provides brief definitions of frequently used terms. Consult the index for references to terms not listed here.

absolute phrase A sentence-like structure containing a subject and its modifiers. Unlike a sentence, an absolute phrase has no verb marked for person, number, or tense: *The ceremony finally over*, the graduates tossed their mortarboards in the air. See **17d(6)**.

acronym A word formed by combining the initial letters or syllables of a series of words and pronounced as a word rather than as a series of letters: *NATO* for North Atlantic Treaty Organization. See chapter **39**.

active voice See **voice**.

adjectival clause A dependent clause, also called a **relative clause**, that modifies a noun or a pronoun. See **17e**.

adjective A word that modifies a noun or a pronoun. Adjectives typically end in suffixes such as *-able*, *-al*, *-ant*, *-ative*, *-ic*, *-ish*, *-less*, *-ous*, and *-y*. See **17a** and chapter **22**. **Coordinate adjectives** are two or more adjectives modifying the same noun and separated by a comma: a *brisk*, *cold* walk. See **31d**.

adverb A word that modifies a verb, a verbal, an adjective, or another adverb. Adverbs commonly end in *-ly*. Some adverbs modify entire sentences: *Perhaps* the meeting could be postponed. See **17a** and chapter **22**.

adverbial clause A dependent clause that modifies a verb, an adjective, or an adverb. See **17e(2)**.

adverbial conjunction A word such as *however* or *thus* that joins one independent clause to another; also known as a **conjunctive adverb**. See **17a(7)**. COMPARE: **conjunction**.

agreement Grammatical correspondence in number, person, or gender between pronouns and their antecedents and subjects and their verbs. See **20f** and **21c**.

antecedent A word or group of words referred to by a pronoun. See **17a(3)**, **21a**, and **21c**.

appositive A pronoun, noun, or noun phrase that identifies, describes, or explains an adjacent pronoun, noun, or noun phrase. See **17a** and **21b(4)**.

article A word used to signal a noun. *The* is a definite article; *a* and *an* are indefinite articles. See **17a(4)**.

auxiliary verb, auxiliary A verb that combines with a main verb. *Be*, *do*, and *have* are auxiliary verbs when they are used with main verbs. Also called **helping verbs**. **Modal auxiliaries** include *could*, *should*, and *may* and are used for such purposes as expressing doubt or obligation and making a request. See **17a**, **17d**, and **20a**.

Boolean operators Words used to broaden or narrow database searches. These include *or*, *and*, *not*, and *near*. Also called logical operators. See **9b**.

case The form of a noun or a pronoun that indicates its relationship to other words in a sentence. Nouns and pronouns can be subjects or subject complements **(subjective case)**, objects **(objective case)**, or markers of possession and other relations **(possessive case)**. See **21b**.

claim A statement that a writer wants readers to accept; also called a **proposition**. See **5b**, **6c**.

clause A sequence of related words forming an independent unit (**independent clause** or **main clause**) or an embedded unit (**dependent clause** used as an adverb, adjective, or noun). A clause has both a subject and a predicate. See **17e**.

collective noun A noun that refers to a group: *team*, *faculty*, *committee*. See **17a(2)**.

colloquial A label for any word or phrase that is characteristic of informal speech. *Kid* is colloquial; *child* is used in formal contexts. See **28a(2)**.

common noun A noun referring to any or all members of a class or group (*woman*, *city*, *holiday*) rather than to specific members

(*Susan*, *Reno*, *New Year's Day*). COMPARE: **proper noun**. See **17a(2)**.

complement A word or words used to complete the meaning of a verb. A **subject complement** is a word or phrase that follows a linking verb and categorizes or describes the subject. An **object complement** is a word or phrase that categorizes or describes a direct object when it follows such verbs as *make*, *paint*, *elect*, and *consider*. See **17c**.

compound predicate A predicate that has two parts joined by a connecting word such as *and*, *or*, or *but*; each part contains a verb: Clara Barton *nursed the injured during the Civil War* and *later founded the American Red Cross*. See **17b**.

compound subject Two subjects joined by a connecting word such as *and*, *or*, or *but*: *Students* and *faculty* are discussing the issue of grade inflation. See **17b**.

compound word Two or more words functioning as a single word: *ice cream, double-check*. See chapter **36**.

conjunction A word used to connect other words, phrases, clauses, or sentences. **Coordinating conjunctions** (*and*, *but*, *or*, *nor*, *for*, *so*, and *yet*) connect and relate words and word groups of equal grammatical rank. See **17a(7)**. A **subordinating conjunction** such as *although*, *if*, or *when* begins a dependent clause and connects it to an independent clause. See **17a(7)** and **17e(2)**. COMPARE: **adverbial conjunction**.

conjunctive adverb See **adverbial conjunction**.

coordinate adjective See **adjective**.

coordinating conjunction See **conjunction**.

coordination The use of grammatically equivalent constructions to link or balance ideas. See chapter **24**.

correlative conjunctions, correlatives Two-part connecting words such as *either . . . or* and *not only . . . but also*. See **17a(7)**.

count nouns Nouns naming things that can be counted (*word*, *student*, *remark*). See **17a(2)**. COMPARE: **noncount nouns**.

dangling modifier A word or phrase that does not clearly modify another word or word group. See **22e**. COMPARE: **misplaced modifier**.

dangling participial phrase A verbal phrase that does not clearly modify another word or word group.

demonstrative pronouns Four words (*this*, *that*, *these*, and *those*) that distinguish one individual, thing, event, or idea from another. Demonstratives may occur with or without nouns: *This law* will go into effect in two years. *This* will go into effect in two years. See **21a(6)**.

dependent clause Also called *subordinate clause.* See **clause**.

determiner A word that signals the approach of a noun. A determiner may be an article, a demonstrative, a possessive, or a quantifier: *a reason*, *this reason*, *his reason*, *three reasons.*

direct object See **object**.

direct quotation See **quotation**.

ellipsis points Three spaced periods that indicate either a pause or the omission of material from a direct quotation. See **35g**.

elliptical construction (clause) A construction, usually a clause, missing one or more words that are assumed to be understood. See **17e**, **21b(7)**, **30b**.

essential element A word or word group that modifies another word or word group, providing information that is essential for identification. Essential elements are not set off by commas, parentheses, or dashes: The woman *who witnessed the accident* was called to testify. Also called a **restrictive element**. COMPARE: **nonessential element**. See **17e**, **21a(4)**, and chapter **31**.

ethos One of the three classical appeals; the use of language to demonstrate the writer's trustworthy character, good intentions, and substantial knowledge of a subject. Also called an **ethical appeal**. See **6e**. See also **logos** and **pathos**.

expletive A word signaling a structural change in a sentence, usually used so that new or important information is given at the end of the sentence: *There* were over four thousand runners in the marathon. See **30a**.

genre A literary category, such as drama or poetry, identified by its own conventions.

gerund A verbal that ends in *-ing* and functions as a noun: *Snowboarding* is a popular winter sport. See **17d(3)**.

gerund phrase A verbal phrase that employs the *-ing* form of a verb and functions as a noun: Some students prefer *studying in the library.* See **17d(3)**.

helping verb See **auxiliary verb**.

homophones Words that have the same sound and sometimes the same spelling but differ in meaning: *their*, *there*, and *they're* or *capital* meaning "funds" and *capital* meaning "the top of a pillar." See chapter **36**.

idiom An expression whose meaning often cannot be derived from its elements. *Burning the midnight oil* means "staying up late studying." See **29c**.

indefinite pronoun A pronoun such as *everyone* or *anything* that does not refer to a specific person, place, thing, or idea. See **21a(7)** and **21c**.

independent clause See **clause**.

indirect object See **object**.

indirect question A sentence that includes an embedded question, punctuated with a period instead of a question mark: My friends asked me *why I left the party early.* See chapter **35**.

indirect quotation See **quotation**.

infinitive A verbal that consists of the base form of the verb, usually preceded by the infinitive marker *to.* An infinitive is used chiefly as a noun, less frequently as an adjective or adverb: My father likes *to golf.* See **17d(3)**.

infinitive phrase A verbal phrase that contains the infinitive form of a verb: They volunteered *to work at the local hospital.* See **17d(3)**.

inflection A change in the form of a word that indicates a grammatical feature such as number, person, tense, or degree. For example, *-ed* added to a verb indicates the past tense, and *-er* indicates the comparative degree of an adjective or adverb.

intensifier See **qualifier**.

intensive pronoun See **reflexive pronoun**.

interjection A word expressing a simple exclamation: *Hey! Oops!* When used at the beginnings of sentences, mild interjections are set off by commas. See **17a(8)**.

linking verb A verb that relates a subject to a subject complement. Examples of linking verbs are *be*, *become*, *seem*, *appear*, *feel*, *look*, *taste*, *smell*, and *sound*. See **17a(1)** and **20a**.

logos One of the three classical appeals; the use of language to show clear reasoning. Also called a **logical appeal**. See **6e**. See also **ethos** and **pathos**.

main clause Also called **independent clause**. See **clause**.

misplaced modifier A descriptive or qualifying word or phrase placed in a position that confuses the reader: I read about a wildfire that was out of control *in yesterday's paper.* [The modifier belongs after *read.*] See **22d**.

mixed construction A confusing sentence that is the result of an unintentional shift from one grammatical pattern to another: When police appeared who were supposed to calm the crowds showed up, most people had already gone home. [The sentence should be recast with either *appeared* or *showed up*, not with both.] See **23c**.

mixed metaphor A construction that includes parts of two or more unrelated metaphors: Her *fiery* personality *dampened* our hopes of a compromise. See chapter **23**.

modal auxiliary See **auxiliary verb**.

modifier A word or word group that describes, limits, or qualifies another. See chapter **22**.

mood A set of verb forms or inflections used to indicate how a speaker or writer regards an assertion: as a fact or opinion (**indicative mood**); as a command or instruction (**imperative mood**); or as a wish, hypothesis, request, or condition contrary to fact (**subjunctive mood**). See **20e**.

nominalization Formation of a noun by adding a suffix to a verb or an adjective: *require*, *requirement*; *sad*, *sadness*.

nominative case Also called **subjective case**. See **case**.

noncount nouns Nouns naming things that cannot be counted (*architecture*, *water*). See **17a(2)**. COMPARE: **count nouns**.

nonessential element A word or word group that modifies another word or word group but does not provide information essential for identification. Nonessential elements are set off by commas, parentheses, or dashes: Carol Murphy, *president of the*

university, plans to meet with alumni representatives. Also called a **nonrestrictive element**. See **17e** and chapter **31**. COMPARE: **essential element**.

nonrestrictive element See **nonessential element**.

noun A word that names a person, place, thing, idea, animal, quality, event, and so on: *Alanis*, *America*, *desk*, *justice*, *dog*, *strength*, *departure*. See **17a(2)**. See also **collective noun**, **common noun**, **count noun**, **noncount noun**, and **proper noun**.

noun clause A dependent clause used as a noun. See **17e**.

noun phrase A noun and its modifiers. See **17d(1)**.

number The property of a word that indicates whether it refers to one (**singular**) or to more than one (**plural**). Number is reflected in the word's form: *river/rivers*, *this/those*, *he sees/they see*. See **20b**, **20f**, **21b**, and **21c**.

object A noun, pronoun, noun phrase, or noun clause that follows a preposition or a transitive verb or verbal. A **direct object** names the person or thing that receives the action of the verb: I sent the *package*. An **indirect object** usually indicates to whom the action was directed or for whom the action was performed: I sent *you* the package. See **17c**. The **object of a preposition** follows a preposition: I sent the package to *you*. See **17d(4)**.

object complement See **complement**.

objective case See **case**.

participial phrase A verbal phrase that includes a participle and serves as a modifier: The stagehand *carrying the trunk* fell over the threshold. See **17d**. See also **participle** and **phrase**.

participle A verb form that may function as part of a verb phrase (had *determined*, was *thinking*) or as a modifier (a *determined* effort; the couple, *thinking* about their past). A **present participle** is formed by adding *-ing* to the base form of a verb. A **past participle** is usually formed by adding *-ed* to the base form of a verb (*walked*, *passed*); however, many verbs have irregular past-participle forms (*written*, *bought*, *gone*). See **20a**.

particle A word such as *across*, *away*, *down*, *for*, *in*, *off*, *out*, *up*, *on*, or *with* that combines with a main verb to form a phrasal verb: *write down*, *look up*. See **20a**.

parts of speech The classes into which words may be grouped according to their forms and grammatical relationships. The traditional parts of speech are verbs, nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections. See **17a**.

passive voice See **voice**.

past participle See **participle**.

pathos One of the three classical appeals; the use of language to stir the feelings of an audience. Also called an **emotional appeal** or a **pathetic appeal**. See **6e**. See also **ethos** and **logos**.

perfect progressive tense The form a verb takes to indicate that an action, condition, or event originating in the past is ongoing or incomplete (*he is talking*; *the brakes were failing*; *her film will be showing*). See **20b**.

perfect tense The form a verb takes to indicate actions performed or events completed before a particular time (*I have read that book already*; *The film had begun*; *By next term, I will have finished my internship*). See **20b**.

person The property of nouns, pronouns, and their corresponding verbs that distinguishes the speaker or writer (**first person**), the individuals addressed (**second person**), and the individuals or things referred to (**third person**). See **20b**, **21b**.

personal pronoun A pronoun that refers to a specific person, place, thing, and so on. Pronoun forms correspond to three cases: subjective, objective, and possessive. See **21a(1)**.

phrasal verb A grammatical unit consisting of a verb and a particle such as *after*, *in*, *up*, *off*, or *out*: *fill in*, *sort out*. See **20a**.

phrase A sequence of grammatically related words that functions as a unit in a sentence but lacks a subject, a predicate, or both: *in front of the stage*. See **17d**.

point of view The vantage point from which a topic is viewed; also, the stance a writer takes: objective or impartial (third person), directive (second person), or personal (first person). See **21e**.

possessive case See **case**.

predicate The part of a sentence that expresses what a subject is, does, or experiences. It consists of the main verb, its auxiliaries, and any complements and modifiers. The **simple predicate**

consists of only the main verb and any accompanying auxiliaries. See **17b** and **17c**. COMPARE: **subject**.

preposition A word such as *at*, *in*, *by*, or *of* that relates a pronoun, noun, noun phrase, or noun clause to other words in the sentence. See **17a(6)**.

prepositional phrase A preposition with its object and any modifiers: *at* the nearby airport, *by* the sea. See **17d(4)**.

present participle See **participle**.

primary source A source that provides firsthand information. See **9a**. COMPARE: **secondary source**.

progressive tense The form a verb takes to indicate that an action or condition is in progress (*he is talking*; *the brakes were failing*; *her film will be showing*). See **20b**.

pronoun A word that takes the position of a noun, noun phrase, or noun clause and functions as that word or word group does: *it*, *that*, *he*, *them*. See **17a** and chapter **21**.

proper noun The name of a specific person, place, organization, and so on: *Dr. Pimomo*, *Fargo*, *National Education Association*. Proper nouns are capitalized. See **17a(2)**. COMPARE: **common noun**.

proposition See **claim**.

qualifier A word that intensifies or moderates the meaning of an adverb or adjective: *quite* slowly, *somewhat* reluctant. Words that intensify are sometimes called **intensifiers**. See **20a(5)**.

quotation A **direct quotation** (also called **direct discourse**) is the exact repetition of someone's spoken or written words. An **indirect quotation** is a report of someone's written or spoken words not stated in the exact words of the writer or speaker. See **11d** and chapter **34**.

reflexive pronoun A pronoun that ends in *-self* or *-selves* (*myself* or *themselves*) and refers to a preceding noun or pronoun in the sentence: *He* added a picture of *himself* to his web page. When used to provide emphasis, such a pronoun is called an **intensive pronoun**: The president *herself* awarded the scholarships. See **21a**.

refutation A strategy for addressing opposing points of view by discussing those views and explaining why they are unsatisfactory. See **6d(2)** and **6f**.

relative clause See **adjectival clause**.

relative pronoun A word (*who*, *whom*, *that*, *which*, or *whose*) used to introduce an **adjectival clause**, also called a **relative clause**. An antecedent for the relative pronoun can be found in the main clause. See **17e**.

restrictive element See **essential element**.

Rogerian argument An approach to argumentation that is based on the work of psychologist Carl R. Rogers and that emphasizes the importance of withholding judgment of others' ideas until they are fully understood.

secondary source A source that analyzes or interprets firsthand information. See **9a**. COMPARE: **primary source**.

signal phrase A short phrase that identifies the source of a quotation: *according to Jones*, *Jones claims*. See **11c**.

simple tense Present (*she talks*), past (*it failed*), or future (*I will dare*) forms of verbs. See **20b**.

split infinitive The separation of the two parts of an infinitive form by at least one word: *to completely cover*. See **17d(3)**.

squinting modifier A modifier that is unclear because it can refer to words either preceding it or following it: Proofreading *quickly* results in missed spelling errors. See **22d**.

subject The pronoun, noun, or noun phrase that carries out the action or assumes the state described in the predicate of a sentence. Usually preceding the predicate, the subject includes the main noun or pronoun and all modifiers. A **simple subject** consists of only the main noun or pronoun. See **17b**. COMPARE: **predicate**.

subject complement See **complement**.

subjective case See **case**.

subordinating conjunction See **conjunction**.

subordination The connection of a grammatical structure to another, usually a dependent clause to an independent clause: *Even though customers were satisfied with the product*, the company wanted to improve it. See chapter **24**.

tense The form of a verb that indicates time and sometimes completeness or duration of an action, an event, or a state of being. See chapter **20**.

thesis statement The central point or main idea of an essay. See **2b**, **8d**.

tone The writer's attitude toward the subject and the audience, usually conveyed through word choice and sentence structure.

topic The specific, narrowed main idea of an essay. See **2b**.

topic sentence A statement of the main idea of a paragraph. See **3a**.

Toulmin model A system of argumentation developed by philosopher Stephen Toulmin in which a claim and supporting reasons or evidence depend on a shared assumption. See **5b**.

transitions Words, phrases, sentences, or paragraphs that relate ideas by linking sentences, paragraphs, or larger segments of writing. See **3d(2)** and **19b(5)**.

verb A word denoting action, occurrence, or existence (state of being). See **17a(1)** and chapter **20**.

verb phrase A main verb and any auxiliaries. See **17a** and **20d**.

verbal phrase A verb form functioning as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb. See **17a**. See also **gerund**, **infinitive**, and **participle**.

voice A property of a verb that indicates the relationship between the verb and its subject. The **active voice** is used to show that the subject performs the action expressed by the verb; the **passive voice** is used to show that the subject receives the action. See **20d**.

warrant According to the **Toulmin model**, the underlying assumption connecting a claim and data. See **5b**.

Index

Numbers and letters in **color** refer to chapters and sections in the handbook; other numbers refer to pages. Page numbers in *italics* indicate a glossary of usage term.

a, an, **17a:** 249
  with abbreviations, acronyms, or numbers, **39d:** 417
  omission of, from name of periodical, **13b:** 121
a lot of, *431*
a while, awhile, *431*
abbreviated question, capitalization in, **37c:** 410
abbreviations, **39:** 414
  in academic and professional writing, **39c:** 415–416
  for addresses in correspondence, **39b:** 415
  in APA documentation style, **14a:** 159; **14b:** 171
  apostrophe use with, **33a:** 380–381
  in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 197
  for country names, **16b:** 223
  in CSE documentation style, **16b:** 222, 225, 227
  in documentation of sources, **39c:** 415
  indefinite article use with, **39d:** 417
  for Latin expressions, **39c:** 416
  in MLA documentation style, **13a:** 109, 110, 112; **13b:** 124, 126, 128, 129, 142
  parentheses around, **35e:** 394
  for parts of speech, **17a:** 246
  periods with, **35a:** 391
  plurals of, **33c:** 384–385
  postal, **39b:** 415
  with proper names, **39a:** 414–415
  for state names, **15a:** 199; **16b:** 223; **39b:** 415
  for time periods and zones, **39c:** 416
  for *United States*, **39c:** 416
absolute claim, **6c:** 34
absolute modifiers, **22b:** 317
absolute phrase, **17d:** 263–264
  comma splice and, **19b:** 275
  as sentence fragment, **18b:** 270
abstract
  in APA-style paper, **14c:** 183
  in CSE-style paper, **16c:** 235
  from database, MLA documentation of, **13b:** 134
  from journal, MLA documentation of, **14b:** 167
abstract nouns, **17a:** 248
abstract word, definition of, **29a:** 356
Academic Search Complete, **9d:** 69
academic writing, **1c:** 4–5. *See also* essays; research papers
  abbreviations acceptable in, **39c:** 415–416
  assignment analysis, **1c:** 4–5
  expectations for, **1c:** 4
  genres and formats of, **1d:** 5–6
accept, except, *431*
access date, **9g:** 71
  in APA documentation style, **14b:** 175, 177
  in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 206, 209
  in CSE documentation style, **16b:** 230
  in MLA documentation style, **13b:** 130, 132, 135, 138
accuracy
  in paraphrases, **11e:** 92
  of quotations, **34a:** 386
acknowledgment of sources. *See* documentation of sources
acronyms, **39:** 414
  apostrophe use with, **33a:** 380–381
  indefinite article use with, **39d:** 417
  parentheses around, **35e:** 394
  spelling out first usage of, **39d:** 416
action, calling for, **6c:** 35
action verbs, **17a:** 246; **17c:** 256
active voice, **20d:** 286, 287
  and passive voice, choosing between, **20d:** 287–288
AD, BC, **39c:** 416
address (location)
  abbreviations in, **39b:** 415
  commas in, **31g:** 372
  numerals in, **39f:** 418
address (speech). *See* lecture; presentation; speech
adjectival clauses, **17e:** 266; **22a:** 316; **24a:** 332
  as modifiers, **22a:** 316
    nonessential, set off by commas, **17e:** 266
    relative pronouns in, **21a:** 298
adjectival phrases, absolute phrase modified by, **17e:** 263–264
adjectives, **17a:** 248–249
  abbreviation for *United States* as, **39c:** 416
  adverbs vs., **22a:** 312–314
  comparative and superlative forms of, **22b:** 316
  as complements, **17c:** 256, 257
  participles as, **22a:** 313
  pronouns as, **21a:** 297
advanced search, **9b:** 66, 67
adverbial clauses, **17e:** 266–267
  as modifiers, **22a:** 316
adverbial conjunctions, **17a:** 253–254
  comma use with, **17a:** 253
adverbs, **17a:** 250
  vs. adjectives, **22a:** 312–314
  beginning sentence with, **27b:** 345
  comparative and superlative forms of, **22b:** 316
  conjunctive, **17a:** 253–254
  of manner, **22a:** 313
  relative, **17e:** 266
advertisements
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
    online advertisement, **13b:** 140
advice, advise, *431*
affect, effect, *431*

African American, use of term, **28b:** 353
afterword, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
age, referring to, **28b:** 354
agreement
of pronoun and antecedent, **21c:** 305–306
of subject and verb, **20f:** 291–296
aircraft names, italics for, **38b:** 412
all ready, already, 431
all right, 432
all together, altogether, 432
allude, elude, 432
allusion, illusion, 432
alot. See a lot of
already. See all ready, already
alright. See all right
altogether. See all together, altogether
a.m., p.m., **39c:** 416
American Indian, use of term, **28b:** 353
American Psychological Association (APA), **7:** 47; **14:** 159. *See also* APA style
among, between, 432
amount of, number of, 432
ampersand, in APA documentation, **14a:** 160; **14b:** 166
an. See a, an
analogy, **3c:** 16
and
in CMS documentation style of authors' names, **15a:** 197, 199
as conjunction, **17b:** 255
misspelling of, **36a:** 401
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 292
AND, use in keyword search, **9b:** 66
and/or, 432
use of slash with, **35h:** 397
angle brackets, use with URLs, **13b:** 116, 130
angry at, angry with, 432
annotated bibliography, **11b:** 83–84
annotating a text, **5a:** 28
anonymous work
APA style for citation of, **14a:** 161
MLA style for citation and documentation of, **13a:** 111; **13b:** 121
another, other, the other, 433
antecedents, **17a:** 248; **21a:** 296–297
agreement of pronoun with, **21c:** 305–306
collective noun as, **21c:** 306
indefinite pronoun as, **21a:** 300
pronoun reference and, **21d:** 307–309
of relative pronoun in adjectival clause, **20f:** 293; **21a:** 298
anthology
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 202–203
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127–128
anymore, any more, 433
anyone, any one, 433
anyplace, everyplace, someplace, 433
APA style, **14a–c:** 159–192
abbreviations in, **14a:** 159
for abstract of paper, **14c:** 181, 183
acknowledgment of source in, **11c:** 87
for body of paper, **14c:** 181, 184–190
capitalization in, **37b:** 408; **37c:** 409
with colon, **32b:** 377
citation maps
for article in a database, **14b:** 174
for article in a journal, **14b:** 168
for book, **14b:** 170
for section in web document, **14b:** 176
directory for, **14a:** 160; **14b:** 163–65
for documentation of articles
online article, **14b:** 173
print article, **14b:** 167–169
for documentation of authors in reference entries, **14b:** 165–167
for documentation of books
online book, **14b:** 173, 175
print book, **14b:** 169–172
for documentation of online sources, **14b:** 172–178
for documentation of other sources, **14b:** 178–180
for in-text citations, **14a:** 159–162
italics in, **14b:** 167, 171, 172
for reference list, **14c:** 191–192
tips for preparing, **14b:** 162–163
sample paper in, **14c:** 182–192
slash use and, **35h:** 397
for spaces after punctuation marks, **35:** 391
spelling out of numbers in, **39e:** 417
for title page of paper, **14c:** 180, 182
which vs. *that* in, **21a:** 299
apostrophe
forming plurals with, **33c:** 384–385
indicating ownership and other relationships, **33:** 379; **33a:** 380–383
marking omissions of letters or numbers, **33b:** 384
appeals, types of, **5c:** 31–32; **6e:** 37–38
appositive pronouns, **21b:** 302
appositives, **17d:** 263
comma use and, **17d:** 263
as sentence fragment, **18b:** 270
archives, digital, **9f:** 71
Arem, Joel, **3c:** 18
arguable statement, **6b:** 33. *See also* thesis statement
argument
analyzing, **5b:** 30
arrangement of, **6f:** 38–39
basic appeals in, **5c:** 31–32
claim for, **6c:** 34–35; **6d:** 35–36
differing viewpoints in, considering, **6b:** 32–33
evidence for, **6d:** 35–37
fact and opinion in, **6b:** 33
organization of, **6f:** 38–39
purpose of, **6:** 32
rhetorical appeals in, **6e:** 37–38
sample student, **6g:** 40–46
topics for, **6a:** 33
writing, **6:** 32–46
argumentative writing, **5b:** 29
arrangement
of argument, **6g:** 38–39
of ideas, **3d:** 19
of paragraphs, **3d:** 20
articles (part of speech), **17a:** 249
defined, **17a:** 249
including needed, **23f:** 328
use with abbreviations, acronyms, or numbers, **39d:** 417
using instead of *his* or *her,* **21c:** 306
articles (published works)
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 167–169, 172

online articles, **14b:** 173
citation maps for
APA style, **14b:** 174
CMS style, **15a:** 204, 207
CSE style, **16b:** 228
MLA style, **13b:** 123
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 203–206
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 227–229
evaluating, **10b:** 77–78
finding, **9d:** 68–69
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 121–124, 129
as research source, **9b:** 65
artwork
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 144–145
online work of art, **13b:** 140
as, 433
as, like, 433
Asian American, use of term, **28b:** 353
aspect, of verb tense, **20c:** 284
assignments, analysis of, **1c:** 4–5
assumptions, in argument, **5b:** 29; **6d:** 35
assure, ensure, insure, 433
asterisks, in keyword search, **9b:** 66
attributive tags. *See also* signal phrases
for acknowledgment of sources, **11c:** 86–87; **11d:** 89
comma use with, **31h:** 373; **34c:** 388
to divide quotations, **19c:** 276
audience. *See also* intended audience
purpose of argument and, **6:** 32; **6a:** 33
for research paper, **8a:** 59
rhetorical appeals to, **6e:** 37–38
in rhetorical situation, **1a:** 2
in writing assignment, **1c:** 5
audio delivery, **1d:** 6
author-date system, **14:** 159
authors
APA citation style for, **14a:** 160–161, 161–162
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 163, 165–167, 169
beliefs and values of, assessing, **10a:** 76–77
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 197, 199–200
credibility of, assessing, **10a:** 75–76
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 225–226
MLA citation style for, **13a:** 107, 108–110
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
in MLA works-cited list, **13b:** 120–121
reasoning of, **6d:** 35
sources for information about, **10a:** 76, 77
values and beliefs of, determining, **10a:** 76–77
auxiliary verbs, **17a:** 246–247; **20a:** 281
in verb phrases, **17d:** 259
award names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
awhile. See a while, awhile

background information, in argument, **6f:** 39
bad, 433–434
bar charts, **7b:** 52–53
base form, of verb
irregular verbs, **20a:** 279–280
regular verbs, **20a:** 278
BC, AD, **39c:** 416
be, **20a:** 281
forms of, **20a:** 279
passive voice and, **20d:** 287
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 291
Beah, Ishmael, **3c:** 14
being as, being that, 434
beliefs, of author, assessing, **10a:** 76–77
Berg, Kayla, **16c:** 234
beside, besides, 434
better, had better, 434
between. See among, between
biased sources, for research assignment, **9a:** 65
Bible. *See* sacred texts
bibliography. *See also* reference list; works-cited list
abbreviations in, **39c:** 415
CMS style for, **15a:** 193, 197; **15b:** 219–220
tips for preparing, **15a:** 195
for paper in the humanities, **15b:** 219–220
working, creating, **11b:** 82–83
Bing, **9b:** 65
Black (or *black*), use of term, **28b:** 353
block quotation, **11d:** 88
embedded quotation in, **34a:** 386
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 113–114
punctuation within, **13a:** 114–115
blogs
APA documentation of blog entry, **14b:** 175
CMS documentation of blog entry, **15a:** 211
MLA documentation of blog entry, **13b:** 135, 137
as research source, **9f:** 71
writing, **1d:** 6
Bloom, Benjamin, **11i:** 97
Bloom Taxonomy, **11i:** 98
Blu-ray
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 178
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 212
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 145
body
of APA-style paper, **14c:** 181, 184–190
of CSE-style research report, **16c:** 237–243
bold, **7a:** 48
book publishers, **10b:** 77–78
book reviews
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 169
for assessing author's credibility, **10a:** 77
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 205
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 124
bookmarks, **9g:** 72
books
APA documentation style for online book, **14b:** 173, 175
print book, **14b:** 169–172
citation maps for
APA style, **14b:** 170
CMS style, **15a:** 198
MLA style, **13b:** 125
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 197–203
online book, **15a:** 208–209
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 225–227
online book, **16b:** 229
evaluating, **10b:** 77–78
locating, **9e:** 70
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 106; **13b:** 124–130, 131–132

books (*continued*)
online books, **13b:** 131–132
numerals for pages and divisions in, **39f:** 418
Boolean operators, in keyword search, **9b:** 66
both . . . and, **17a:** 252; **25d:** 338
brackets. *See* angle brackets; square brackets
bridges, capitalization of names of, **37a:** 407
broad (open) questions, **9h:** 73, 75
building names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
bulletin, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
business correspondence, colon use in, **32b:** 378
but, as conjunction, **17b:** 255

call for action, **6c:** 35
call number, **9e:** 70
can, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
can, may, *434*
capital, capitol, *434*
capitalization
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167, 171
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 197
of computer keys, menu items, and icons, **37d:** 410
of first word of sentence, **37c:** 408–410
following a colon, **37c:** 409–410
proofreading for, **4d:** 26–27
of proper nouns/names, **37a:** 406–407
of titles and subtitles, **15a:** 197; **16b:** 225; **37b:** 408
capitol. See capital, capitol
Carey, Ken, **18c:** 271
cartoons, **7b:** 54
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142–143
online cartoon, **13b:** 140
case, of pronouns, **21b:** 300–304
cause-and-consequence analysis, in paragraph development, **3c:** 15
CD, MLA documentation style for sound recording on, **13b:** 145–146
CD-ROM, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 145
cf., **39c:** 416
chapter of book
APA documentation style for online chapter, **14b:** 175
print chapter, **14b:** 172
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 209
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 226
charts, **7b:** 51–53
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
online chart, **13b:** 140
The Chicago Manual of Style, **7:** 47; **15:** 193. *See also* CMS style
Chicano/Chicana, use of term, **28b:** 353
choppy sentences, revision of, **17d:** 261; **26a:** 344
chronological order, **3c:** 13; **3d:** 19
citation, **12c:** 102–103. *See also* in-text citations
citation maps
APA style
for article in database, **14b:** 174
for article in journal, **14b:** 168
for books, **14b:** 170
for section in a web document, **14b:** 176
CMS style
for article in database, **15a:** 207
for article in journal, **15a:** 204
for books, **15a:** 198
for work from a website, **15a:** 210
CSE style
for article in database, **16b:** 230
for article in journal, **16b:** 228
MLA style
for article in a database, **13b:** 133
for article in a journal, **13b:** 123
for books, **13b:** 125
for website works, **13b:** 136
citation-name system, of CSE, **16a:** 221; **16b:** 222, 225
tips for preparing, **16a:** 222
citation-sequence system, of CSE, **16a:** 221; **16b:** 221–222, 225
tips for preparing, **16a:** 221–222
cite, site, sight, *434*
city
of publication, **13b:** 124, 125; **14b:** 170, 171; **15a:** 197, 199, 205; **16b:** 225
and state, comma separating, **31g:** 372
claim, of argument, **6c:** 34–35; **6d:** 35–36
clarity
dash for, **35d:** 393
of definitions, **29b:** 359–360
classical arrangement, for argument, **6f:** 39
classification, in paragraph development, **3c:** 16–17
clauses, **17e:** 264–267. *See also* adverbial clauses; dependent clauses; independent clauses
correlative conjunctions and, **25d:** 338–339
elliptical, **17e:** 267; **21b:** 303–304
essential vs. nonessential, **21a:** 298–299
including *that* before, **23d:** 329
independent, comma linking, **31a:** 366
integrating, **19b:** 275
introductory, comma setting off, **31b:** 367
linking of, **19b:** 274, 275–276; **24a:** 331–332; **32b:** 332–333
main. *See* main clause
as modifiers, **22a:** 316
noun, **17e:** 265; **23d:** 327
recasting of, **19b:** 275
separating with period, **19b:** 274
clichés, **29b:** 357–358
climactic, climatic, *434*
climactic order, **10b:** 340–341
clip from DVD, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 145
close reading, in source evaluation, **10d:** 80
CMS style, **15a–b:** 193–220
for bibliography, **15a:** 193; **15b:** 219–220
tips for preparing, **15a:** 195
for capitalization of titles, **15a:** 197
capitalization with colon, **32b:** 377

citation maps
for article in database, **15a:** 206, 207
for article in journal, **15a:** 204
for books, **15a:** 198
for work from a website, **15a:** 210
directory for, **15a:** 195–196
for documentation of books, **15a:** 197–203
general documentation guidelines for, **15a:** 193–195
italics in, **38b:** 412
notes in, **15a:** 193, 194. *See also* endnotes, CMS style for; footnotes, CMS style for
for online sources, **15a:** 206–208
sample paper in, **15b:** 213–220
use of italics for *the* in titles, **38a:** 412
coarse, course, 434–435
coherence, of paragraphs, **3d:** 18–21
collective nouns, **17a:** 247
as antecedent, **21c:** 306
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 294
collocations, **29b:** 358–359
choosing right preposition in, **29b:** 359
colloquial words, **28a:** 351
colon, **32b:** 377–379
in business correspondence, **32b:** 378
capitalization following, **37c:** 409–410
directing attention to explanation, summary, or quotation, **32b:** 377
to emphasize words, **26a:** 340
to join clauses, **19b:** 274
quotation marks with, **34c:** 388
with running head in APA-style paper, **14c:** 180, 182
separating elements in time, bibliographic, or scriptural references, **32b:** 378–379
separating title and subtitle, **32b:** 378
separating volume and page numbers, **13a:** 114
signaling list that follows, **32b:** 378
color, as document design element, **7a:** 50
comic strip, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142–143
online comic strip, **13b:** 140
comma, **31a–i:** 366–374
in addresses, **31g:** 372
adverbial conjunctions with, **17a:** 253
after introductory clauses, phrases, or words, **31b:** 367
in APA documentation style, **14a:** 160; **14b:** 166
before coordinating conjunction linking independent clauses, **17a:** 252; **19b:** 274; **31a:** 366
with dates, **31g:** 372
following transitional words, **32a:** 375
between independent clauses, **19:** 272
with interjection, **17a:** 254
in MLA in-text citations, **13a:** 109, 115
with nonessential elements, **17d:** 263; **31e:** 370–371
with numerals, **39f:** 418
with place names, **31g:** 372
quotation marks with, **34c:** 388
quotations set off by, **31h:** 373
semicolon separating elements that contain, **32a:** 376
separating coordinate adjectives, **31d:** 369–370
separating elements in series, **31c:** 368
unnecessary, **31i:** 373–374
use with appositives, **17d:** 263
comma fault, **19:** 272–276
comma splice, **19:** 272–276; **31a:** 366
locating, **19a:** 273
revising, **19b:** 274–276
commands, for sentence variety, **27d:** 346–347
commercial publishers, **10b:** 77–78
common ground, in argumentative writing, **6a:** 33; **6e:** 38
common knowledge, **12a:** 99
common nouns, **17a:** 247
company names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
comparative form, of adjective or adverb, **22b:** 316–317
comparatives, double, **22b:** 317
compare to, compare with, 435
comparison
completing, for sentence unity, **23d:** 329–330
effective, **22b:** 316
in paragraph development, **3c:** 15–16
complement, **17c:** 255–257
mismatch with verb, **23d:** 326–327
noun phrases as, **17d:** 258
complement, complementary, compliment, complimentary, 435
complements, signal phrases and, verbs for, **23d:** 327
complete comparisons, **22b:** 316
compose, comprise, 435
compound noun, apostrophe use with, **33a:** 382
compound predicate, **17b:** 255
avoiding comma between elements of, **31h:** 373
compound subject, **17b:** 255; **21b:** 301
comprise. See compose, comprise
computer, organizing notes with, **11a:** 81, 82
computer keys, capitalization of, **37d:** 410
concession, in argument, **6d:** 36; **6f:** 39
conciseness
deleting *there are* and *it is* for, **30a:** 362
deleting unnecessary words for, **30a:** 361–362
elliptical constructions for, **30a:** 363
redundancy and wordiness and, **30a:** 360–361
relative pronoun use and, **30a:** 361
replacing wordy expressions for, **30a:** 361–362
conclusion
of argument, **6f:** 39
of CSE-style research report, **16c:** 243
concrete nouns, **17a:** 248
concrete word, definition of, **29a:** 356
conference paper, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
confirmation, in argument, **6f:** 39
congressional document, online, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 137
conjunctions, **17a:** 252–254; **32b:** 333. *See also* coordinating conjunctions;

correlative conjunctions; subordinating conjunctions
adverbial, **17a:** 253–254
combining short sentences with, **26a:** 344
conjunctive adverbs, **17a:** 253–254
connotation, **29a:** 356
conscience, conscious, consciousness, 435
consistency
in pronoun use, **21e:** 309–310
in verb tenses, **20c:** 284–286
consonants
doubling of final, **36c:** 402–403
word beginning with, indefinite article with, **17a:** 249
Constitution, MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 112
context
in prewriting stage, **2a:** 7
in rhetorical situation, **1a:** 3
continual, continually, continuous, continuously, 435
contractions, vs. possessive forms, **36b:** 402
apostrophe use marking, **33:** 379; **33b:** 384
contrast, in paragraph development, **3c:** 15–16
contrasted elements, commas setting off, **31f:** 371
contributory consequence, in paragraph development, **3c:** 15
conversational words, **28a:** 351
coordinate adjectives, **31d:** 369–370
comma separating, **31d:** 369–370
coordinating conjunctions, **17a:** 252; **24b:** 333
avoiding comma following, **31i:** 373
choosing precisely, **24b:** 334–335
to combine short sentences, **26a:** 344
comma before, **31a:** 366
joining independent clauses, **17a:** 252; **19b:** 274; **31a:** 366
joining parallel elements, **25a:** 336–337
linking parallel elements, **25a:** 336–337
coordination, **24b:** 332–333
effective use of, **24b:** 332–333
excessive, avoiding, **24c:** 335
copyright
date, **13b:** 126
fair use rules and, **12a:** 100
corporate author
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 166
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 226
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 110
correlative conjunctions (correlatives), **17a:** 252
parallelism and, **25d:** 338–339
could, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
could of, 435
couldn't care less, 435
council, counsel, 436
Council of Science Editors (CSE), **7:** 47; **16:** 221. *See also* CSE style
counsel. See council, counsel
count nouns, **17a:** 247
country names
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 171
capitalization of, **37a:** 407
course. See coarse, course
courses (educational), capitalization of, **37a:** 407
coverage, of research source, **11g:** 94–95
credentials, of authors, **10a:** 75–76
credibility
in argumentative writing, **6d:** 37
of authors, assessing, **10a:** 75–77
of publishers, **10b:** 77–78
criteria, criterion, 436
critical reading, **5a:** 27–28
checklist for, **5a:** 28
in source evaluation, **10d:** 80
critical thinking
about source material, **11i:** 97–98
about visuals, **6d:** 37
Cronin, Sarah M., **14c:** 182
CSE style, **16a–c:** 221–244
citation maps
for article in database, **16b:** 231
for article in journal, **16b:** 228
citation-name system of, **16a:** 221, 222; **16b:** 222, 225
citation-sequence system of, **16a:** 221–222; **16b:** 225
directory for, **16b:** 224
for documentation of articles, **16b:** 227–229
for documentation of books, **16b:** 225–227
for documentation of electronic sources, **16b:** 229–234
for end references list, **16b:** 223–224; **16c:** 244
for in-text references, **16b:** 221–222
name-year system of, **16a:** 221, 222
sample paper in, **16c:** 234–244
cultural groups, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
cumulative sentence, **27c:** 346
currency, of sources, **9a:** 65

dangling modifiers, **22e:** 320
dash
to emphasize words, **26a:** 340
following introductory list or series, **35d:** 393
marking break in normal flow of sentence, **35d:** 393
quotation marks with, **34c:** 389
setting off a nonessential element, **35d:** 393
data, 436
database, electronic, **9b:** 65; **9d:** 68–69
APA documentation style for work from, **14b:** 173
citation map, **14b:** 174
CMS documentation style for work from, **15a:** 206–208
CSE documentation style for work from, **16b:** 230, 232
citation map, **16b:** 231
MLA documentation style for work from, **13b:** 132–134
citation map, **14b:** 133
database accounts, **9g:** 72
date. *See also* access date; publication date
comma separating day and, **31g:** 372
cultural conventions for writing, **39f:** 418
numerals vs. words for, **39f:** 418
of publication. *See* publication date

days of week, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
decimals, using numerals for, **39f:** 418
decorative fonts, **7a:** 48
definite article, **17a:** 249
definition
  clarity of, **29b:** 359–360
  formal, **29b:** 360
  mismatches in, **23d:** 328
  in paragraph development, **3c:** 17–18
deities, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
demonstrative pronouns, **21a:** 299
denotation, **29a:** 355
dependent clauses, **17e:** 265–266; **24a:** 331–332
  beginning sentence with, **27b:** 345
  punctuation with, **17a:** 253
  for revising comma splice, **19b:** 275
  as sentence fragments, **18c:** 271
description, in paragraph development, **3c:** 13–14
desert, dessert, 436
design. *See* document design
details
  choosing and arranging, **23a:** 324
  developing paragraph with, **3c:** 13–14; **3d:** 18
  for sentence unity, **23a:** 324
  using to develop main point, **3b:** 11
device, devise, 436
dialogue, enclosing in quotation marks, **34a:** 386–387
diction, editing for, **4d:** 26
dictionaries
  consulting for correct word usage, **29b:** 359
  MLA documentation style for entry in, **13b:** 129–130
  specialized, **9c:** 68
Dictionary of American History, **9c:** 68
Didion, Joan, **26c:** 341
differ from, differ with, 436
different from, different than, 436
digital archives, **9f:** 71
digital files, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 138
digital object identifier (DOI), in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167, 172, 174
direct object, **17c:** 256
direct question, **35b:** 392
direct quotations, using, **11d:** 88–89. *See also* quotations
  checklist for, **11d:** 89
directory/directories
  of APA-style reference list, **14b:** 163–165
  of CMS-style note and bibliographic forms, **15a:** 195–196
  of CSE-style reference list, **16b:** 224
  of MLA style
    for in-text citations, **13a:** 106
    for works-cited entries, **13a:** 117–120
  subject, **9b:** 65–66
disability, referring to, **28b:** 354
discreet, discrete, 436
discussion group or forum. *See* online discussion groups
disinterested, uninterested, 437
dissertation
  from database, APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
distinct, distinctive, 437
diverse views, argument and consideration of, **6a:** 32
  responding to, **6d:** 36
divided quotations, **19c:** 276
division, in paragraph development, **3c:** 16–17
do, **20a:** 281
document design, **7:** 47–56
  elements of, **7a:** 47–50
  using graphics in, **7b:** 51–54
  using pictures in, **7c:** 54–56
documentation of sources, **11c:** 85–87; **12c:** 102–103. *See also* APA style; CMS style; CSE style; MLA style
  abbreviations in, **39c:** 415
  materials to acknowledge, **12a:** 100
  with paraphrase, **12b:** 101–102
  with quotation, **12b:** 101
DOI (digital object identifier)
  in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167, 172, 174
  in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 206, 208
domain name, checking, **10b:** 79
dots (ellipsis points), **35g:** 396–97
double comparatives/superlatives, **22b:** 317
double negatives, **22c:** 317
downloads, **9g:** 72
drafting
  of essay, **2a–c:** 7–10
  of well-developed paragraphs, **3a–d:** 10–21
dropped quotation, **11d:** 89
due to, 437
DVD
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 178
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 212
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 145

-e, dropping or retaining final, **36c:** 402
e-books, CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 209
e-mail
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 177
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 211
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 135
EBSCO, MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 134
EBSCOhost, **9b:** 69
-ed form of verb, **20a:** 278
edited work
  APA documentation style for selection from, **14b:** 172
  MLA documentation style for selection from, **13b:** 126
editing, **2a:** 8
  of essay, **4:** 22; **4d:** 25–26
  of paragraphs, **4b:** 23–24
  of sentences, **4d:** 25–26
edition of book
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 171
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 202
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
editorials
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 169
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 124
    online editorial, **13b:** 140

editors
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 171
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 200
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 226
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126, 127–128
educational courses, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
effect. See affect, effect
e.g., **39c:** 416
ei vs. *ie* spelling, **36c:** 404–405
either . . . or, **17a:** 252; **25d:** 338
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 292
electronic books, CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 209
electronic communication, acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
electronic databases, **9d:** 68–69
electronic sources. *See also* online sources
electronic texts. *See also* e-mail
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 176
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 209
elicit, illicit, 437
ellipsis points
in APA documentation, **14b:** 166
for omission within quoted passage, **11d:** 88; **13a:** 115; **35g:** 396–397
for reflective pause or hesitation, **35g:** 397
to show an unfinished sentence, **35g:** 397
elliptical constructions, **17e:** 267; **21b:** 303–304
elude. See allude, elude
em dash. *See* dash
em dash, in CMS-style bibliography, **15a:** 195
embedded title, italics use and, **38a:** 412
emigrate from, immigrate to, 437
emotional appeals, **5c:** 2; **6e:** 38
emphasis, **26:** 340–342
climactic order and, **10b:** 340–341
colon for, **26a:** 340
dash for, **26a:** 340; **35d:** 393
exclamation point for, **35c:** 392
inverting word order for, **26d:** 341–342
italics for, **7a:** 48; **38b:** 412
parallelism for, **25b:** 337
repeating words for, **10c:** 341
short sentences for, **26e:** 342
voice and, **20d:** 287–288
word placement for, **26a:** 340
emphatic order, **3d:** 19
Encyclopedia of Psychology, **9c:** 68
encyclopedias
online, APA documentation style for entry in, **14b:** 177
specialized, **9b:** 68
end references list, CSE style for, **16b:** 223–224; **16c:** 244
directory for, **16b:** 224
tips for preparing, **16b:** 223
EndNote, **9g:** 72
endnotes, CMS style for, **15a:** 193, 194; **15b:** 218
tips for preparing, **15a:** 194
ensure. See assure, ensure, insure
-er suffix, **22a:** 316–317
Erdrich, Louise, **29a:** 357
ERIC, **9d:** 69
MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 132
especially, specially, 437
essays. *See also* writing
arrangement of ideas in, **3d:** 19
editing of, **4:** 22; **4d:** 25–26
focusing topic of, **2a:** 7–8; **2b:** 8
outline for, **2c:** 9–10
paragraph development methods for, **3c:** 12–18
peer response to, **4c:** 24–25
planning and drafting, **2a–c:** 7–10
proofreading of, **4:** 22; **4d:** 25, 26–27
revising and editing, **4a:** 22–27
selecting topics for, **6b:** 33; **8b:** 59–60
thesis of, **25a–b:** 7–9
essential elements, unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 373
-est suffix, **22a:** 316–317
et al., **13a:** 109; **14a:** 161; **15a:** 199; **39c:** 416
in CSE documentation style, **16b:** 222
etc., **39c:** 416; *437*
ethical appeals, **5c:** 31; **6e:** 37–38
ethnic groups, terms for, **28b:** 353
capitalization of, **37a:** 407
ethos (ethical appeal), **6c:** 37–38
euphemisms, **29b:** 358
European American, use of term, **28b:** 353
evaluation
of authors' credibility, **10a:** 75–77
of online sources, **10c:** 78–80
of publisher credibility, **10b:** 77–78
evaluation claim, **6c:** 35
evaluation criteria, for writing assignment, **1c:** 5
Evans, Walker, **27d:** 347
events, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
everyday, every day, 437
everyone, every one, 437
everyplace. See anyplace, everyplace, someplace
evidence, for argument, **5b:** 29; **6d:** 35–37; **6e:** 38
exactness
clear definitions for, **29b:** 359–360
word choice for, **29a–d:** 355–360
examples
as document design element, **7a:** 49–50
providing to develop main point, **3b:** 12
as supporting evidence, **6d:** 36
unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 373
except. See accept, except
exclamation point, **35c:** 392–393
with interjection, **17a:** 254
quotation marks with, **34c:** 389
unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 374
exclamatory sentence, for variety, **27d:** 346–347
Expanded Academic ASAP, **9d:** 69
experts, as source for research, **9e:** 71
explanation, colon directing attention to, **32b:** 377
expletive
it as, **30a:** 362
overuse of, **30a:** 362
there as, **4f:** 53; **30a:** 362
explicit, implicit, 438
expository writing, emphatic order in, **3d:** 19

facts
acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
distinguishing from opinion, **6b:** 33
as supporting evidence, **6d:** 36
fair use, **12a:** 100
FANBOYS, **17a:** 252
farther, further, 438
faulty predication, **23d:** 326–327
feel, 438
fewer, less, 438
field research, **9h:** 72–75
figurative language, **29a:** 357
figures. *See also* graphics
referred to as such, italics for, **38b:** 412
figures of speech, **29a:** 357
film
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 178
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 144
film review, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 124
final draft, layout for, **7a:** 47–48
first, firstly; second, secondly, 438
first mention of noun, indefinite article with, **17a:** 249
first person, **21b:** 300; **21f:** 311
first-person pronouns, **21f:** 311
focused questions, **9h:** 73, 74
focusing topic for essay, **2a:** 7–8; **2b:** 8
font, **7a:** 48–49
footnotes, CMS style for, **15a:** 193
tips for preparing, **15a:** 194
for example, semicolon preceding, **32a:** 375
foreign words, italics for, **38b:** 412
foreword, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
form, parallel structure through repetition of, **25b:** 338
formal definition, **29b:** 360
format/formatting
of academic writing assignment, **1c:** 5; **1d:** 5–6
as document design element, **7a:** 47–48
former, latter, 438
forum. *See* online discussion groups
fractional numbers, hyphens in, **36e:** 405
fragment. *See* sentence fragments
freewriting, **2a:** 7
frequency, adverbs of, **17a:** 250
full note form, CMS style for, **15a:** 193, 194, 197
further. See farther, further
fused sentences, **19:** 272–276; **31a:** 366
locating, **19a:** 273
revising, **19b:** 274–276
future perfect progressive tense, **20b:** 284
future perfect tense, **20b:** 284
future progressive tense, **20b:** 283
future tenses, **20b:** 283–284

gender roles, neutral terms for, **28b:** 352
general databases, **9d:** 69
general words, definition of, **29a:** 356
genres, in academic writing, **1d:** 5–6
genus names, italics for, **38b:** 412
geographical areas/regions
apostrophe use with, **33a:** 383
capitalization of, **37a:** 407
referring to, **28b:** 354
geographical features, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
geographical names, commas with, **31g:** 372
gerund phrase, **17d:** 259–260
apostrophe use with, **33a:** 382–383
gerunds
pronouns with, **21b:** 303
verbs followed by, **17d:** 262
get, 438
glossary of usage, *431–445*
consulting, **29b:** 359; **36b:** 401
good, well, **22a:** 314
Google, **9b:** 65
Google Groups, **9f:** 71
Google Scholar, **9d:** 69
government document/publication. *See also* U.S. Government
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 171
online document, **14b:** 178
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 202
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 233
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 140–141
online document, **13b:** 137
government websites, **9f:** 71
grammar checker, using, **17e:** 268
grammar rules, **17:** 246
graphic novel, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127
graphics
acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
in document design, **7b:** 50–54
using, **11c:** 87
graphs, **7b:** 51
Greek words, spelling of plural form, **36c:** 404
group author
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 166
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 226
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 110

had better. See better, had better
half, 438
hanged, hung, 438
Harris, Mark, **3c:** 11
has got, have got, 439
Haslett, Adam, **27c:** 346
have, **20a:** 281, 282
misspelling of, **36a:** 401
he/she, 439
use of slash with, **35h:** 397
headings
as design element, **7a:** 49
parallelism in, **25c:** 338
Heller, Marie, **13c:** 146
helping verbs, **17a:** 246–247. *See also* auxiliary verbs
herself, himself, myself, yourself, 439
hesitation, ellipsis points to show, **35g:** 397
his, generic use of, **28b:** 352
his/her, **21c:** 305, 306; *439*
Hispanic, use of term, **28b:** 353
historical documents, **37a:** 407
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 141
historical sources, for research assignment, **9a:** 65
holidays
capitalization of, **37a:** 407
and year, unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 374

homophones
proofreading for, **4d:** 26
spelling of, **36:** 400; **36b:** 401–402
hopefully, 439
however, **17a:** 253–254
semicolon preceding, **32a:** 375
humanities, writing in, **15:** 193. *See also* CMS style
sample of, **15b:** 213–220
hung. See hanged, hung
hyphen
to clarify meaning, **36e:** 405
linking two or more words, **36e:** 405
in MLA documentation style, **13a:** 107, 115
in numbers, fractions, and units of measure, **36e:** 405–406

I, use of, **21f:** 311
Ibid., **15a:** 194
icon names, capitalization of, **37d:** 410
ideas
ordering for emphasis, **10b:** 340–341
paired. *See* parallelism
identification of proper nouns, numerals for, **39f:** 418
idioms, **29b:** 358–359
i.e., **39c:** 416; *439*
ie vs. *ei* spelling, **36c:** 404–405
illicit. See elicit, illicit
illness, referring to, **28b:** 354
illusion. See allusion, illusion
illustrated book, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127
images
acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
permission to use, **12a:** 100
rhetorical situation and, **6d:** 37
imagination, figurative language and, **29a:** 357
immigrate to. See emigrate from, immigrate to
impact, 439
impartial sources, for research assignment, **9a:** 65
imperative mood, **20e:** 288
implicit. See explicit, implicit
imply, infer, 439
imprint, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127
in regards to. See regard, regarding, regards
in-text citations
APA style for, **14a:** 159–162
types of, **14a:** 160
CMS style for, **15a:** 193
CSE style for, **16b:** 221–222
information provided by, **13a:** 107
MLA style for, **13a:** 106–115
placement of, **13a:** 113
types of, **13a:** 108
inclusive language, **28b:** 351–352
indefinite articles, **17a:** 249
with abbreviations, acronyms, or numbers, **39d:** 417
indefinite pronouns, **21a:** 299–300; **21c:** 305
agreement errors with, **20f:** 293–294
apostrophe use with, **33a:** 380
independent clauses, **17e:** 264–265
capitalization of, following a colon, **37c:** 409–410
colon following, **32b:** 377
combining, **24b:** 333
coordinating conjunction joining, **17a:** 252; **19b:** 274; **31a:** 366
in fused sentence, **19:** 273
linked by conjunctive adverbs, **17a:** 253–254
punctuation with, **17a:** 252, 253–254; **19b:** 274
semicolon separating, **32a:** 375–376
index cards, **11a:** 81
indexes, **9d:** 68
indicative mood, **20e:** 288
indigenous peoples, use of term, **28b:** 353
indirect object, **17c:** 256
indirect question, **35b:** 392
indirect quotations, punctuation and, **34d:** 390
indirect sources
APA documentation style for, **14a:** 162
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 203
MLA citation style for, **13a:** 111
infer. See imply, infer
infinitive marker *to,* **17d:** 261
repeated for parallel structure, **25b:** 337
infinitive phrases, **17d:** 261
as modifiers, **22a:** 315
infinitives
pronouns with, **21b:** 303
split, **17d:** 261
verbs followed by, **17d:** 262
InfoTrac, **9d:** 69
MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 134
-ing ending, **17d:** 259–260
-ing form, of verb, **20a:** 278
initials, of authors, **13a:** 109–110; **15a:** 203; **16b:** 225
inquiry. *See* research
inside of, outside of, 440
institution names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
institutional review board (IRB), **9h:** 75
insure. See assure, ensure, insure
integration
of clauses, **19b:** 275
of source material, **11c:** 85
intended audience, **1a:** 2
argument and, **5b:** 30
for essay, **2a:** 7
establishing common ground with, **6a:** 33
for visuals, **6d:** 37
intensifiers
adverbs as, **17a:** 250
completing, for sentence unity, **23h:** 330
intensive pronouns, **21a:** 297–298
interjections, **17a:** 254
Internet Public Library, **9b:** 65
interrogative pronouns, **21a:** 299
interviews
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 212
in field research, **9h:** 72–73
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143–144
online interview, **13b:** 139
introduction
of argument, **6f:** 39
of book, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
of CSE-style research report, **16c:** 236
of historical research paper, **15b:** 215
to questionnaire, **9h:** 74–75
introductory clause, phrase, or word, comma setting off, **31b:** 367
introductory list, dash following, **35d:** 393
introductory series, dash following, **35d:** 393
inverted word order
for emphasis, **26d:** 341–342

multilingual writers and, **26d:** 342
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 292–293
IRB (institutional review board), **9h:** 75
irregardless, 440
irregular verbs, **20a:** 279–280, 281
is when, avoiding use of, **23d:** 328
is where, avoiding use of, **23d:** 328
issue numbers
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167, 169
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 204
in CSE documentation style, **16b:** 227
in MLA documentation style, **13b:** 122
it
as expletive, **30a:** 362
without antecedent, **21d:** 309
its, it's, **21a:** 297
italics
for aircraft names, **38b:** 412
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167, 171, 172
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 197
for emphasis, **7a,** 48; **38b:** 412
for foreign words, **38b:** 412
for genus and species names, **38b:** 412
for legal cases, **38b:** 412; **38c:** 413
for ship names, **38b:** 412
for spacecraft names, **38b:** 412
for titles of works, **14b:** 167, 171; **15a:** 197; **38a:** 411–412
when not to use, **38c:** 413
for words, letters, or figures referred to as such, **38b:** 412
its, it's, 440

Jablonski, Nina, **27c:** 346
jargon, **28a:** 351
appropriate use of, **28a:** 351
Johnson, James Weldon, **23a:** 324
journal names, CSE abbreviations for, **16a:** 227
journals, **13b:** 121
APA documentation style for articles from, **14b:** 167
citation map, **14b:** 168
online journal, **14b:** 173
CMS documentation style for articles from, **15a:** 203–205
citation maps, **15a:** 204, 207
online journal, **15a:** 206–208
CSE documentation style for articles from, **16b:** 227–229
citation maps, **16b:** 228, 231
online journal, **16b:** 230
MLA documentation style for articles from, **13b:** 121–124
citation maps, **13b:** 133, 136
online journal, **13b:** 131
scholarly, as research source, **9a:** 65
JPEG files, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 138
Jr., **39a:** 414
JSTOR, **9d:** 69
MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 134

keyword search, **9b:** 66–67
Kidder, Tracy, **34a:** 387
kind of a, sort of a, 440
Kingsolver, Barbara, **3b:** 12
knowledge, common, **12a:** 99

-l, changing final when *ly* is added, **36c:** 403
languages
capitalization of names of, **37a:** 407
inclusive, **28b:** 351–355
later, latter, 440
Latin American, use of term, **28b:** 353
Latin expressions
abbreviations for, **39c:** 416
italics for, **38b:** 412
Latin words, spelling of plural form, **36c:** 404
Latino/Latina, use of term, **28b:** 353
law case. *See* legal cases
lay, lie, 440
layout, as document design element, **7a:** 47–48
lead, led, 440
least, **22b:** 316
lecture
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 180
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
notes posted online, APA documentation style for, **14b:** 175
legal cases
italics for, **38b:** 412; **38c:** 413
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 141
online source, **13b:** 138
Lepore, Jill, **3c:** 13
less, **22b:** 316
less, less than. See fewer, less
letters (correspondence)
to editor, APA documentation style for, **14b:** 169
personal, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
published, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142; **15a:** 203
letters (characters), referred to as such, italics for, **38b:** 412
LexisNexis, MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 134
LexisNexis Academic, **9d:** 69
library accounts, **9g:** 72
Library of Congress, **9f:** 71
library resources, for research, **9b:** 65; **9d:** 68
lie. See lay, lie
like, 433
unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 373
line drawings, **7c:** 55–56
linking verbs, **17a:** 246
with subject complements, **17c:** 256–257; **22a:** 314
lists
colon signaling, **32b:** 378
as design element, **7a:** 49–50
introductory, dash following, **35d:** 393
parallelism in, **25c:** 338
parentheses around numbers or letters in, **35e:** 394
in sentences, parentheses around numbers, **35e:** 394
literally, 440
live performances, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
logical appeals, **5c:** 31; **6e:** 38
logical comparisons, **22b:** 316

logical order, **3d:** 19
logos (logical appeal), **6e:** 38
lose, loose, 440
lots, lots of, 440
lowercase letters, in APA documentation style, **14a:** 162; **14b:** 163, 167
-ly ending, **22a:** 313–314

magazines, **9d:** 68; **13b:** 121
  APA documentation style for articles from, **14b:** 169, 173
    online article, **14b:** 173
  CMS documentation style for articles from, **15a:** 205
    online magazine, **15a:** 208
  CSE documentation style for articles from, **16b:** 229
    online magazine, **16b:** 232
  evaluating, **10b:** 77–78
  MLA documentation style for articles from, **13b:** 121–124
    online articles, **13b:** 131
main clause, **17e:** 264–265.
  See also independent clauses
  subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 295–296
main idea
  developing, **3b:** 11–12
  topic sentence stating, **3a:** 11
main point. *See* main idea
man/mankind, as sexist usage, **28b:** 352
mankind, 441
manner, adverbs of, **22a:** 313
manuals. *See* style manuals
maps, **7b:** 53
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
    online map, **13b:** 140
margins, in document layout, **7a:** 47–48
Marx, Patricia, **4b:** 24; **4c:** 24
may. See can, may
may, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
may of, might of. See could of
maybe, may be, 441
McKibben, Bill, **17a:** 252
measurement words, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 294
media, medium, 441
medium
  as part of context, **1a:** 3
  of publication, **13b:** 122
memos, colon use in, **32b:** 378
menu items, computer, capitalization of, **37d:** 410
message, in rhetorical situation, **1a:** 3
metaphor, **29a:** 357
  mixed, revising, **23b:** 325
Mexican American, use of term, **28b:** 353
might, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
military terms, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
misplaced modifiers, **22d:** 318–319
mixed construction, **23c:** 325
mixed metaphors, revising, **23b:** 325
MLA Handbook for Writers of Research Papers, **13:** 106
MLA International Bibliography, **9d:** 69
MLA style, **13a–c:** 106–158
  abbreviations in, **13a:** 109, 111; **13b:** 128, 129
  acknowledgment of source in, **11c:** 85
  for block quotations, **13a:** 113–114
  capitalization in, **37c:** 409
    with colon, **32b:** 377
  citation maps
    for article in a database, **13b:** 133
    for article in a journal, **13b:** 123
    for a book, **13b:** 125
    for work from a website, **13b:** 136
  for citations of poetry, drama, and sacred texts, **13a:** 111–112; **32b:** 379
  for citing quoted or paraphrased material, **12b:** 101–102
  directory for, **13a:** 108; **13b:** 117–20
  for documentation of articles, **13b:** 121–124
  for documentation of books, **13b:** 124–130
  for documentation of online source, **13b:** 130–138
    audio and visual, **13b:** 138–140
  for in-text citations, **13a:** 106–115
    directory of, **13a:** 106
  italics in, **38b:** 412
  for numbered notes, **13a:** 106–107
  for punctuation in citations and quotations, **13a:** 114–115
  sample student paper in, **6g:** 40–46; **13c:** 146–158
  slash use and, **35h:** 397
  for spaces after punctuation marks, **35:** 391
  spelling out of numbers in, **39e:** 417
  for title page of paper, **13c:** 146
  use of italics for *the* in titles, **38a:** 412
  for website names, **38a:** 412
  for works-cited list, **13a:** 106; **13b:** 116
modal auxiliaries, **20a:** 282
moderate claim, **6c:** 34
Modern Language Association (MLA), **7:** 47; **13:** 106. *See also* MLA style
modifiers. *See also* adjectives; adverbs
  absolute, **22b:** 317
  comparative and superlative forms of, **22b:** 316
  dangling, **22e:** 320
  defined, **22:** 312
  as double negatives, **22c:** 317
  infinitive phrases as, **17d:** 261; **22a:** 315
  limiting, **22d:** 318–319
  nouns as, **22a:** 315
  participial phrases as, **17d:** 260; **22a:** 315
  placement of, **22d:** 318–319; **22e:** 320
  prepositional phrases as, **17d:** 262–263; **22a:** 315
  recognizing, **22a:** 312–316
  squinting, **22d:** 319
  verbal phrases as, **17d:** 259
monetary amounts, words vs. numerals for, **39f:** 418
months
  capitalization of, **37a:** 407
  and year, unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 374
monument names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
mood, **20e:** 288–290
more, **22b:** 316, 317
most, **22b:** 316, 317; *441*
motion picture. *See* film
multilingual writers
  adjectives suffixes in other languages, **22a:** 313
  article (parts of speech) usage, **17a:** 249

be forms in other languages, omission of, **20a:** 280
indirect questions, **35b:** 392
inverted word order and, **26d:** 342
negation in other languages, **22c:** 317
noun or pronoun as subject, **21b:** 301
number agreement in noun phrases, **17d:** 258
phrasal verbs, **20a:** 281
possessive pronouns, **21c:** 305
relative pronoun use, **30a:** 361
using articles with abbreviations, acronyms, or numbers, **39d:** 417
verbs followed by gerunds and/or infinitives, **17d:** 262
verbs not used in progressive form, **20b:** 284
multivolume work
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 171
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 202
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 110; **13b:** 128–129
myself. See herself, himself, myself, yourself

n. pag., **13b:** 131, 132
name-year system, for CSE documentation, **16a:** 221, 222; **16c:** 244
in sample CSE-style paper, **16c:** 234–244
names. *See* proper names
narration, in paragraph development, **3c:** 13
narrow questions, **9h:** 73, 74
The National Archives, **9f:** 71
Native People, use of term, **28b:** 353
n.d., **13b:** 135; **14b:** 177
negation
double, **22c:** 317
in other languages, **22c:** 318
neither . . . nor, **17a:** 252; **25d:** 338
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 292
never, **31f:** 371
nevertheless, **17a:** 253
news websites, **9f:** 71
newsletter, APA documentation style for article from, **14b:** 177
newspapers, **9d:** 68; **13b:** 121
APA documentation style for article from, **14b:** 169
online newspaper, **14b:** 173
CMS documentation style for articles from, **15a:** 205–206
CSE documentation style for article from, **16b:** 229
online newspaper, **16b:** 232
evaluating, **10b:** 77–78
MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 121–124
online article, **13b:** 131
use of italics for *the* in name of, **38a:** 412
noncount nouns, **17a:** 247; **17d:** 258
none, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 294
nonessential elements
commas setting off, **31e:** 370–371
set off by commas, **17d:** 263; **21a:** 298
set off by dash or pair of dashes, **35d:** 393
nonracist language, **28b:** 353
nonrestrictive elements. *See* nonessential elements
nonsexist language, **28b:** 351–352
nor
joining antecedents, **21c:** 306
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 292
NOT, use in keyword search, **9b:** 66
not only . . . but also, **17a:** 252; **25d:** 338–339
note-taking
in observational research, **9h:** 74
and organizing, for research paper, **11a:** 81–82
notes
in MLA-style paper, **13a:** 106–107
for research paper, taking and organizing, **11a:** 81–82
types of, **11a:** 82
nothing like, nowhere near, 441
noun clause, **17e:** 265
beginning with *what*, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 295–296
noun phrase, **17d:** 258
nouns, **17a:** 247–248. *See also specific types*
-s ending to, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 294–295
apostrophe use with, **33:** 379; **33a:** 380–381; **33a:** 382
as complements, **17c:** 256, 257
formation of plural of, **36c:** 403–404
gerund phrases as, **17d:** 259–260
infinitive phrases as, **17d:** 261
as modifiers, **22a:** 315
related singular and plural in same sentence, **20f:** 295
as subject of sentence, **17b:** 255
verbal phrases as, **17d:** 259–261
N.p./n.p., **13b:** 135, 137
number/numbers. *See also* issue numbers; page numbers; volume numbers
agreement in, **17d:** 258; **21c:** 305–306
colons in, **32b:** 378
hyphens in, **36e:** 405–406
indefinite article use with, **39d:** 417
in a list, parentheses around, **35e:** 394
in MLA-style citations of poems, plays, and sacred texts, **13a:** 111–112
parentheses around, **35e:** 394
pronoun case and, **21b:** 300
referred to as such, **33c:** 384
referred to as such, italics for, **38b:** 412
spelling out, **39e:** 417
superscript, **13a:** 106–107; **15a:** 193, 194; **16b:** 221, 222
verb tense and, **20b:** 283
number of, 441
numbered paragraphs/sections, in MLA-style citations, **13a:** 112–113
numerals, common uses of, **39f:** 418
Nuñez, Christian, **15b:** 213

object
direct and indirect, **17c:** 256
of preposition, **17d:** 258, 263–264
pronouns as, **21b:** 301–302
object complement, **17c:** 257

objective case, pronouns in, **21b:** 301–302
observations, in field research, **9h:** 73–74
off of, 441
omission
apostrophe marking, **33b:** 384
ellipsis points to mark, **35g:** 396–397
on account of, 441
on the other hand, 441
online catalog, **9b:** 65; **9e:** 70
online discussion groups, **9f:** 71; **30e:** 256
MLA documentation style for posting to, **13b:** 135
online sources
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 172–178
audio and video, **14b:** 178
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 206–212
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 229–234
evaluating, **10a–d:** 75–80
of information about authors, **10a:** 76
locating, **9b:** 65–66; **9f:** 70–71
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 130–138
audio and visual, **13b:** 138–140
open questions, **9h:** 73, 75
operators, logical (or Boolean), **9b:** 66
opinions
acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
distinguishing from facts, **6b:** 33
opportunity, in rhetorical situation, **1a:** 2
or
as conjunction, **17b:** 255
joining antecedents, **21c:** 306
subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 292
OR, use in keyword search, **9b:** 66
organization
of argument, **6f:** 38–39
as author, in CSE style, **16b:** 225
of data in tables, **7b:** 51, 52
of notes, for research paper, **11a:** 81–82
of paragraphs, **3d:** 19
organization names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
organizational patterns, for paragraphs, **3d:** 19
Orwoll, Mark, **3c:** 15
other. See another, other, the other
outline
for essay, creating, **2c:** 9–10
parallelism in, **25c:** 338
ownership, apostrophe indicating, **33:** 379; **33a:** 380–383

p./pp., **14a:** 159; **16b:** 225
page numbers
APA style for, **14a:** 159, 160
CMS style for, **15a:** 193, 194
CSE style for, **16b:** 227
in MLA documentation style, **13a:** 107
MLA style for, **13a:** 106; **13b:** 122
paintings, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 144–145
online work of art, **13b:** 140
Palmer, Parker, **27d:** 347
pamphlet, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
para, **14a:** 159
paragraph development
methods for, **3c:** 12–18
unity and coherence and, **3c:** 18–21
paragraphs
arrangement of, **3d:** 20
coherence of, **3d:** 18–21
developing, **3a–d:** 10–21. *See also* paragraph development
in dialogue, **34a:** 386–387
numbered, in MLA-style citations, **13a:** 112–113
patterns of organization, **3d:** 19
revising of, **4b:** 23
unity of, **3d:** 18–21
parallelism, **25:** 336–339
coordinating conjunctions and, **25a:** 336–337
correlative conjunctions and, **25d:** 338–339
through repetition of form, **25c:** 338
through repetition of words, **25b:** 337
paraphrases/paraphrasing, **11e:** 90
accurate, **11e:** 92
adequate, **11e:** 91
creating, **11e:** 90–92
with documentation, **12b:** 101–102
inaccurate/unethical, **11e:** 91–92
inadequate, **11e:** 90
patchwriting and, **12b:** 102
signal phrases for, **11c:** 86
summary vs., **11f:** 92–93
parentheses
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167, 177, 178
around acronyms and abbreviations, **35e:** 394
in keyword search, **9b:** 67
with MLA-style citations, **13a:** 107
for numbers or letters in list, **35e:** 394
to set off information, **35e:** 394
parenthetical citations. *See* in-text citations
parenthetical element, set off by commas, **31f:** 371
parenthetical expression, commas setting off, **31f:** 371
parenthetical sentence, capitalization of first word of, **37c:** 409
participial phrases, **17d:** 260–261
absolute phrase modified by, **17e:** 263–264
as modifiers, **17d:** 260; **22a:** 315
participles. *See also* past participles; present participles
as adjectives, **22a:** 313
particle, **20a:** 281
parts of speech, **17a:** 246–254. *See also* adjectives; adverbs; conjunctions; nouns; prepositions; pronouns; verbs
passed, past, 441
passive voice, **20d:** 286–287
and active voice, choosing between, **20d:** 287–288
to avoid using *his or her*, **21c:** 306
of perfect subjunctive, **20e:** 289
use of, **20d:** 287–288
past form, of verb
irregular verbs, **20a:** 279–280
regular verbs, **20a:** 278
past participles
as adjectives, **22a:** 313

of irregular verbs, **20a:** 279–280
in participial phrase, **17d:** 260–261
in passive voice, **20d:** 287
of regular verbs, **20a:** 278
past perfect progressive tense, **20c:** 284
past perfect tense, **20b:** 284
past progressive tense, **20b:** 283
past subjunctive mood, **20e:** 289
past tenses, **20b:** 283–284
patchwriting, **12b:** 102
pathos (emotional appeal), **6e:** 38
patterns of organization, for paragraphs, **3d:** 19
PDF files, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 138
per, 433
percent, percentage, 434
percentages, using numerals for, **39f:** 418
perfect progressive tenses, **20b:** 284
perfect subjunctive mood, **20e:** 289
perfect tenses, **20b:** 284
period (punctuation mark), **15a:** 208
in abbreviations, **35a:** 391
in biblical citations, **13a:** 112
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 203
in divided quotations, **19c:** 276
at end of sentence, **35a:** 391
with interjection, **17a:** 254
with MLA-style citations, **13a:** 115
with numerals, **39f:** 418
quotation marks with, **34c:** 388
to separate act, scene, and line numbers in MLA-style citations, **13a:** 111
to separate clauses, **19b:** 274
separating chapter and verse, **13a:** 112
period (historical), capitalization of, **37a:** 407
periodic sentence, **27c:** 346
periodicals, **9d:** 68. *See also* journals; magazines; newspapers
evaluating, **10b:** 77–78
permission, to use image, **12a:** 100
person
pronoun case and, **21b:** 300
verb tense and, **20b:** 283
personal communication/letter
acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
APA documentation style for, **14a:** 162; **14b:** 177
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 211
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
personal pronouns, **17a:** 248; **21a:** 297
perspective, prospective, 442
persuasive writing
appeals in, **6e:** 37–38
emphatic order and, **3d:** 19
persuasive writing, emphatic order and, **3d:** 19
phenomena, phenomenon, 442
photocopies, keeping track of, **9g:** 72
photographs, **7c:** 54–56
APA documentation for, **14b:** 180
MLA documentation for, **13b:** 145
online photograph, **13b:** 140
phrasal prepositions, **17a:** 251
phrasal verb, **20a:** 281
phrases, **17d:** 258–264. *See also* absolute; participial phrases; prepositional phrases; transitional words or phrases
appositive, **17d:** 263–264
comma separating series of, **31c:** 368
common, for synthesizing sources, **11h:** 97
introductory, comma setting off, **31b:** 367
as modifiers, **22a:** 315–316
noun, **17d:** 258, 263–264
parallel, **25a:** 336–337
as sentence fragments, **18b:** 270–271
between subject and verb, **20f:** 291–292
verb, **17d:** 259–261
verbal, **17d:** 259
pie charts, **7b:** 51, 52
Pinter, Rachel L., **14c:** 182
place names, apostrophe use with, **33a:** 383
plagiarism, avoiding, **12a–b:** 98–103
planning, of essay, **2a–c:** 7–10
plays
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 111
pages and divisions in, **39f:** 418
plural forms
forming with/without apostrophes, **33:** 379; **33a:** 381
of verbs, **20f:** 291
plural nouns
apostrophe use with, **33:** 379; **33a:** 381
without apostrophe, **33c:** 384–387
plurals. *See also* number, agreement in
spelling of, **36c:** 403–404
plus, 442
p.m., a.m., 39c: 416
podcasts
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 178
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 211
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 138–139
poetry
MLA citation style for, **13a:** 111
quotations from, **34a:** 387; **35h:** 397
points of view, argument and, **6a:** 32–33; **6e:** 37–38
policy claim, **6d:** 35
political party names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
popular magazines, as research source, **9a:** 65
author credibility and, **10b:** 77–78
position, in argumentative writing. *See* claim, of argument
positive form, of adjective or adverb, **22a:** 316
possessive case
apostrophe for, **33:** 379, **33a:** 380–383
pronouns in, **21b:** 302
possessive determiner, **21c:** 305
possessive forms, vs. contractions, **36b:** 402
apostrophe use marking, **33:** 379; **33b:** 384
possessive pronouns, **21a:** 297–298; **21c:** 305
confusion with contractions, **33b:** 384; **36b:** 402

postal abbreviations, **39b:** 415
precede, proceed, **442**
preciseness. *See* exactness
predicate, **17b:** 255. *See also* compound predicate
predication, faulty, **23d:** 326–327
preface, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
prefix, spelling of words with, **36c:** 402–404
prejudice, prejudiced, **442**
preliminary bibliography. *See* working bibliography
prepositional phrases, **17d:** 262–263
  in absolute phrase, **17e:** 263–264
  following indefinite pronoun, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 294
  introductory, comma setting off, **31b:** 367
  as modifiers, **22a:** 315
  as sentence fragment, **18b:** 270
prepositional verb, **20a:** 281
prepositions, **17a:** 251
  in collocations, **29b:** 359
  objects of, **17d:** 258
  phrasal, **17a:** 251
  in prepositional phrases, **17d:** 263
present participles, **17d:** 261
  as adjectives, **22a:** 313
  in participial phrase, **17d:** 260, 261
  possessive pronoun and, **21b:** 303
present perfect progressive tense, **20b:** 284
present perfect tense, **20b:** 284
present progressive tense, **20b:** 283
present subjunctive mood, **20e:** 289
present tenses, **20a:** 278; **20b:** 283–284
presentation
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 180
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 143
pretty, **442**
previewing a text
  for critical reading, **5a:** 28
  rhetorically, **1b:** 3
prewriting, **2a:** 7
primary cause, in paragraph development, **3c:** 15
primary consequence, in paragraph development, **3c:** 15
primary sources, **9a:** 64
principal, principle, **442**
print sources, evaluating, **10a–d:** 75–80
printouts, keeping track of, **9g:** 72
proceed. See precede, proceed
process. *See* writing process
process analysis, in paragraph development, **3c:** 14–15
products
  apostrophe use with, **33a:** 383
  capitalization of, **37a:** 407
professional writing, abbreviations acceptable in, **39c:** 415–416
progressive tenses, **20b:** 283, 284
Project MUSE, MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 134
pronoun reference, **21d:** 307–309
  ambiguous, **21d:** 307
  broad, **21d:** 308
  implied, **21d:** 308
  it without an antecedent, **21d:** 309
  remote, **21d:** 307–308
pronouns, **17a:** 248; **21a–f:** 296–311. *See also specific types*
  agreement with antecedent of, **21c:** 305–306
  appositive, **21b:** 302
  case of, **21b:** 300–304
  as complements, **17c:** 256
  consistency in use of, **21e:** 309–310
  first-person, **21b:** 300
  as objects, **21b:** 301–302, 303
  for paragraph clarity, **3d:** 19–20
  point of view and, **21e:** 309–310
  recognizing, **21a:** 296–297
  replacing gerund phrases, **17d:** 259–260
  second-person, **21b:** 300
  as subject of sentence, **17b:** 255; **21b:** 300, 302
  third-person, **21b:** 300
  types of, **21a:** 297–300
pronunciation, misspelling and, **36a:** 400–401
proof, in argument, **6f:** 39
proofreading, **2a:** 8; **4:** 22
  checklist for, **4d:** 26–27
  of essay, **4:** 22; **4d:** 25, 26–27
proper names
  abbreviations of, **39a:** 414–415
  capitalization of, **37a:** 406–407
proper nouns, **17a:** 247
  capitalization of, **37a:** 406–407
proposition, in argument, **6f:** 39. *See also* claim, of argument
ProQuest
  example of keyword search on, **9d:** 67
  MLA documentation style for article from, **13b:** 134
  as reference source, **9d:** 69
prospective. See perspective, prospective
PsycINFO, **9d:** 69
public law, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 141–142
  online source, **13b:** 138
publication data
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 163
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 197, 199
  online book, **15a:** 209
  CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 223, 225
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 121–122, 126
  online sources, **13b:** 130
publication date, **9g:** 71–72
  APA documentation style for, **14a:** 159, 162; **14b:** 171
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 197, 205
  CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 223, 230, 233
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 122
Publication Manual of the American Psychological Association, **14:** 159
published dissertation, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
published interview
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 211–212
published letter, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
published works, acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100

publishers
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 166, 171
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 197
credibility of, **10b:** 77–78
in MLA documentation style, **13b:** 116, 120, 126, 137
publisher's imprint, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127
Puerto Rican, use of term, **28b:** 353
punctuation
apostrophe as, **33:** 379, **33a–c:** 380–385
colon as, **32b:** 377–379
comma as, **31:** 366; **31a–i:** 366–374
dash as, **35d:** 393–394
ellipsis points as, **35g:** 396–397
exclamation point as, **35c:** 392–393
with MLA-style citations, **13a:** 114–115
parentheses as, **35e:** 394
period as, **35a:** 391
proofreading for, **4d:** 26
question mark as, **35b:** 392
quotation marks as, **34:** 385; **34a–c:** 385–390
semicolon as, **32a:** 375–376
slash as, **35h:** 397
spaces with, **35:** 391; **35d:** 393
square brackets as, **35e:** 395–396
punctuation marks, in DOI/URL citations, **15a:** 208
purpose (rhetorical), **1a:** 2–3
of argument, **6:** 32
of research paper, **8a:** 58–59

qualifiers, adverbs as, **17a:** 250
question mark
with quotation marks, **13a:** 115; **34c:** 389
unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 374
use of, **35b:** 392
as wildcard in keyword search, **9b:** 67
questionnaire, in field research, **9h:** 74–75
questions
abbreviated, capitalization in, **37c:** 410
and argument, **6a:** 32–33
capitalization of abbreviated, **37c:** 410
interrogative pronouns in, **21a:** 299
for interviews, **9h:** 73
research. *See* research questions
rhetorical, **27d:** 347
for sentence variety, **27d:** 346–347
for survey, **9h:** 74
which?, comma use with, **31e:** 370
quotation, quote, 442–443
quotation marks, **34a–d:** 385–390
closing, unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 374
with commas and periods, **34c:** 388
for copied words, **12b:** 101
for dialogue, **34a:** 386–387
for direct quotations, **34a:** 385–387
indirect quotations and, **34d:** 390
in keyword search, **9b:** 66
misused, **34d:** 390
for poetry excerpt within sentence, **34a:** 387
with question mark, exclamation point, or dash, **13a:** 115; **34c:** 389
for quotations within quotations, **34a:** 386
with semicolons and colons, **34c:** 388
for short excerpts of poetry, **34a:** 387
for titles of short works, **15a:** 203; **34b:** 387
quotations/quoting
APA documentation style for, **14a:** 160
attributive tags set off by commas in, **31h:** 373
block, **34a:** 386
capitalization of first word of, **37c:** 408–409
colon directing attention to, **32b:** 377
divided, **19c:** 276
with documentation, **12b:** 101
dropped, **11d:** 89
ellipsis points to mark omission in, **35g:** 396–397
embedded, in block quotation, **34a:** 386
MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 113–114
quotation marks for, **34a:** 385–387
signal phrases for, **11c:** 86; **11d:** 89
square brackets for additions or alterations to, **35f:** 395

race, referring to, **28b:** 353
radio program, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 144
online program, **13b:** 139
raise, rise, 443
range of pages, in MLA documentation style, **13a:** 107
reading
closely. *See* close reading
critically. *See* critical reading
rhetorically, **1:** 2–6
real, really, 443
reason . . . is because, mismatch of, **23d:** 328
reason why, 443
reasoning, examining author's, **6d:** 35
reasons, in argument, **5b:** 29; **6d:** 35–36; **6e:** 38; **6f:** 39
establishing, for claim, **6d:** 35–36
redundancy, **30a:** 360
reference books
APA documentation style for selection from, **14b:** 172
locating, **9c:** 68
MLA documentation style for selection from, **13b:** 137
reference list
APA style for
directory for, **14b:** 163–165
in sample paper, **14c:** 191–192
tips for preparing, **14b:** 162–163
CSE style for, **16b:** 223–224; **16c:** 244
tips for preparing, **16b:** 223
reference management systems, **9g:** 72
reflective pause, ellipsis points to show, **35g:** 397
reflexive pronouns, **21a:** 297–298
refutation, in argument, **6d:** 36; **6f:** 39
RefWorks, **9g:** 72
regard, regarding, regards, 435

regionalisms, **28a:** 351
regular verbs, **20a:** 278
relation, relationship, 435
relative adverb, **17e:** 266
relative clause, **17e:** 266. *See also* adjectival clauses
relative pronouns, **21a:** 298–299; **21d:** 308
  to combine short sentences, **26a:** 344
  deleting unnecessary, **30a:** 362–363
  in dependent clause, **17e:** 266; **24a:** 332
  matching, with antecedent, **20f:** 293
  omission of, **17e:** 266
  redundant, **30a:** 361
relevance, of sources, **10b:** 80
reliability
  of information (evidence), **6b:** 33
  of periodicals, **10b:** 77–78
  of research findings, **11g:** 95–96
  of sources, **9f:** 70–71; **10c:** 79
religions
  capitalization of, **37a:** 407
  referring to, **28b:** 354
religious followers, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
repetition
  for emphasis, **10c:** 341
  for paragraph coherence, **3d:** 20
  for parallelism, **25b:** 337
reports
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 171
    online report, **14b:** 177
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 142
reprinted works, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 128
republished book
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 172
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127
research
  field, **9h:** 72–75
  as inquiry, **8:** 59
  library resources for, **9b:** 65; **9d:** 68
  online sources for, **9b:** 65–66; **9f:** 70–71
  planning, **8a–d:** 58–63
  reliability of findings in, **11g:** 95–96
  rhetorical situation and, **11g:** 94
research papers
  in APA style, **14c:** 182–192
  in CMS style, **15b:** 213–220
  in CSE style, **16c:** 234–244
  in MLA style, **13c:** 146–158
research plan, creating, **8d:** 62–63
research questions
  formulating, **8b:** 59–60
  purpose of, **8a:** 58–59
  testing, **8c:** 61
respect, in writing about differences, **28b:** 353–354
respectfully, respectively, 443
response
  to essay assignment, **4c:** 24–25
  to sources, **11g:** 93–96
review
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 169
  CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 205
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 124
    online review, **13b:** 140
revision, **2a:** 7
  of choppy sentences, **17d:** 261; **26a:** 344
  of comma splices and fused sentences, **19b:** 274–276
  of double negatives, **22c:** 318
  of essays, **4:** 22–27
  of misplaced modifiers, **22d:** 318–319; **22e:** 320
  of mixed metaphors, **23b:** 325
  of paragraphs, **4b:** 23–24
  of sentence fragments, **18b:** 270–271
  for unity and coherence, **4a:** 23
rhetoric, **1:** 2
rhetorical appeals, **6e:** 37–38
rhetorical knowledge, **1b:** 3
rhetorical methods, for paragraph development, **3c:** 12
rhetorical purpose. *See* purpose (rhetorical)
rhetorical questions, **27d:** 347
rhetorical situation. *See also* thinking rhetorically
  elements of, **1a:** 2–3
  image use and, **6d:** 37
  research and, **11g:** 94
  usage and, **1:** 2
rise. See raise, rise
role, in writing assignment, **1c:** 5
root words, **36c:** 402
Roy, Jody M., **3c:** 17
run-on sentence, **19:** 273. *See also* fused sentences
running head, in APA-style paper, **14c:** 180, 182

-s ending, subject-verb agreement and, **20a:** 278; **20f:** 294–295
-s form, of verbs, **20a:** 278
sacred texts, **22b:** 189
  capitalization of, **37a:** 407
  colon use in, **32b:** 378–379
  MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 112; **13b:** 130
    online text, **13b:** 138
sans serif fonts, **7a:** 48
scholarly sources, journals as, **9a:** 65
  documentation styles for. *See under* journals
ScienceDirect, **9d:** 69
sciences, writing in, style guide for, **16:** 221. *See also* CSE style
Scientific Style and Format: The CSE Manual for Authors, Editors, and Publishers, **16:** 221
scriptural references. *See* sacred texts
search
  advanced, **9b:** 66, 67
  keyword, **9b:** 66, 67
  in online catalog, **9b:** 65
search engines (search tools), **9b:** 65; **10a:** 76
second person, **21f:** 311
second-person pronouns, **21f:** 311
secondary consequence, in paragraph development, **3c:** 15
secondary sources, **9a:** 64. *See also* indirect sources
section
  of book, CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 226
  of DVD, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 145
  of newspaper, in MLA documentation style, **13b:** 124
  of website/web document
    APA documentation style for, **14b:** 176

MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 135
section numbers
in CMS-style citations of online books, **15a:** 209
in MLA-style citations, **13a:** 112–113
Seitz, Anna, **6g:** 40
semicolon
in APA-style citations, **14a:** 161
in CSE-style citations, **16b:** 222, 227
between independent clauses, **17a:** 253; **19b:** 274; **32a:** 375–376
in MLA-style citations, **13a:** 110
quotation marks with, **34c:** 388
separating elements that contain commas, **32a:** 376
senior citizens, use of term, **28b:** 354
sensory verbs, **17c:** 256–257
sentence fragments, **18a–c:** 269–271
dependent clauses as, **18a:** 269; **18c:** 271
phrases as, **18b:** 270–271
recognizing, **18a:** 269
sentence structure, and paraphrasing, **11c:** 90–92
sentences. *See also specific types of sentences*
capitalization in, **37c:** 408–410
combining, **17d:** 261; **26a:** 344
combining independent clauses in, **24b:** 333
conjunctions and conjunctive adverbs in, **17a:** 253–254
cumulative and periodic, **27c:** 346
editing of, **4d:** 25–26
ending with preposition, **17a:** 251
essential elements of, **17:** 246–268
paired ideas in. *See* parallelism
period at end of, **35a:** 391
relating parts of, **23d:** 326–327
run-on, **19:** 273
short
combining, **26a:** 344
for emphasis, **26e:** 342
simple, combining, **26a:** 344
subjects and predicates of, **17b:** 255
unfinished, ellipsis points to show, **35g:** 397
unity of, **23a:** 324–330
variety of types and lengths in, **27:** 344–347
series
book in, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 129
comma separating elements in, **31c:** 368
dash following, **35d:** 393
television, APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
serif fonts, **7a:** 48
sexist language, **21c:** 306
avoiding, tips for, **28b:** 352
sexual orientation, referring to, **28b:** 355
shall, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
Sheffield, Rob, **27d:** 346
Shelley, Mary, **3c:** 16
ship names, italics for, **38b:** 412
short note form, in CMS style, **15a:** 193, 197; **15b:** 218
short sentences
combining, **26a:** 344
for emphasis, **26e:** 342
should, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
should of. See could of
Shreeve, James, **7c:** 89
sight. See cite, site, sight
signal phrases
for acknowledgment of sources, **11c:** 86–87; **11d:** 89. *See also* attributive tags
and their complements, verbs for, **23d:** 327
simile, **29a:** 357
simple future tense, **20b:** 283
simple past tense, **20b:** 283
simple predicate, **17b:** 255
simple present tense, **20b:** 283
simple sentences, combining, **26a:** 344
simple subject, **17b:** 255
simple tenses, **20b:** 283
singular nouns, apostrophe use with, **33a:** 380–381
singular number, **21c:** 305
singular verb forms, **20f:** 291
singular words, ending in *-s,* **20f:** 294–295
sit, set, **443**
site. See cite, site, sight
slang, **28a:** 350
slash, **35h:** 397
so, **444**
use as coordinating conjunction, **24c:** 334–35
use as intensifier, **23h:** 330
social sciences
sample research paper in, **14c:** 182–192
writing in, style guide for, **14:** 159. *See also* APA style
someplace. See anyplace, everyplace, someplace
sometime, sometimes, some time, **444**
sort of a. See kind of a, sort of a
sound recording
APA documentation style for online recording, **14b:** 178
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 213
online source, **15a:** 211–212
MLA documentation style for
on CD, **13b:** 145–146
online recording, **13b:** 138
sources. *See also*
documentation of sources; electronic sources; indirect sources; online sources
acknowledging. *See* documentation of sources
analyzing and responding to, **11g:** 93–96
appropriate for research assignment, **9a–h:** 64–75
biased vs. impartial, **9a:** 65
books as, **9e:** 70
coverage of, **11g:** 94–95
current vs. historical, **9a:** 65
evaluation of, **10a–c:** 75–80
field research as, **9h:** 72–75
integrating into writing, **11c:** 85
keeping track of, **9g:** 71–72
permission to use, **12a:** 100
primary, **9a:** 64
published articles as, **9a:** 65
questionnaires as, **9h:** 74–75
relevance and timeliness of, **10b:** 80
reliability of, **9f:** 70–71; **10c:** 79
responding to, **11g:** 93–96
secondary, **9a:** 64
synthesizing, **11h:** 96–97
thinking critically about, **11i:** 97–98
spacecraft names, italics for, **38b:** 412

spacing, in document layout, **7a:** 47–48
spatial order, **3c:** 13–14; **3d:** 19
specialized dictionaries, **9c:** 68
specialized reference books, **9b:** 66
specially. See especially, specially
species names, italics for, **38b:** 412
specific word, definition of, **29a:** 356
speech
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 180
  online, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 139
spell checker
  and proofreading, **4d:** 26
  tips for using, **36:** 400
spelling
  confusion of *ei* and *ie* in, **36d:** 404–405
  of homophones, **36b:** 401–402
  hyphens in, **36e:** 405–406
  of plural nouns, **36c:** 403–404
  prefixes and, **36c:** 402–404
  pronunciation and, **36a:** 400–401
  proofreading for, **4d:** 26
  spell checkers and, **4d:** 26; **36:** 400
  suffixes and, **36c:** 402–404
  of words from Latin or Greek, **36c:** 403–404
spelling out, of numbers, **39e:** 417
Spellings, Margaret, **3d:** 20
split infinitives, **17d:** 261
sponsors, of websites, **13b:** 130, 131, 135, 136, 137, 138; **15a:** 210
square brackets, **35f:** 395–396
  with APA-style citations, **14b:** 175, 178, 179
  clarifying changes in quotation, **11d:** 88
  with clarifying word in direct quotations, **14c:** 187
  with MLA-style citations, **13a:** 115
squinting modifier, revising, **22d:** 319
Sr., **39a:** 414
stance, in rhetorical situation, **1a:** 3
state names
  abbreviations for, **39b:** 415
  in addresses, **39b:** 415
  in APA documentation style, **14b:** 171
  in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 199
statement, arguable, **6b:** 33. *See also* thesis statement
stationary, stationery, 444
statistics, acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
statistics, as supporting evidence, **6d:** 36
stereotypical language, avoiding, **28b:** 352
Stockwell, Anne, **35e:** 394
Strout, Elizabeth, **3c:** 16
style manuals, **7a:** 47
  for writing in the arts and humanities, **13:** 106; **15:** 193
  for writing in the sciences, **16:** 221
  for writing in the social sciences, **14:** 159
subject (of essay)
  focusing into specific topic, **2a:** 7–8; **2b:** 8
  selecting, **6b:** 33; **8b:** 59–60
subject (of sentence), **17b:** 255
  avoiding comma between verb and, **31i:** 373
  mismatch with verb, **23d:** 326
  noun as, **21b:** 301
  noun phrase as, **17d:** 258
  pronoun as, **21b:** 301, 302
  verb agreement with, **20f:** 291–296
subject complement, **17c:** 256–257
  subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 295
subject directories, **9b:** 65–66
subject-specific databases, **9d:** 69
subjective case, **21b:** 302
  pronouns in, **21b:** 300–301
subjunctive mood, **20e:** 288–289
  tips for using, **20e:** 289–290
subordinating conjunctions, **17a:** 253; **24a:** 331–332
  choosing precisely, **24c:** 334
  to combine short sentences, **26a:** 344
  introducing dependent clause, **17a:** 253
subordination, **24a:** 331–332
  effective use of, **24a:** 331–332
  excessive, avoiding, **24c:** 335
subsequent mention, definite article and, **17a:** 249
subtitles
  capitalization of, **15a:** 197; **16b:** 225; **37b:** 408
  colon use with, **32b:** 378
such
  unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 373
  use as intensifier, **23h:** 330
suffixes
  of adjectives, **22a:** 313
  in other languages, **22a:** 313
  spelling and, **36c:** 402–404
  of URL, checking, **10b:** 79
summary/summarizing
  colon directing attention to, **32b:** 377
  paraphrasing vs., **11f:** 92–93
  patchwriting and, **12b:** 102
  signal phrases for, **11c:** 86
  of source material, **12c:** 102
superlative forms, of adjectives and adverbs, **22b:** 316–317
superlatives, double, **22b:** 317
superscript numbers, **13a:** 106–107; **15a:** 193, 194; **16b:** 221, 222
supposed to, used to, 444
SurveyMonkey, **9h:** 74
surveys, in field research, **9h:** 74–75
Swope, Sam, **3c:** 15
synthesizing sources, **11h:** 96–97
  common phrases for, **11h:** 97

tables, **7b:** 51, 52
tags, attributive. *See* attributive tags
Tan, Amy, **3d:** 19
task, in writing assignment, **1c:** 5
technical words, appropriate use of, **28a:** 351
television program
  APA documentation style for, **14b:** 179
  MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 144
  online program, **13b:** 139
tenses, **20b:** 283–284. *See also individually named tenses*
  consistency in, **20c:** 284–286
testimony, as supporting evidence, **6e:** 36
textual analysis, **5b:** 29–32
than, misspelling of, **36a:** 401
than, then, 444
that
  including with parallel clauses, **23d:** 329

omitting, **17e:** 265
unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 373
which vs., **21a:** 299
that, which, who, **21a:** 298–299
the/The, **17a:** 249
italicization of, **38a:** 412
omission of, from name of periodical, **13b:** 121
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 205
their, there, they're, **21a:** 297; 444
theirself, theirselves, 444
then, **17a:** 253; 444
there
as expletive, deleting, **30a:** 362
sentence beginning with, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 293
therefore, **17a:** 253
thesis
for argument, **6a:** 33; **6c:** 34
assessing, **4a:** 22
thesis statement
central claim in, **6c:** 34
developing, **2b:** 8–9
fact and opinion and, **6b:** 33
placement of, **6f:** 38, 39
thinking critically
about source material, **11i:** 97–98
about visuals, **6d:** 37
thinking rhetorically
adverbial clauses, **17e:** 267
adverbs, **17a:** 250
commas, dashes, and colons, **35e:** 395
commas and conjunctions in a series, **31c:** 369
dashes and parentheses, **35d:** 394
gerunds, **17d:** 260
nouns, **17a:** 248
parallelism, **25:** 338
participial phrases, **17d:** 261
sentence fragments, **18c:** 271
verbs, **17a:** 247
third person, **21b:** 300
third-person pronouns, **21b:** 300
thought, dash marking break in, **35d:** 393
three-em dash, in CMS-style bibliography, **15a:** 195
time designations
abbreviation of, **39c:** 416
colon use in, **32b:** 378
time frame, of verb tense, **20c:** 284
time periods, abbreviations for, **39c:** 416
time zones, abbreviations for, **39c:** 416
timeliness, of sources, **10b:** 80
title (of address)
abbreviation of, **39a:** 414–415
capitalization of, **37a:** 407
title (of publication)
capitalization of, **37a:** 407; **37b:** 408
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 197, 203
colon separating subtitle and, **32b:** 378
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 225
italics for, **38a:** 411–412
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 121
previewing and, **1b:** 3
quotation marks with, **34b:** 387
singular verb with, **20f:** 294
within title
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 172
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 127
title page
for APA-style paper, **14c:** 180, 182
of book, **13b:** 125; **14b:** 166, 169
for CSE-style paper, **16c:** 235
for MLA-style paper, **13c:** 146
to, as infinitive marker, **17d:** 261
parallelism and, **25b:** 337
to, too, two, 444
tone
dash marking break in, **35d:** 393
sentence fragments and, **18c:** 271
too, use as intensifier, **23h:** 330
topic
for argument, **6a:** 33
assessing, **2a:** 8
focusing of, **2a:** 7–8; **2b:** 8
for research assignment, finding, **8b:** 60
topic sentence, **3a:** 11
to express main idea, **3a:** 11
and paragraph unity, **3a:** 11; **3d:** 18
Toulmin, Stephen, **5b:** 29
Toulmin argument, **5b:** 29–30
toward, towards, 444
trade books/magazines, as research source, **9a:** 65; **10b:** 77–78
transitional words or phrases, **1b:** 3
beginning sentence with, **27b:** 345
commas setting off, **31f:** 371
to link independent clauses, **19b:** 275–276
for paragraph coherence, **3d:** 20–21
semicolon preceding, **32a:** 375
translated book
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 171
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 200–201
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 126
truncation, in keyword search, **9b:** 66
try and, 444
two-word sequences, spelling of, **36b:** 401–402
type size, **7a:** 48
typeface, **7a:** 48–49

underlining, **7a:** 48
uniform resource locators. *See* URLs
uninterested. See disinterested, uninterested
unique, 445
unique noun, definite article with, **17a:** 249
unity
of paragraphs, **3a:** 11; **3d:** 18–21
of sentences, **23a:** 324–330
university names, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
University of Chicago Press, **15:** 193
university presses, **10b:** 77
unlike, **31f:** 371
unpublished interview, CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 211–212
unpublished works, acknowledgment of, **12a:** 100
unsigned article, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 124
untitled work, website with, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 135

up-to-date sources, for research assignment, **9a:** 65
URLs
angle brackets in, **13b:** 116, 130
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 172, 175
as bookmark, **9f:** 72
checking suffix of, **10b:** 79
in CMS documentation style, **15a:** 206, 208, 211, 212
in CSE documentation style, **16b:** 230
U.S. Constitution, MLA documentation style for, **13a:** 112
U.S. Government. *See also* government document/publication
agencies, capitalization of, **37a:** 407
online information from, **9f:** 71
U.S. Postal Service, abbreviations of, **39b:** 415
usage. *See also* word choice
appropriate, **28a–b:** 350–355
conciseness in, **30a–b:** 360–363
exactness in, **29a:** 355–356
glossary of, *431–445*
consulting, **29b:** 359; **36b:** 401
rhetorical situation and, **1:** 2
USA.gov, **9f:** 71
use, utilize, 445
used to. See supposed to, used to

v., **39c:** 416
vague words, **30b:** 361
values
and argument, **6a:** 33; **6d:** 35
of author, assessing, **10a:** 76–77
variety, in sentences, **11:** 344–347
cumulative/periodic sentences and, **27c:** 346
length and form and, **27a:** 344
openings and, **27b:** 345
using questions, exclamations, and commands for, **27c:** 346–347
verb phrase, **17d:** 259–261
verb tenses, **20b:** 283–284
consistency in, **20c:** 284–286
verbal, **17d:** 259
verbal phrases, **17d:** 259
beginning sentence with, **27b:** 345
as sentence fragment, **18b:** 270
verbs, **17a:** 246–247; **20a–f:** 278–296. *See also* action verbs; auxiliary verbs; linking verbs; tenses
agreement of subject with, **20f:** 291–296
in attributive tags, **17a:** 246–247
avoiding comma between subject and, **31i:** 373
consistency in tenses of, **20c:** 284–286
followed by gerunds and/or infinitives, **17d:** 262
forms of, **20a:** 278–282
irregular, **20a:** 279–280
mismatch
with complement, **23d:** 326–327
with subject, **23d:** 326
mood and, **20e:** 288–290
not used in progressive form, **20b:** 284
phrasal, **20a:** 281
prepositional, **20a:** 281
regular, **20a:** 278
for signal phrases and their complements, **23d:** 327
taking indirect objects, **17c:** 256
voice and, **20d:** 286–288
very, 445
video
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 178
online
APA documentation style for, **14b:** 178
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 211–212
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 234
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 139
video delivery, **1d:** 6
viewpoints. *See* diverse views, argument and
visual art. *See* art
visual elements. *see also* graphics
in document design, **7a:** 47–50
thinking critically about, **6d:** 37
using to strengthen argument, **6d:** 36–37
visuals. *See* graphics
voice, **20d:** 286–288
volume numbers, **15a:** 202, 204; **16b:** 227
in APA documentation style, **14b:** 167
in MLA documentation style, **13a:** 110; **13b:** 122
vowels, words beginning with, indefinite article with, **17a:** 249
vs., **39c:** 416

Walker, Alice, **3b:** 11; **29a:** 357
ways, 445
we, use of, **21f:** 311
web address. *See* URLs
web documents, APA documentation style for, **14b:** 176
web log. *See* blog
web pages, **1d:** 6
websites
APA documentation style for short work from, **14b:** 175, 177
citation map, **14b:** 176
CMS documentation style for, **15a:** 209
works from, **15a:** 209–211
CSE documentation style for, **16b:** 232–233
short works, **16b:** 233
evaluation of, **10b:** 78–80
MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 135; **38a:** 412
citation map, **13b:** 136
works from, **13b:** 135
sponsors of, **13b:** 130, 131, 136, 137, 138; **15a:** 210
weekly journal, CSE documentation style for articles from, **16b:** 229
well. See good, well
what, in noun clause, subject-verb agreement and, **20f:** 295–296
where . . . at, where . . . to, 445
whether . . . or, **25d:** 338–339
which. See also that, which, who
beginning dependent clause, **24a:** 332
vs. *that*, **21a:** 299
which?, comma use with, **31e:** 370
White (or *white*), use of term, **28b:** 353
who, whom, **21a:** 299; **21b:** 302–303
who, whose, whom, **21a:** 298–299

who's, whose, **21a:** 297
whoever, whomever, **21b:** 302–303
Wikipedia, **9c:** 68
wikis, **1d:** 6; **9f:** 71
  APA documentation style for selection from, **14b:** 177
  MLA documentation style for selection from, **13b:** 137
will, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
wildcards, in keyword search, **9b:** 67
wire service article, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 124
with regards to. See regard, regarding, regards
word choice, **29a–d:** 355–360
  accurate and precise, **29a:** 355–357
  appropriate, **28a:** 350–351
  for conciseness, **30a–b:** 360–363
  for exactness, **29a–d:** 355–360
  ornate vs. clarity of, **28a:** 350
word order, inverted, **20f:** 292–293; **26d:** 341–342
word processor. *See* grammar checker; spell checker
wordiness, **30a:** 361–362
  replacing *it* with postponed subject and, **21d:** 309
words
  comma separating series of, **31c:** 368
  introductory, comma setting off, **31b:** 367
  necessary, for sentence unity, **23f:** 328–329
  vs. numerals, **39f:** 418
  placing for emphasis, **26a:** 340
  with prefixes and suffixes, spelling of, **36c:** 402–404
  referred to as such, italics for, **38b:** 412
  repeating for emphasis, **10c:** 341
  repeating for parallelism, **25b:** 337
  two-word sequences, spelling of, **36b:** 401–402
  useless, **30a:** 362
  vague, **30b:** 361
wordy expressions, replacements for, **30a:** 361–362
working bibliography, creating, **11b:** 82–83
works-cited list, **13a:** 106; **13b:** 116
  annotated, creating, **11b:** 83–84
  for article in a journal, MLA sample entry, **13b:** 123
  for book, MLA sample entry, **13b:** 125
  MLA, directory for, **13b:** 117–120
  sample from student paper, **6g:** 46; **13c:** 157–158
would, as modal auxiliary, **20a:** 281–82
would of. See could of
writer, in rhetorical situation, **2a:** 2
writing
  argumentative, **5b:** 29
  assignment analysis, **1c:** 4–5
  expository, **3d:** 19
  persuasive. *See* persuasive writing
  rhetorically, **1:** 2–6
writing process
  described, **2:** 7
  stages of, **2a:** 7–8
  in writing assignment, **1c:** 5
WWW Virtual Library, **9b:** 65–66

-y, changing or retaining final, **36c:** 403
Yahoo, **9b:** 65
Yamamoto, Hisaye, **29a:** 357
year
  and month, unnecessary comma use with, **31i:** 374
  of publication, in APA-style citations, **14a:** 159, 162
yes-or-no questions, **8b:** 60
you, addressing reader as, **21f:** 311
your, you're, 445
yourself. See herself, himself, myself, yourself
YouTube clip, MLA documentation style for, **13b:** 139

Zotero, **9g:** 72

CITATION MAPS

Use these maps to help you quickly cite commonly used kinds of sources.

MLA Style

13.1 Article in a Journal 123
13.2 Book 125
13.3 Article in a Database 133
13.4 Work from a Website 136

APA Style

14.1 Article in a Journal 168
14.2 Book 170
14.3 Article in a Database 174
14.4 Section in a Web Document 176

CMS Style

15.1 Book 198
15.2 Article in a Journal 204
15.3 Article in a Database 207
15.4 Work from a Website 210

CSE Style

16.1 Article in a Journal 228
16.2 Article in a Database 231

SPECIAL TOPICS FOR MULTILINGUAL WRITERS

17 Sentence Essentials

Article Usage 249
Number Agreement in Noun Phrases 258
Verbs Followed by Gerunds and/or Infinitives 262

20 Verbs

Omission of Forms of *Be* in Other Languages 280
Phrasal Verbs 281
Verbs Not Used in the Progressive Form 284

21 Pronouns

Noun or Pronoun as Subject 301
Possessive Pronouns 305

22 Modifiers

Adjective Suffixes in Other Languages 313
Negation in Other Languages 318

24 Subordination and Coordination

Choosing Conjunctions 333

26 Emphasis

Inverting Word Order 342

30 Conciseness

Using Relative Pronouns 361

35 The Period and Other Punctuation Marks

Indirect Questions 392

39 Abbreviations and Numbers

Using Articles with Abbreviations, Acronyms, or Numbers 417

ab	abbreviation **39a–c**	*main*	main idea **3a**
ac	acronym **39d**	*MLA*	MLA format **13**
adj	adjective **17a(4), 22a–b, 22d**	*mod*	modifier **22**
adv	adverb **17a(5), 22a–b**	*n*	number **33c, 39e–f**
agr	agreement **20f, 21c**	^	omission
APA	APA format **14**	¶	paragraph **3**
apos	apostrophe **33**	//	parallelism **25**
arg	argument **6**	( )	parentheses **35e**
awk	awkward	.	period **34c(1), 35a**
cap	capital **37**	*pl*	plural **36c(5)**
CMS	CMS format **15**	*pro*	pronoun **21, 24a(2)**
coh	coherence **4a, 22d–e**	*?*	question mark **34c(3), 35b**
:	colon **32b, 34c(2)**	" "	quotation marks **34**
,	comma **31, 34c(1)**	*red*	redundant **30a(1)**
con	conciseness **30**	*ref*	reference **21d**
coor	coordination **24b–c**	*rep*	repetition **25b, 26c**
cred	source credibility **10**	;	semicolon **32a, 34c(2)**
cs	comma splice **19**	*sg*	singular
CSE	CSE format **16**	/	slash **35h**
—	dash **34c(3), 35d**	*sp*	spelling **36a–d**
ℌ	delete	*sub*	subordination **24a, 24c**
dev	development **3**	[ ]	square brackets **35f**
. . .	ellipsis points **35g**	*t*	tense **20b**
evid	evidence **6d**	*thesis*	thesis statement **2b**
!	exclamation point **34c(3), 35c**	*trans*	transition **3d(4)**
frag	fragment **18**	∪	transpose
fs	fused sentence **19**	*u*	unity **4a, 23**
hy	hyphenation **36e**	*usg*	usage **Glossary of Usage**
inc	incomplete	*var*	variety **27**
irreg	irregular verb **20a**	*v*	verb **20**
ital	italics **38**	*wc*	word choice **23e–g, 28a–b**
log	logic **6d–e**	*w*	wordiness **30a**
lc	lowercase **37**	*ww*	wrong word **29a–c**

Contents

Preface iii

W Writing 1

1 Writing and Reading Rhetorically 2
2 Planning and Drafting Essays 7
3 Developing Paragraphs 10
4 Revising and Editing Essays 22
5 Critical Reading and Textual Analysis 27
a Critical reading 27
b Textual analysis 29
c Basic appeals in an argument 31
6 Writing Arguments 32
a Considering differing viewpoints 32
b Distinguishing between fact and opinion 33
c Taking a position or making a claim 34
d Providing evidence for an effective argument 35
e Using appeals to ground your argument 37
f Organizing an argument 38
g Sample argument 40
7 Designing Documents 47

R Research 57

8 Planning Research 58
a Considering your assignment 58
b Formulating research questions 59
c Testing research questions 61
d Creating a research plan 62
9 Finding Appropriate Sources 64
a Kinds of sources 64
b Searching electronically 65
c Locating reference works 68
d Locating articles 68
e Locating books 70
f Locating online sources 70
g Keeping track of your sources 71
h Doing field research 72
10 Evaluating Print and Online Sources 75
a Credibility of authors 75
b Credibility of publishers 77
c Online sources 78
d Reading closely and critically 80
11 Using Sources Critically and Responsibly 81
a Taking and organizing notes 81
b Creating a working bibliography 82
c Acknowledging your sources 85
d Using direct quotations 88
e Paraphrasing 90
f Summarizing 92
g Analyzing and responding to sources 93
h Synthesizing sources 96
i Critical thinking 97
12 Crediting Others and Avoiding Plagiarism 98
a Determining what to acknowledge 99
b Citing quoted or paraphrased material 101
c Understanding citation and documentation 102

D Documentation 105

13 MLA Documentation 106
a In-text citations 106
b List of works cited 116
c Sample MLA-style paper 146
14 APA Documentation 159
a In-text citations 159
b Reference list 162
c Sample APA-style paper 180
15 CMS Documentation 193
a Note and bibliographic forms 193
b Sample CMS-style paper 213
16 CSE Documentation 221
a In-text citations 221
b List of references 223
c Sample CSE-style paper 234

G Grammar 245

17 Sentence Essentials 246
a Parts of speech 246
b Subjects and predicates 255
c Complements 255
d Phrases 258
e Clauses 264
18 Sentence Fragments 269
a Recognizing sentence fragments 269
b Phrases as fragments 270
c Dependent clauses as fragments 271
19 Comma Splices and Fused Sentences 272
a Locating comma splices and fused sentences 273
b Revising comma splices and fused sentences 274
c Divided quotations 276
20 Verbs 278
a Verb forms 278
b Verb tenses 283
c Verb tense consistency 284
d Voice 286
e Mood 288
f Subject-verb agreement 291
21 Pronouns 296
a Recognizing pronouns 296
b Pronoun case 300
c Pronoun-antecedent agreement 305

d Clear pronoun reference 307
e Pronoun consistency 309
f First-person, second-person pronouns 311

22 Modifiers 312
a Recognizing modifiers 312
b Comparatives, superlatives 316
c Double negatives 317
d Placement of modifiers 318
e Dangling modifiers 320

S Effective Sentences 323

23 Sentence Unity 324
a Choosing and arranging details 324
b Mixed metaphors 325
c Mixed constructions 325
d Relating sentence parts 326
e *Is when, is where, reason . . . is because* 328
f Necessary words 328
g Comparisons 329
h Intensifiers 330

24 Subordination and Coordination 331
a To emphasize main ideas 331
b To relate equal ideas 332
c Faulty subordination and coordination 334

25 Parallelism 336
a Using *and*, *but*, *or*, *yet*, *so*, *nor*, or *for* 336
b For paired ideas 337
c In lists, headings, and outlines 338
d Using correlative conjunctions 338

26 Emphasis 340
a Placing words, punctuation 340
b Ideas from least to most important 340
c Repeating important words 341
d Inverting word order 341
e Using short sentences 342

27 Variety 344
a Sentence length and form 344
b Sentence openings 345
c Beginnings and endings 346
d Questions, exclamations, and commands 346

L Effective Language 349

28 Good Usage 350
a Appropriate word choice 350
b Inclusive language 351

29 Precise Word Choice 355
a Accurate and precise word choice 355
b Clichés and euphemisms 357
c Idioms and collocations 358
d Clear definitions 359

30 Conciseness 360
a Eliminating wordiness 360
b Elliptical constructions 363

P Punctuation 365

31 The Comma 366
a Between independent clauses 366
b After introductory words 367
c Between items in a series 368
d Between coordinate adjectives 369
e With nonessential elements 370
f Transitions, parenthetical expressions 371
g With dates, names, addresses 372
h With direct quotations 373
i Unnecessary or misplaced commas 373

32 The Semicolon and the Colon 375
a The semicolon 375
b The colon 377

33 The Apostrophe 379
a Possessives 380
b Contractions 384
c Plurals 384

34 Quotation Marks 385
a Direct quotations 385
b Titles of short works 387
c With other punctuation marks 388
d Misused quotation marks 390

35 The Period and Other Punctuation Marks 391
a The period 391
b The question mark 392
c The exclamation point 392
d The dash 393
e Parentheses 394
f Square brackets 395
g Ellipsis points 396
h The slash 397

M Mechanics 399

36 Spelling and the Hyphen 400
37 Capitals 406
38 Italics 411
39 Abbreviations and Numbers 414

Answers to Even-Numbered Exercises 419
Glossary of Usage 431
Glossary of Terms 447
Index 459

Citation Maps 483
Special Topics for Multilingual Writers 483
Revision Symbols 484

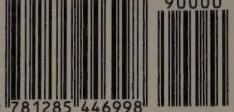
CENGAGE brain .com

Need a study break? Get a break on the study materials designed for your course!

Find Flashcards, Study Guides, Solutions Manuals and more . . .
Visit **www.cengagebrain.com/studytools** today to find discounted study tools!

CENGAGE Learning

To learn more about Cengage Learning, visit **www.cengage.com**

Purchase any of our products at your local college store or at our preferred online store **www.cengagebrain.com**

ISBN-13: 978-1-285-44699-8
ISBN-10: 1-285-44699-2